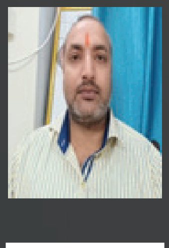
Editors:



Er Sudhir Narayan Mishra was born on March 21, 1981. He received his B.Tech. in Agricultural Engineering in 2003 and his M.Tech. in Soil and Water Conservation Engineering in 2005 from AAIDU in Allahabad, Uttar Pradesh. He has been working as an assistant professor at Udai Pratap Autonomous College in Varanasi, Uttar Pradesh, India, since 2007.

Miss. Chandana S. is a PhD Research scholar in Department of Horticulture (Floriculture and Landscape Architecture) at ICAR-IIHR (INDIAN INSTITUTE OF HORTICULTURAL RESEARCH), Bengaluru with profound excellence and meritorious academic record. She has completed her UG from College of Horticulture Kolar and her Master’s degree from Junagadh Agriculture University, Junagadh, Gujarat. She has published 5 research papers in International journals, 1 review paper, 5 book chapters and 9 popular articles go for her credits. She has participated in many national and international seminars and conferences and secured best poster presentation award. She has qualified ICAR-SRF and secured SRF Fellowship for her PhD research programme. She has also qualified ASRB-NET in Horticulture (Floriculture and Landscape Architecture).

Ranjeetha R., has received a bachelor's degree in horticulture and a master's degree in horticulture with a specialization in plantations, spices, medicinal, and aromatic crops from UHS, Bagalkot, Karnataka. She is an aspiring individual who has served as a scientist (Horticulture) and Technical Assistant (Horticulture), which has enriched her practical and theoretical knowledge. She has participated as a resource person in various horticulture programs and delivered lectures. She has conducted FLD’s, OFT’s, field days, and skill training programs for rural youth. She is a believer in perseverance and hard work, and she wants to contribute to the advancement of the farmers. “Protected Cultivation and Smart Agriculture” is her first book, which she will cherish for a lifetime.

Mr. Vikash Tyagi was born on 17 march 1999. He has completed his graduation B.sc (Hons.) Agriculture in 2021 from S.V.P.U. A & T, Meerut (U. P) and M.sc (Horti) Vegetable Science in 2023 from S.V.P.A & T, Meerut. On the topic ‘study on genetic diversity analysis in cucumber (Cucumis sativus L.)’. and now pursuing Ph.D. (Vegetable science) from S.V.P.U. A & T Meerut 250110 (U. P). on the topic “Molecular Characterization and Evaluation of Genotypes for Morphological & Qualitative Traits of Tomato (Solanum Lycopersicum L.) Under Protected & Open Field Condition’ He has published 4 research paper ,5 National conference, 1 international conference,15 abstract,2 training program.

Dr. Narinder Panotra (Ph. D) an Associate Professor at the Institute of Biotechnology, SKUAST-Jammu, has made significant contributions to the field of organic agriculture management during his 16-year career in teaching, research, and extension. He has worked extensively across the entire value chain of organic agriculture, organizing capacity building programs and facilitating the establishment of the OFRC, Chatha. As an academician, Dr. Panotra has authored 10 books, including a textbook, and published more than 100 research and review papers in national and international journals. He has visited 4 countries and has been associated with 26 externally funded projects by agencies such as ICAR, DST, DBT, and NABARD, while also working on 27 institutional research projects as a PI/Co-PI.

Address
N D Global Publication House 31,
Near Lakshmi Sagar Police Chowki
Shahganj Haringtonganj Ayodhya,
Uttar Pradesh, Pin -224284, India.

9 788197 337901
PRICE ₹550/-
ISBN 978-81-973379-0-1

PROTECTED CULTIVATION AND SMART AGRICULTURE

ND Global Publication

ND Global Publication

PROTECTED CULTIVATION & SMART AGRICULTURE

Editors :
Sudhir Narayan Mishra
Chandana S
Ranjeetha R
Vikash tyagi
Narinder Panotra

Protected Cultivation and Smart Agriculture

Editors

Sudhir Narayan Mishra

Chandana S

Ranjeetha R

Vikash tyagi

Narinder Panotra

ND GLOBAL PUBLICATION HOUSE

ND GLOBAL PUBLICATION HOUSE

ND Global Publication House 31, Near Lakshmi SagarPolice
Chowki Shahganj Haringtonganj Ayodhya Uttar Pradesh, Pin -
224284, India.
Head Office:- Murali Kunj Colony, Near Chandra Greens, Society,
Transport Nagar, Mathura, Uttar Pradesh, Pin-281004,India.

MobileNo.:-9026375938

Email: *bsglobalpublicationhouse@gmail.com*
Web: *https://ndglobalpublication.com/*

9 788197 337901

Price:- 449/-

PREFACE

In the face of a rapidly growing global population, climate change, and the increasing scarcity of natural resources, the agriculture sector finds itself at a critical juncture. The need to produce more food sustainably while minimizing the environmental impact has never been more pressing. As we navigate these challenges, protected cultivation and smart agriculture emerge as powerful tools to revolutionize the way we grow crops and ensure food security for future generations.

This book, **"Protected Cultivation and Smart Agriculture**," aims to provide a comprehensive overview of the latest advancements, techniques, and technologies in these fields. By exploring the principles and practices of protected cultivation, such as greenhouse technology, hydroponics, and vertical farming, we delve into the ways in which these systems can optimize crop growth, reduce water and nutrient consumption, and mitigate the effects of adverse weather conditions. Moreover, we examine the role of smart agriculture, which leverages digital technologies like the Internet of Things (IoT), artificial intelligence (AI), and precision farming, to enhance decision-making, improve resource management, and boost overall agricultural efficiency.

The chapters in this book are written by leading experts and researchers in the field, offering valuable insights and practical guidance for both experienced practitioners and those new to protected cultivation and smart agriculture. From the fundamentals of controlled environment agriculture to cutting-edge sensor technologies and data analytics, this book covers a wide range of topics that are essential for understanding and implementing these innovative approaches.

As we strive to build a more resilient and sustainable food system, protected cultivation and smart agriculture offer immense potential to address the challenges we face. By harnessing the power of technology and adopting best practices, we can increase crop yields, reduce environmental impact, and ensure a stable supply of fresh, nutritious produce for a growing population. This book serves as a valuable resource for farmers, researchers, policymakers, and anyone interested in the future of agriculture, providing the knowledge and tools necessary to embrace these transformative practices and contribute to a more sustainable world...

Happy reading and happy gardening!

Editors……

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER - 1

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Precision Farming Techniques for Optimizing Resource Utilization

Pranav Raj and Aditya Prakash

[1]*M.Sc. Research scholar (Soil Science and agricultural chemistry), Sam Higginbottom University of Agriculture technology and sciences*

[2]*International research trainee on Turf grass management, Department of Agriculture*, *SHUATS.*

Corresponding Author
Pranav Raj
pranav.40raj@gmail.com

Abstract

Precision farming has emerged as a transformative approach to optimize resource utilization in agriculture. By leveraging advanced technologies and data-driven insights, precision farming enables farmers to tailor inputs and management practices to the specific needs of crops and soil conditions at a granular level. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of precision farming techniques and their applications in optimizing resource utilization across global, Asian, and Indian contexts. It explores the key components of precision farming, including remote sensing, geographic information systems (GIS), variable rate technology (VRT), and yield mapping. The chapter delves into the role of precision farming in enhancing nutrient management, water conservation, pest and disease control, and crop yield optimization. It highlights the potential of precision farming to address challenges such as resource scarcity, environmental sustainability, and food security. The chapter also discusses the adoption and implementation of precision farming techniques in different regions, with a focus on the unique opportunities and challenges faced by farmers in Asia and India. Case studies and success stories are presented to illustrate the tangible benefits of precision farming in terms of resource efficiency, cost reduction, and improved crop productivity. Furthermore, the chapter explores the socio-economic implications of precision farming, including its impact on smallholder farmers, rural livelihoods, and the broader agricultural value chain. It also addresses the need for capacity building, technology transfer, and policy support to facilitate the widespread adoption of precision farming practices. The chapter concludes by outlining future research directions and emphasizing the importance of precision farming as a key strategy for sustainable intensification of agriculture in the face of growing global food demands and resource constraints.

Keywords: Precision Farming, Resource Optimization, Variable Rate Technology, Remote Sensing, Sustainable Agriculture

Precision farming has emerged as a transformative approach to optimize resource utilization in agriculture. By leveraging advanced technologies and data-driven insights, precision farming enables farmers to tailor inputs and management practices to the specific needs of crops and soil conditions at a granular level. This approach has gained significant attention worldwide due to its potential to address the pressing challenges of resource scarcity, environmental sustainability, and food security.

The global population is projected to reach 9.7 billion by 2050 [1], placing immense pressure on agricultural systems to meet the growing food demands. At the same time, the availability of arable land and freshwater resources is becoming increasingly limited, necessitating the adoption of more efficient and sustainable farming practices. Precision farming offers a promising solution to these challenges by optimizing resource utilization, reducing waste, and maximizing crop yields.

The adoption and implementation of precision farming techniques vary across different regions, with each facing unique opportunities and challenges. This chapter discusses the global perspective on precision farming, highlighting the adoption trends and success stories from various countries. It then focuses on the Asian context, exploring the specific challenges and opportunities for precision farming in the region, including smallholder farming systems, technology access, and capacity building needs.

India, being one of the largest agricultural economies in the world, is given special attention in this chapter. The current status and potential of precision farming in India are discussed, along with government initiatives and policy support. The chapter explores precision farming techniques for major crops in India, such as wheat, rice, cotton, and sugarcane. It also addresses the challenges and opportunities for precision farming adoption in the Indian context, considering factors such as fragmented land holdings, lack of awareness, and infrastructure issues.

Furthermore, the chapter delves into the socio-economic implications of precision farming, including its impact on smallholder farmers, rural livelihoods, and the broader agricultural value chain. It highlights the economic benefits and cost-benefit analysis of precision farming adoption. The chapter also emphasizes the importance of capacity building, technology transfer, and policy support to facilitate the widespread adoption of precision farming practices.

Looking towards the future, the chapter explores emerging technologies in precision farming, such as the Internet of Things (IoT), artificial intelligence, and robotics. It discusses the potential of precision farming in contributing to sustainable intensification of agriculture and climate change adaptation. The chapter concludes by outlining research gaps and future directions in precision farming research and implementation.

Overall, this chapter aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of precision farming techniques and their role in optimizing resource utilization in agriculture. It highlights the global, Asian, and Indian perspectives, emphasizing the potential of precision farming in addressing the challenges of resource scarcity, environmental sustainability, and food security. By adopting precision farming practices, farmers can make informed decisions, reduce input costs, and improve crop yields, ultimately contributing to a more sustainable and resilient agricultural future.

2. Precision Farming: Concepts and Technologies

2.1. Definition and Scope of Precision Farming

Precision farming, also known as precision agriculture or site-specific crop management, is an approach that utilizes advanced technologies and data-driven insights to optimize agricultural practices and resource utilization. It involves the collection, analysis, and application of precise and timely information about crops, soil, and environmental conditions to make informed decisions at a granular level [2].

The scope of precision farming encompasses a wide range of technologies and practices aimed at improving the efficiency, productivity, and sustainability of agricultural systems. It involves the integration of various disciplines, including agronomy, remote sensing, geographic information systems (GIS), data analytics, and machinery engineering [3].

Precision farming techniques enable farmers to tailor inputs such as fertilizers, water, and pesticides to the specific needs of crops and soil conditions within a field. By providing the right inputs at the right time and in the right amount, precision farming aims to optimize resource utilization, reduce waste, and minimize environmental impacts [4].

The adoption of precision farming has been driven by advancements in sensing technologies, data management systems, and precision agricultural machinery. These technologies allow farmers to gather high-resolution data about their fields, analyze the data to generate actionable insights, and implement site-specific management practices [5].

Precision farming has the potential to address various challenges faced by the agricultural sector, including resource scarcity, environmental degradation, and climate change. By optimizing resource utilization and reducing the environmental footprint of agriculture, precision farming can contribute to sustainable intensification and food security [6].

The scope of precision farming extends beyond crop production and includes other aspects of agriculture, such as precision livestock farming and precision aquaculture. Precision livestock farming involves the use of sensors and data analytics to monitor animal health, behavior, and productivity, enabling targeted interventions and improved animal welfare [7]. Precision aquaculture employs similar technologies to optimize fish farming practices, including feeding, water quality management, and disease control [8].

Overall, precision farming represents a paradigm shift in agriculture, moving from a one-size-fits-all approach to a more targeted and data-driven approach. By leveraging advanced technologies and data analytics, precision farming enables farmers to make informed decisions, optimize resource utilization, and enhance the sustainability and profitability of agricultural systems.

2.2. **Key Components of Precision Farming**

Precision farming relies on several key components that enable the collection, analysis, and application of precise and timely information about crops, soil, and environmental conditions. These components form the foundation of precision farming practices and facilitate the optimization of resource utilization. The key components of precision farming include remote sensing, geographic information systems (GIS), variable rate technology (VRT), and yield mapping.

2.2.1. *Remote Sensing*

Remote sensing is a crucial component of precision farming that involves the acquisition of data about crops and soil conditions using sensors mounted on satellites, aircraft, or unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) [9]. These sensors capture high-resolution images and spectral data that provide valuable information about crop health, nutrient status, and water stress.

Multispectral and hyperspectral sensors are commonly used in precision farming to capture data across different wavelengths of the electromagnetic spectrum. These sensors can detect subtle variations in crop reflectance, which can be used to assess crop vigor, chlorophyll content, and nutrient deficiencies [10]. Thermal sensors are also employed to monitor crop water stress and identify areas requiring irrigation.

Remote sensing data can be used to generate vegetation indices, such as the Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI), which provide insights into crop health and biomass. These indices can help farmers identify areas of the field that require specific management interventions, such as targeted fertilization or pest control [11].

The use of UAVs, also known as drones, has gained popularity in precision farming due to their ability to capture high-resolution imagery at lower altitudes and with greater flexibility compared to satellites or manned aircraft. UAVs equipped with multispectral cameras can provide detailed information about crop health, enabling farmers to make timely management decisions [12].

Remote sensing data can be integrated with other precision farming components, such as GIS and VRT, to facilitate site-specific management practices. By combining remote sensing data with ground-based measurements and historical data, farmers can develop precise management zones within their fields and optimize resource utilization accordingly.

2.2.2. *Geographic Information Systems (GIS)*

Geographic Information Systems (GIS) play a crucial role in precision farming by providing a platform for the management, analysis, and visualization of spatial data. GIS software allows farmers to integrate various types of data, including remote sensing imagery, soil maps, yield data, and weather information, to create detailed maps of their fields [13].

GIS enables the creation of digital soil maps that provide information about soil properties, such as texture, pH, nutrient content, and water-holding capacity. These maps can be used to identify areas of the field with specific soil characteristics and guide site-specific management practices, such as variable rate fertilization or irrigation [14].

Yield mapping is another important application of GIS in precision farming. By combining yield data collected from harvesting equipment with GPS coordinates, farmers can generate yield maps that show the spatial variability of crop yields within a field. These maps can help identify areas of high and low productivity, enabling farmers to investigate the underlying causes and make informed management decisions [15].

`GIS also facilitates the creation of management zones within a field based on various parameters, such as soil properties, topography, and crop performance. These management zones can be used to guide variable rate applications of inputs, such as fertilizers, pesticides, and irrigation water, ensuring that each zone receives the optimal amount of resources [16].

In addition to data management and analysis, GIS provides powerful visualization tools that allow farmers to view their fields in a spatial context. Interactive maps and 3D visualizations can help farmers better understand the spatial variability of their fields and make informed decisions about resource allocation and management practices.

Overall, GIS is an essential component of precision farming that enables the integration, analysis, and visualization of spatial data. By leveraging GIS technologies, farmers can gain a comprehensive understanding of their fields, identify management zones, and optimize resource utilization for improved crop production and sustainability.

2.2.3. *Variable Rate Technology (VRT)*

Variable Rate Technology (VRT) is a key component of precision farming that enables the application of inputs, such as fertilizers, pesticides, and seeds, at varying rates across a field based on site-specific requirements. VRT allows farmers to optimize resource utilization by delivering the right amount of inputs to the right place at the right time [17].

VRT systems typically consist of three main components: a control system, a GPS receiver, and a variable rate applicator. The control system is responsible for processing data from various sources, such as soil maps, yield maps, and remote sensing imagery, to generate prescription maps that specify the desired application rates for different zones within a field [18].

The GPS receiver provides real-time location information to the control system, enabling precise positioning of the variable rate applicator. The applicator, which can be mounted on a tractor or a self-propelled machine, is equipped with sensors and actuators that adjust the application rate based on the prescription map and the GPS coordinates [19].

Variable rate fertilization is one of the most common applications of VRT in precision farming. By applying fertilizers at variable rates based on soil nutrient levels and crop requirements, farmers can optimize nutrient use efficiency, reduce input costs, and minimize environmental impacts [20]. VRT enables farmers to apply higher rates of fertilizers in areas with low soil fertility and lower rates in areas with adequate nutrient levels, thereby avoiding over-application and reducing nutrient losses.

Variable rate seeding is another application of VRT that allows farmers to adjust the seeding rate based on soil properties, topography, and yield potential. By optimizing the seeding rate, farmers can improve crop emergence, reduce seed costs, and enhance overall crop productivity [21].

VRT can also be used for variable rate irrigation, where the amount of water applied is adjusted based on soil moisture levels, crop water requirements, and weather conditions. Precision irrigation systems equipped with VRT can help farmers conserve water resources, reduce water stress, and improve crop yields [22].

2.2.4. **Yield mapping**

is an essential component of precision farming that involves the collection and analysis of spatial data on crop yields within a field. Yield maps provide valuable insights into the variability of crop performance across different areas of the field, enabling farmers to identify areas of high and low productivity [23].

Yield mapping systems typically consist of a yield monitor installed on harvesting equipment, such as combines or forage harvesters. The yield monitor is equipped with sensors that measure the flow of grain or biomass as it passes through the machine. These sensors, along with GPS receivers, record the instantaneous yield and the corresponding location within the field [24].

The collected yield data is then processed and analyzed using GIS software to generate yield maps. These maps display the spatial distribution of crop yields, often using a color-coded scheme to represent different yield levels. Yield maps can be overlaid with other spatial data, such as soil maps or remote sensing imagery, to identify patterns and relationships between yield and various field characteristics [25].

Yield mapping provides several benefits for precision farming:

1. **Identification of Yield Variability**: Yield maps help farmers visualize the spatial variability of crop yields within a field. By identifying areas of high and low productivity, farmers can investigate the underlying causes, such as soil properties, nutrient deficiencies, or pest infestations, and take appropriate management actions [26].
2. **Evaluation of Management Practices**: Yield maps can be used to assess the effectiveness of different management practices, such as fertilization, irrigation, or pest control. By comparing yield maps from different years or management scenarios, farmers can evaluate the impact of their decisions on crop performance and make data-driven adjustments to optimize resource utilization [27].
3. **Precision Nutrient Management**: Yield maps can be used in conjunction with soil maps to develop site-specific nutrient management plans. By identifying areas of the field with higher or lower yield potential, farmers can adjust fertilizer application rates accordingly, ensuring that each area receives the optimal amount of nutrients based on its specific requirements [28].
4. **Targeted Sampling and Scouting**: Yield maps can guide targeted sampling and scouting efforts. Farmers can focus their attention on areas of the field with yield anomalies or variability, collecting soil samples or conducting detailed crop assessments to diagnose potential issues and implement targeted interventions [29].
5. **Precision Crop Planning**: Yield maps from previous seasons can inform precision crop planning decisions. Farmers can use historical yield data to optimize crop rotations, select appropriate crop varieties, and allocate resources based on the yield potential of different areas within a field [30].

To maximize the benefits of yield mapping, it is important to ensure the accuracy and reliability of the collected data. Proper calibration of yield monitors, regular maintenance of sensors, and consistent data collection practices are essential for generating high-quality yield maps [31].

Yield mapping is a powerful tool in precision farming that enables farmers to understand the spatial variability of crop performance within their fields. By leveraging yield maps in combination with other precision farming components, such as remote sensing, GIS, and VRT, farmers can make informed decisions, optimize resource utilization, and improve overall crop productivity and sustainability.

3. Global Perspective on Precision Farming

3.1. Adoption and Implementation of Precision Farming Worldwide

Precision farming has gained significant attention and adoption worldwide, with various countries and regions embracing this technology-driven approach to optimize agricultural practices. The adoption and implementation of precision farming techniques vary across different parts of the world, influenced by factors such as technological advancements, agricultural policies, socio-economic conditions, and environmental challenges.

3.1.1. *North America*

North America, particularly the United States and Canada, has been at the forefront of precision farming adoption. The extensive use of advanced technologies, such as GPS, remote sensing, and variable rate application, has been a key driver of precision farming in this region [32].

In the United States, precision farming has been widely adopted in crops such as corn, soybeans, wheat, and cotton. The availability of high-resolution satellite imagery, advanced sensor technologies, and precision agricultural machinery has facilitated the implementation of site-specific management practices [33].

Canada has also witnessed significant growth in precision farming, with a focus on crops like canola, wheat, and barley. The Canadian government has supported the adoption of precision farming through various initiatives, including research funding, extension services, and technology transfer programs [34].

3.1.2. *Europe* Europe

has been actively promoting the adoption of precision farming practices, recognizing their potential to enhance agricultural sustainability and competitiveness. The European Union (EU) has implemented policies and funded research projects to support the development and uptake of precision farming technologies [35].

Countries like Germany, France, and the United Kingdom have been leading the way in precision farming adoption within Europe. These countries have invested in research and development, infrastructure, and education to facilitate the implementation of precision farming techniques [36].

Precision farming in Europe has been applied to a wide range of crops, including cereals, oilseeds, and vegetables. The focus has been on optimizing nutrient management, reducing environmental impacts, and improving crop quality and yields [37].

3.1.3. *Australia and New Zealand*

Australia and New Zealand have embraced precision farming as a means to address the challenges of variable soil conditions, water scarcity, and environmental sustainability. The vast agricultural landscapes in these countries have provided opportunities for the implementation of precision farming techniques [38].

In Australia, precision farming has been adopted in crops such as wheat, barley, and canola, as well as in livestock farming. The use of remote sensing, yield mapping, and variable rate application has helped farmers optimize resource utilization and adapt to the unique environmental conditions of the region [39].

New Zealand has also witnessed the growing adoption of precision farming, particularly in the dairy industry. Precision technologies have been used to monitor pasture growth, optimize fertilizer application, and improve animal health and productivity [40].

3.1.4. *South America*

South America has seen a rapid expansion of precision farming, driven by the increasing demand for agricultural products and the need to optimize resource utilization. Countries like Brazil, Argentina, and Colombia have been at the forefront of precision farming adoption in the region [41].

In Brazil, precision farming has been widely adopted in crops such as soybeans, maize, and sugarcane. The use of GPS-guided machinery, variable rate fertilization, and yield mapping has helped farmers increase productivity and reduce environmental impacts [42].

Argentina has also witnessed significant growth in precision farming, particularly in the Pampas region, known for its extensive agricultural production. The adoption of precision farming technologies has been supported by government initiatives, private sector investments, and research collaborations [43].

3.2. **Case Studies and Success Stories**

The global adoption of precision farming has led to numerous success stories and case studies demonstrating the benefits of this approach in optimizing resource utilization and improving agricultural sustainability. These case studies highlight the practical applications of precision farming techniques and their positive impact on crop productivity, input efficiency, and environmental stewardship.

3.2.1. ***Precision Nutrient Management in the United States***

In the United States, precision nutrient management has been successfully implemented in various cropping systems. One notable example is the use of variable rate fertilization in corn production. By combining soil mapping, yield data, and remote sensing, farmers have been able to optimize nitrogen application rates based on site-specific requirements [44].

A case study from Illinois demonstrated that variable rate nitrogen application in corn fields led to an average yield increase of 4.5 bushels per acre and a reduction in nitrogen usage by 20 pounds per acre compared to uniform application [45]. This approach not only improved nutrient use efficiency but also reduced the risk of nitrogen leaching and environmental pollution.

3.2.2. ***Variable Rate Irrigation in Spain***

Spain, a country facing water scarcity challenges, has successfully implemented variable rate irrigation (VRI) in precision farming. VRI systems allow farmers to apply water at different rates across a field based on soil moisture levels, crop water requirements, and topographic variations [46].

A case study from Albacete, Spain, showcased the benefits of VRI in a commercial vineyard. By using soil moisture sensors, remote sensing, and precision irrigation controllers, the vineyard achieved water savings of 22% compared to traditional uniform irrigation [47]. The VRI system also improved grape quality and yield uniformity, demonstrating the potential of precision irrigation in enhancing water use efficiency and crop performance.

3.2.3. *Yield Mapping and Site-Specific Management in Brazil*

Brazil, a major agricultural producer, has embraced precision farming technologies to optimize crop management and improve yield potential. Yield mapping has been widely adopted in Brazilian agriculture, providing valuable insights into the spatial variability of crop performance [48].

A case study from Mato Grosso, Brazil, demonstrated the successful application of yield mapping and site-specific management in a large-scale soybean farm. By analyzing yield maps and integrating them with soil and remote sensing data, the farm managers identified areas of low productivity and implemented targeted management practices, such as variable rate fertilization and precision pest control [49].

The site-specific management approach resulted in a 12% increase in soybean yields and a 15% reduction in input costs compared to the conventional uniform management [50]. This case study highlights the potential of precision farming in optimizing resource utilization, improving crop yields, and enhancing the economic viability of agricultural operations.

These case studies and success stories from different parts of the world demonstrate the tangible benefits of precision farming in optimizing resource utilization and improving agricultural sustainability. By leveraging advanced technologies, data-driven insights, and site-specific management practices, farmers can achieve higher crop yields, reduce input costs, and minimize environmental impacts.

As precision farming continues to evolve and expand globally, it is crucial to share knowledge, experiences, and best practices across different regions and farming systems. Collaborative efforts among researchers, farmers, industry stakeholders, and policymakers can facilitate the widespread adoption of precision farming technologies and promote sustainable agricultural intensification worldwide.

4. Precision Farming in Asia

4.1. Overview of Precision Farming Practices in Asia

Asia, with its diverse agricultural landscapes, varying socio-economic conditions, and increasing food demand, presents unique opportunities and challenges for the adoption of precision farming practices. While the adoption of precision farming in Asia is still in its early stages compared to some developed countries, there has been a growing interest and gradual uptake of these technologies across the region.

The application of precision farming techniques in Asia varies depending on the specific country, cropping system, and farm size.

Some of the common precision farming practices observed in the region include:

1. **Yield Mapping**: The use of yield monitors and GPS-enabled harvesters to generate yield maps has been gaining traction in countries like China, India, and Malaysia. Yield mapping provides valuable insights into the spatial variability of crop performance and helps farmers identify areas of low and high productivity [51].
2. **Remote Sensing**: Satellite imagery and unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) are being increasingly used in Asian countries to monitor crop health, assess nutrient status, and detect pest and disease outbreaks. Remote sensing data helps farmers make informed decisions about fertilizer application, irrigation scheduling, and pest management [52].

3. **Variable Rate Technology**: Variable rate application of inputs, such as fertilizers and pesticides, is being adopted in some advanced agricultural regions in Asia. By combining soil maps, yield data, and crop requirements, farmers can optimize input application rates and reduce wastage [53].
4. **Precision Irrigation**: Water scarcity is a major challenge in many Asian countries, and precision irrigation techniques, such as drip irrigation and soil moisture monitoring, are being employed to optimize water use efficiency. Precision irrigation helps farmers conserve water resources and improve crop yields [54].
5. **Precision Planting**: The use of precision planters and seed drills is gaining popularity in Asian countries, particularly for high-value crops. Precision planting enables accurate seed placement, optimizes plant density, and reduces seed wastage [55].

Despite the growing interest in precision farming, the adoption of these technologies in Asia faces several challenges. These include the predominance of smallholder farming systems, limited access to technology and information, high initial costs of precision farming equipment, and the need for capacity building and training [56].

However, governments, research institutions, and private sector organizations in various Asian countries are actively promoting precision farming practices through policy support, research and development, and extension services. For example, the Indian government has launched initiatives like the "National Mission on Agricultural Extension and Technology" to promote precision farming and provide training to farmers [57].

In China, the government has been supporting the development of precision agriculture through research funding, subsidies for equipment purchase, and the establishment of demonstration farms [58]. Similarly, countries like South Korea, Japan, and Malaysia have implemented policies and programs to encourage the adoption of precision farming technologies [59].

As the demand for food continues to grow in Asia, and the pressure on agricultural resources intensifies, precision farming presents a promising solution to optimize resource utilization, improve crop yields, and ensure food security. The successful adoption and implementation of precision farming in Asia will require collaborative efforts among stakeholders, including farmers, researchers, policymakers, and industry partners.

4.2. **Adoption Challenges and Opportunities**

The adoption of precision farming in Asia faces several challenges that need to be addressed to realize its full potential. However, these challenges also present opportunities for innovation, collaboration, and sustainable agricultural development.

4.2.1. *Smallholder Farming Systems*

One of the major challenges for precision farming adoption in Asia is the predominance of smallholder farming systems. Smallholder farmers often have limited access to resources, technology, and information, making it difficult for them to invest in precision farming equipment and implement site-specific management practices [60].

However, this challenge also presents an opportunity for the development of low-cost, user-friendly precision farming technologies that are suitable for smallholder farmers. For example, the use of mobile phone applications and affordable sensors can help smallholder farmers access precision farming tools and information [61].

Collaborative models, such as farmer cooperatives and community-based precision farming initiatives, can also help overcome the challenges of small farm sizes and limited resources. By pooling resources and sharing knowledge, smallholder farmers can collectively adopt precision farming practices and benefit from improved productivity and resource use efficiency [62].

4.2.2. *Technology Access and Affordability*

Another challenge for precision farming adoption in Asia is the limited access to and affordability of precision farming technologies. Many farmers, especially in developing countries, may not have the financial means to invest in expensive precision farming equipment, such as high-end sensors, drones, and variable rate applicators [63].

To address this challenge, there is a need for the development of cost-effective precision farming solutions that are accessible to a wider range of farmers. This can be achieved through the promotion of locally developed technologies, the establishment of equipment rental or sharing services, and the provision of financial incentives or subsidies for precision farming adoption [64].

Moreover, the private sector can play a crucial role in making precision farming technologies more affordable and accessible. Collaborations between technology providers, agricultural input suppliers, and financial institutions can help create innovative business models and financing options that support the uptake of precision farming practices [65].

4.2.3. *Capacity Building and Extension Services*

The successful adoption of precision farming in Asia requires capacity building and effective extension services to educate and train farmers on the use of precision technologies and data-driven decision-making. Many farmers in the region may lack the technical knowledge and skills needed to effectively implement precision farming practices [66].

To address this challenge, there is a need for comprehensive training programs and extension services that provide farmers with the necessary knowledge and skills to adopt precision farming technologies. These programs should cover topics such as data collection, interpretation, and application, as well as the use of precision farming equipment and software [67].

Extension services can also play a crucial role in promoting precision farming adoption by demonstrating the benefits of these technologies through on-farm trials, field days, and workshops. By showcasing successful case studies and providing hands-on training, extension agents can help farmers understand the value of precision farming and encourage its uptake [68].

Furthermore, the establishment of precision farming knowledge networks and platforms can facilitate the exchange of information, experiences, and best practices among farmers, researchers, and industry stakeholders. These networks can help bridge the knowledge gap and accelerate the adoption of precision farming practices across the region [69].

The challenges and opportunities for precision farming adoption in Asia highlight the need for a multi-stakeholder approach that involves farmers, researchers, policymakers, and industry partners. By addressing the specific needs of smallholder farmers, developing affordable and accessible technologies, and providing effective capacity building and extension services, the adoption of precision farming in Asia can be accelerated, leading to improved agricultural productivity, resource use efficiency, and sustainability.

4.3. **Case Studies from Asian Countries**

Several Asian countries have successfully implemented precision farming practices, demonstrating the potential of these technologies in improving agricultural productivity and resource use efficiency. The following case studies showcase the application of precision farming techniques in different cropping systems and socio-economic contexts.

4.3.1. ***Precision Rice Farming in China***

China, the world's largest rice producer, has been actively promoting precision farming practices to optimize rice production and reduce environmental impacts. A notable example is the implementation of precision nitrogen management in rice fields.

Researchers from the Chinese Academy of Agricultural Sciences conducted a study on precision nitrogen management in a rice-wheat cropping system in Jiangsu Province [70]. By using a combination of soil testing, leaf color charts, and remote sensing, they developed site-specific nitrogen recommendations for different growth stages of rice.

The results showed that precision nitrogen management increased rice yields by 5-10% and reduced nitrogen fertilizer application by 20-30% compared to the farmers' conventional practices [71]. This approach not only improved nitrogen use efficiency but also reduced greenhouse gas emissions and water pollution associated with excessive nitrogen application.

The success of precision nitrogen management in rice has led to its promotion and adoption in other major rice-growing regions in China, such as the Yangtze River Basin and the Pearl River Delta [72]. The Chinese government has also launched initiatives to support the scaling up of precision rice farming, including subsidies for soil testing and the establishment of precision farming demonstration farms [73].

4.3.2. *Site-Specific Nutrient Management in Indonesia*

Indonesia, the world's third-largest rice producer, has been implementing site-specific nutrient management (SSNM) practices to optimize fertilizer use and improve rice yields. In a study conducted by the Indonesian Center for Food Crops Research and Development, SSNM practices were evaluated in irrigated rice fields across six provinces in Indonesia [74]. The SSNM approach involved the use of the Rice Crop Manager, a decision support tool that provides customized fertilizer recommendations based on field-specific conditions and crop requirements.

The results showed that SSNM increased rice yields by an average of 0.5 tons per hectare and reduced fertilizer costs by 10-15% compared to the farmers' conventional practices [75]. The SSNM approach also helped reduce the environmental footprint of rice production by minimizing nutrient losses and improving soil health.

The success of SSNM in Indonesia has led to its promotion through the "One Million Farmers" program, which aims to reach one million smallholder rice farmers with precision farming technologies and practices [76]. The program involves the dissemination of the Rice Crop Manager, capacity building for farmers and extension workers, and the establishment of demonstration plots to showcase the benefits of SSNM.

4.3.3. *Precision Horticulture in Japan*

Japan, known for its advanced agricultural technologies, has been applying precision farming practices in horticultural crops, particularly in greenhouse production systems. One notable example is the use of precision irrigation and fertigation in tomato cultivation.

In a study conducted by researchers from the National Agriculture and Food Research Organization, a precision irrigation and fertigation system was developed for greenhouse tomato production [77]. The system utilized soil moisture sensors, pH and electrical conductivity sensors, and a computer-based control system to optimize water and nutrient delivery based on the crop's real-time requirements.

The results showed that precision irrigation and fertigation increased tomato yields by 20-30% and improved fruit quality compared to conventional practices [78]. The system also reduced water and fertilizer use by 30-40%, demonstrating the potential of precision farming in enhancing resource use efficiency and sustainability.

The Japanese government has been supporting the adoption of precision horticulture through various initiatives, such as the "Smart Agriculture" program, which promotes the use of advanced technologies, including IoT sensors, robotics, and data analytics, in agricultural production [79]. The program aims to address the challenges of an aging farming population and limited agricultural land in Japan by improving productivity and efficiency through precision farming practices.

These case studies from China, Indonesia, and Japan demonstrate the successful application of precision farming practices in different cropping systems and socio-economic contexts in Asia. The adoption of precision farming technologies, such as site-specific nutrient management, precision irrigation, and fertigation, has led to improved crop yields, reduced input costs, and enhanced environmental sustainability.

As precision farming continues to gain momentum in Asia, it is important to learn from these success stories and adapt the technologies and practices to the specific needs and conditions of each country and farming system. By sharing knowledge, experiences, and best practices across the region, Asian countries can accelerate the adoption of precision farming and contribute to the sustainable intensification of agriculture.

5. Precision Farming in India

5.1. Current Status and Potential of Precision Farming in India

India, with its diverse agro-climatic conditions, large agricultural land, and growing population, presents a significant opportunity for the adoption of precision farming practices. The country faces numerous challenges, such as resource constraints, climate variability, and the need to ensure food security for its 1.3 billion people [80]. Precision farming offers a promising solution to address these challenges and optimize agricultural production in India.

The current status of precision farming in India is still in its early stages compared to some developed countries, but there has been a growing interest and gradual uptake of these technologies in recent years. The adoption of precision farming practices varies across different states, crops, and farm sizes in India.

Some of the precision farming technologies and practices being adopted in India include:

1. **Soil Mapping and Testing**: The use of soil testing and mapping techniques to assess soil fertility status and provide site-specific nutrient recommendations has been increasing in India. The Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR) has been promoting soil testing through its network of soil testing laboratories and the "Soil Health Card" scheme [81].
2. **Precision Irrigation**: Water scarcity is a major challenge in many parts of India, and precision irrigation techniques, such as drip irrigation and sprinkler systems, are being adopted to optimize water use efficiency. The government has been supporting the adoption of micro-irrigation technologies through subsidy programs and the "Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchayee Yojana" (PMKSY) scheme [82].
3. **Remote Sensing and GIS**: The use of remote sensing and geographic information systems (GIS) for crop monitoring, yield estimation, and resource mapping has been increasing in India. Organizations like the Indian Space Research Organisation (ISRO) and the National Remote Sensing Centre (NRSC) have been providing satellite data and geospatial tools to support precision farming applications [83].
4. **Yield Monitoring**: The adoption of yield monitoring technologies, such as crop cutting experiments and remote sensing-based yield estimation, has been growing in India. These technologies help farmers assess crop performance and identify areas for improvement [84].

5. **Drones and UAVs**: The use of unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) or drones for precision agriculture applications, such as crop health monitoring, pest and disease detection, and input application, has been gaining traction in India. The government has recently liberalized the drone policy to promote their use in agriculture [85].

Despite these developments, the adoption of precision farming in India faces several challenges, including the predominance of smallholder farmers, limited access to technology and information, high initial costs, and the need for capacity building and training [86].

However, the potential for precision farming in India is immense, given the country's large agricultural land, diverse cropping systems, and the need to optimize resource use and improve productivity. Studies have shown that the adoption of precision farming practices in India can lead to significant benefits, such as increased crop yields, reduced input costs, and improved resource use efficiency [87].

For example, a study conducted by the Indian Agricultural Research Institute (IARI) on precision nitrogen management in wheat showed that site-specific nitrogen application based on leaf color charts and Green-Seeker sensors increased wheat yields by 8-12% and reduced nitrogen use by 15-20% compared to the farmers' practice [88].

Another study by the Tamil Nadu Agricultural University (TNAU) on precision farming in sugarcane demonstrated that the use of drip irrigation, fertigation, and site-specific nutrient management increased sugarcane yields by 20-30% and reduced water and fertilizer use by 30-40% compared to conventional practices [89].

The Indian government has been recognizing the potential of precision farming and has launched several initiatives to promote its adoption, such as the "National Mission on Agricultural Extension and Technology" (NMAET) and the "Sub-Mission on Agricultural Mechanization" (SMAM) [90]. These initiatives aim to provide financial support, capacity building, and technology transfer to farmers for the adoption of precision farming practices.

In addition, several private sector companies, startups, and agri-tech firms have been emerging in India to provide precision farming solutions and services to farmers. These include companies offering drone-based crop monitoring, soil testing and nutrient management, precision irrigation systems, and data analytics platforms [91].

Overall, while the current adoption of precision farming in India is limited, the potential for its growth and impact is significant. With the right policies, investments, and collaborations among stakeholders, precision farming can play a crucial role in transforming Indian agriculture towards sustainable intensification and food security.

5.2. **Government Initiatives and Policy Support**

The Indian government has been recognizing the importance of precision farming in addressing the challenges faced by the agricultural sector and has launched several initiatives and policies to promote its adoption. These initiatives aim to provide financial support, technology access, capacity building, and an enabling environment for the uptake of precision farming practices in India.

5.2.1. ***National Mission on Agricultural Extension and Technology (NMAET)***

The National Mission on Agricultural Extension and Technology (NMAET) is a flagship program launched by the Indian government in 2014 to promote the adoption of modern agricultural technologies and improve agricultural extension services [92]. The mission includes a sub-mission on "Agricultural Technology" which focuses on the promotion of precision farming practices.

Under the NMAET, the government provides financial support to state agricultural universities, Krishi Vigyan Kendras (KVKs), and other research institutions for the development and dissemination of precision farming technologies. The mission also supports the establishment of precision farming demonstration plots, training programs for farmers and extension workers, and the creation of agri-tech startups and entrepreneurship [93].

5.2.2. ***Soil Health Card Scheme***

The Soil Health Card (SHC) scheme is a major initiative launched by the Indian government in 2015 to promote soil testing and site-specific nutrient management [94]. Under the scheme, soil health cards are issued to farmers, which provide information on the nutrient status of their soil and recommendations for balanced fertilization.

The SHC scheme aims to cover all 14 crore (140 million) landholdings in the country and promote the judicious use of fertilizers based on soil health status. The scheme has been implemented through a network of soil testing laboratories across the country, and the government has set up a National Soil Health Card Portal for online data management and dissemination [95].

The SHC scheme has the potential to support precision farming practices by providing farmers with reliable soil information and enabling site-specific nutrient management. Studies have shown that the adoption of SHC-based fertilizer recommendations can lead to increased crop yields, reduced fertilizer costs, and improved soil health [96].

5.2.3. *Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchai Yojana (PMKSY)*

`The Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchai Yojana (PMKSY) is a national program launched by the Indian government in 2015 to improve irrigation coverage and water use efficiency in agriculture [97]. The program includes a component on "Per Drop More Crop" which focuses on the promotion of micro-irrigation technologies, such as drip and sprinkler irrigation.

Under the PMKSY, the government provides financial assistance to farmers for the installation of micro-irrigation systems, with a special focus on water-stressed regions and water-intensive crops. The program also supports the development of precision irrigation technologies, such as sensor-based irrigation scheduling and automated irrigation systems [98].

The adoption of micro-irrigation technologies under the PMKSY has the potential to support precision farming practices by enabling precise and efficient water application based on crop requirements and soil moisture conditions. Studies have shown that the use of drip irrigation can lead to water savings of 30-

60% and yield increases of 20-50% compared to conventional irrigation methods [99].

In addition to these major initiatives, the Indian government has also launched other programs and policies that can support the adoption of precision farming, such as the Sub-Mission on Agricultural Mechanization (SMAM) for the promotion of farm mechanization, the National e-Governance Plan in Agriculture (NeGP-A) for the development of ICT-based agricultural services, and the Startup India initiative for the promotion of agri-tech startups [100].

However, the effective implementation of these initiatives and policies requires coordination among various stakeholders, including government agencies, research institutions, extension services, private sector players, and farmers. There is also a need for adequate funding, infrastructure development, capacity building, and awareness creation to enable the widespread adoption of precision farming practices in India.

Overall, the government initiatives and policy support in India provide a conducive environment for the growth of precision farming, but there is still a long way to go in terms of translating these initiatives into large-scale adoption and impact on the ground. Continued efforts and collaborations among stakeholders are necessary to realize the full potential of precision farming in Indian agriculture.

5.3. **Precision Farming Techniques for Major Crops in India**

India is a major producer of various crops, including cereals, pulses, oilseeds, and cash crops, and the adoption of precision farming techniques can significantly improve the productivity and sustainability of these cropping systems. Here, we discuss the precision farming techniques being applied or having potential for major crops in India.

5.3.1. ***Wheat***

Wheat is a major cereal crop in India, with a production of around 100 million tons per year [101]. Precision farming techniques, such as site-specific nutrient management, precision irrigation, and yield mapping, have shown promising results in improving wheat productivity and resource use efficiency.

A study conducted by the Indian Agricultural Research Institute (IARI) on precision nitrogen management in wheat using leaf color charts and GreenSeeker sensors showed that site-specific nitrogen application increased wheat yields by 8-12% and reduced nitrogen use by 15-20% compared to the farmers' practice [102].

Another study by the Punjab Agricultural University (PAU) on precision irrigation in wheat using soil moisture sensors and automated irrigation systems demonstrated water savings of 25-30% and yield increases of 10-15% compared to conventional irrigation practices [103].

5.3.2. *Rice*

Rice is another major cereal crop in India, with a production of around 120 million tons per year [104]. Precision farming techniques, such as laser land leveling, precision transplanting, and site-specific nutrient management, have shown potential in improving rice productivity and resource use efficiency.

A study by the Tamil Nadu Agricultural University (TNAU) on laser land leveling in rice showed that it led to water savings of 20-25%, yield increases of 10-15%, and reduced labor and energy costs compared to traditional land leveling methods [105].

Another study by the International Rice Research Institute (IRRI) on precision transplanting using mechanical transplanters demonstrated that it led to uniform plant spacing, reduced seed rate, and increased yields by 10-20% compared to manual transplanting [106].

5.3.3. *Cotton*

Cotton is a major cash crop in India, with a production of around 30 million bales per year [107]. Precision farming techniques, such as variable rate fertilization, precision pest management, and yield mapping, have shown potential in improving cotton productivity and quality.

A study by the Central Institute for Cotton Research (CICR) on variable rate fertilization in cotton using soil test-based recommendations and GPS-guided applicators showed that it led to yield increases of 10-15% and fertilizer savings of 15-20% compared to uniform application [108].

Another study by the University of Agricultural Sciences (UAS) Dharwad on precision pest management in cotton using pheromone traps and weather-based advisories demonstrated that it led to reduced pesticide use by 30-40% and increased yields by 10-20% compared to calendar-based spraying [109].

5.3.4. *Sugarcane*

Sugarcane is an important cash crop in India, with a production of around 400 million tons per year [110]. Precision farming techniques, such as drip irrigation, fertigation, and remote sensing-based crop monitoring, have shown potential in improving sugarcane productivity and resource use efficiency. A study by the Vasantdada Sugar Institute (VSI) on drip irrigation and fertigation in sugarcane showed that it led to water savings of 40-50%, fertilizer savings of 25-30%, and yield increases of 20-30% compared to conventional practices [111].

Another study by the Indian Institute of Sugarcane Research (IISR) on remote sensing-based crop monitoring using satellite imagery and spectral indices demonstrated that it enabled the early detection of nutrient deficiencies, water stress, and pest and disease infestations in sugarcane, leading to timely interventions and improved crop management [112].

5.4. **Challenges and Opportunities for Precision Farming Adoption in India**

While precision farming has the potential to transform Indian agriculture, its adoption faces several challenges that need to be addressed. At the same time, these challenges also present opportunities for innovation, collaboration, and sustainable agricultural development.

5.4.1. *Fragmented Land Holdings*

One of the major challenges for precision farming adoption in India is the predominance of small and fragmented land holdings. According to the Agricultural Census 2015-16, the average size of operational holdings in India is only 1.08 hectares, with 86% of the holdings being less than 2 hectares [113].

The small size of land holdings makes it difficult for farmers to invest in precision farming technologies, which often require high initial costs and economies of scale. It also poses challenges for the efficient use of machinery and the implementation of site-specific management practices.

However, this challenge also presents an opportunity for the development of small-scale and affordable precision farming technologies that are suitable for smallholder farmers. For example, the use of low-cost sensors, mobile applications, and cloud-based services can enable precision farming practices even in small land holdings [114].

Collaborative models, such as farmer producer organizations (FPOs) and custom hiring centers (CHCs), can also help overcome the challenges of small land holdings by enabling the sharing of resources and services among farmers [115].

5.4.2. *Lack of Awareness and Technical Expertise*

Another challenge for precision farming adoption in India is the lack of awareness and technical expertise among farmers and extension workers. Many farmers are not aware of the benefits and applications of precision farming technologies, and they may lack the skills and knowledge required to use them effectively.

A study by the Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR) on the awareness and adoption of precision farming technologies among farmers in selected states of India showed that only 10-15% of the farmers were aware of these technologies, and less than 5% had adopted them [116].

To address this challenge, there is a need for extensive outreach and capacity building programs to create awareness and impart technical skills among farmers and extension workers. These programs can include demonstrations, training workshops, field days, and exposure visits to successful precision farming projects [117].

The use of information and communication technologies (ICTs), such as mobile apps, videos, and social media, can also help in disseminating information and knowledge about precision farming practices to a wider audience [118].

5.4.3. *Infrastructure and Connectivity Issues*

The adoption of precision farming technologies often requires reliable infrastructure and connectivity, such as electricity, internet, and GPS services. However, many rural areas in India face challenges in accessing these basic amenities, which can hinder the adoption and effective use of precision farming technologies.

For example, the use of sensor-based irrigation systems, drone-based crop monitoring, and cloud-based data analytics platforms requires reliable electricity supply and internet connectivity, which may not be available in remote and underserved regions [119].

To overcome this challenge, there is a need for investments in rural infrastructure development, such as electrification, broadband connectivity, and satellite-based services. Public-private partnerships (PPPs) can play a crucial role in building and managing these infrastructure projects [120].

The use of off-grid and resilient technologies, such as solar-powered sensors and offline mobile applications, can also help in overcoming the infrastructure and connectivity challenges in rural areas [121].

5.4.4. *Cost of Precision Farming Technologies*

The high cost of precision farming technologies, such as sensors, drones, and variable rate applicators, is another major challenge for their adoption among farmers, especially smallholders. Many farmers may not have the financial resources or access to credit to invest in these technologies, which can limit their adoption and impact.

For example, a study by the National Institute of Agricultural Economics and Policy Research (NIAP) on the economics of precision farming in India showed that the cost of adopting precision farming technologies can range from Rs. 5,000 to Rs. 1,00,000 per hectare, depending on the type and scale of technology [122].

To address this challenge, there is a need for innovative financing models and policy support to make precision farming technologies more affordable and accessible to farmers. These can include subsidies, loans, and risk-sharing mechanisms that can help in reducing the upfront costs and risks associated with technology adoption [123].

The development of low-cost and indigenous precision farming technologies, such as sensors, drones, and software platforms, can also help in reducing the cost of adoption and promoting local innovation and entrepreneurship [124].

In addition to these specific challenges, there are also broader institutional and policy challenges that need to be addressed for the widespread adoption of precision farming in India. These include the need for stronger research and extension systems, better market linkages and value chains, and an enabling policy and regulatory environment that promotes innovation and investment in precision farming [125].

Despite these challenges, the opportunities for precision farming adoption in India are immense, given the country's diverse agro-climatic conditions, large agricultural workforce, and growing demand for food and agricultural products. The adoption of precision farming technologies can help in increasing crop yields, reducing input costs, improving resource use efficiency, and enhancing the income and livelihood security of farmers [126].

The success stories and case studies of precision farming adoption in India, such as the use of laser land leveling in rice, precision nutrient management in wheat, and drip irrigation in sugarcane, demonstrate the potential benefits and impact of these technologies [127].

To realize these opportunities, there is a need for a multi-stakeholder approach that brings together farmers, researchers, extension workers, private sector players, and policymakers to create an enabling ecosystem for precision farming adoption in India. This includes investments in research and development, capacity building, infrastructure development, and policy support that can help in scaling up and mainstreaming precision farming practices across the country [128].

Overall, while the challenges for precision farming adoption in India are significant, the opportunities are also immense. By addressing these challenges and leveraging the opportunities, India can harness the potential of precision farming to transform its agriculture sector and achieve the goals of food security, sustainability, and rural development.

6. Resource Optimization through Precision Farming

Precision farming offers a range of techniques and technologies that can help in optimizing the use of resources, such as water, nutrients, and energy, in agricultural production. By enabling targeted and efficient use of these resources, precision farming can contribute to sustainable intensification and resource conservation in agriculture.

6.1. Nutrient Management

Nutrient management is a critical aspect of precision farming that involves the precise application of fertilizers and other nutrients based on the specific requirements of crops and soil conditions. Precision nutrient management can help in optimizing nutrient use efficiency, reducing nutrient losses, and minimizing the environmental impacts of fertilizer use.

6.1.1. *Site-Specific Nutrient Management (SSNM)*

Site-Specific Nutrient Management (SSNM) is a precision farming approach that involves the application of nutrients based on the specific needs of crops and soil conditions in different parts of a field. SSNM takes into account the spatial variability in soil fertility, crop growth, and yield potential to determine the optimal rate, timing, and placement of nutrient application [129].

The principles of SSNM include:

- Assessment of soil nutrient status and crop nutrient requirements
- Determination of the optimal nutrient application rates based on site-specific conditions
- Synchronization of nutrient supply with crop demand
- Placement of nutrients in the root zone for maximum uptake efficiency
- Monitoring and adjustment of nutrient management based on crop performance and soil test results [130]

SSNM has been widely adopted in various crops, such as rice, wheat, and maize, and has shown significant benefits in terms of increased yields, reduced nutrient losses, and improved nutrient use efficiency. For example, a study by the International Rice Research Institute (IRRI) on SSNM in rice in six Asian countries showed that it led to average yield increases of 0.7-1.0 ton/ha and nitrogen use efficiency improvements of 30-40% compared to farmers' practices [131].

6.1.2. *Precision Fertigation*

Precision fertigation is a precision farming technique that involves the application of fertilizers through irrigation systems, such as drip or sprinkler irrigation. Fertigation allows for the precise and timely delivery of nutrients to the root zone of crops, based on their growth stage and nutrient requirements [132].

The advantages of precision fertigation include:

- Improved nutrient use efficiency and reduced nutrient losses
- Synchronization of nutrient supply with crop demand
- Reduced labor and energy costs for fertilizer application
- Potential for automation and remote monitoring of nutrient management [133]

Precision fertigation has been successfully adopted in various horticultural and high-value crops, such as vegetables, fruits, and ornamentals. For example, a study by the Indian Agricultural Research Institute (IARI) on precision fertigation in tomato showed that it led to yield increases of 20-30% and water and fertilizer savings of 30-40% compared to conventional practices [134].

6.1.3. *Nutrient Use Efficiency* Nutrient use efficiency (NUE) is a key indicator of the effectiveness of nutrient management in precision farming. NUE refers to the proportion of applied nutrients that are taken up and utilized by crops for growth and yield [135].

Precision farming techniques, such as SSNM and precision fertigation, can help in improving NUE by ensuring that nutrients are applied in the right amount, at the right time, and in the right place. This can help in reducing nutrient losses through leaching, runoff, and volatilization, and maximizing the uptake and utilization of nutrients by crops [136].

The improvement of NUE through precision farming can lead to multiple benefits, such as:

- Increased crop yields and quality
- Reduced fertilizer costs and environmental impacts
- Improved soil health and fertility
- Enhanced sustainability and resilience of agricultural systems [137]

For example, a study by the Punjab Agricultural University (PAU) on precision nitrogen management in wheat using leaf color charts and optical sensors showed that it led to NUE improvements of 15-20% and yield increases of 5-10% compared to conventional practices [138].

Overall, precision nutrient management techniques, such as SSNM, precision fertigation, and NUE improvement, can help in optimizing the use of nutrients in agriculture, while achieving the goals of productivity, profitability, and sustainability. The adoption of these techniques requires a combination of technology, knowledge, and policy support to enable their widespread use among farmers.

6.2. Water Management

Water is a critical resource for agriculture, and its efficient use is essential for sustainable and productive farming systems. Precision farming techniques offer a range of tools and approaches for optimizing water management in agriculture, from irrigation scheduling to soil moisture monitoring and water use efficiency improvement.

6.2.1. *Precision Irrigation*

Precision irrigation is a precision farming approach that involves the application of water to crops based on their specific requirements and soil moisture conditions. Precision irrigation techniques, such as drip irrigation, sprinkler irrigation, and micro-irrigation, enable the targeted and efficient delivery of water to the root zone of crops, minimizing water losses through evaporation, runoff, and deep percolation [139].

The advantages of precision irrigation include:

- Improved water use efficiency and water productivity

- Reduced water losses and environmental impacts
- Enhanced crop yields and quality
- Potential for automation and remote monitoring of irrigation systems [140]

Precision irrigation has been widely adopted in various crops and regions, especially in water-scarce and high-value farming systems. For example, a study by the International Crops Research Institute for the Semi-Arid Tropics (ICRISAT) on precision irrigation in chickpea in Ethiopia showed that it led to water savings of 30-50% and yield increases of 20-30% compared to traditional irrigation practices [141].

6.2.2. *Soil Moisture Monitoring*

Soil moisture monitoring is a key component of precision irrigation that involves the measurement and analysis of soil moisture levels in different parts of a field. Soil moisture sensors, such as tensiometers, capacitance probes, and time-domain reflectometry (TDR) sensors, can provide real-time data on soil moisture status, enabling farmers to make informed decisions on irrigation scheduling and water management [142].

The benefits of soil moisture monitoring in precision irrigation include:

- Optimization of irrigation timing and amount based on crop water requirements and soil moisture conditions
- Avoidance of over-irrigation and under-irrigation, which can lead to water stress, nutrient leaching, and yield losses
- Improvement of water use efficiency and water productivity
- Potential for integration with other precision farming technologies, such as weather stations, remote sensing, and variable rate irrigation systems [143]

Soil moisture monitoring has been successfully adopted in various crops and regions, such as cotton in Australia, sugarcane in Brazil, and vegetables in Israel. For example, a study by the Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation (CSIRO) on soil moisture monitoring in cotton in Australia showed that it led to water savings of 20-30% and yield increases of 10-15% compared to conventional irrigation practices [144].

6.2.3. *Water Use Efficiency*

Water use efficiency (WUE) is a key indicator of the effectiveness of water management in precision farming. WUE refers to the amount of crop yield produced per unit of water used, and it can be expressed in terms of crop water productivity (CWP) or irrigation water use efficiency (IWUE) [145].

Precision farming techniques, such as precision irrigation and soil moisture monitoring, can help in improving WUE by ensuring that water is applied in the right amount, at the right time, and in the right place. This can help in reducing water losses, maximizing crop water uptake, and enhancing crop yields and quality [146].

The improvement of WUE through precision farming can lead to multiple benefits, such as:

- Increased crop yields and water productivity
- Reduced water costs and environmental impacts
- Improved resilience and adaptability to water scarcity and climate change
- Enhanced sustainability and profitability of agricultural systems [147]

For example, a study by the International Water Management Institute (IWMI) on precision irrigation in maize in Tanzania showed that it led to WUE improvements of 30-40% and yield increases of 20-30% compared to traditional irrigation practices [148].

Overall, precision water management techniques, such as precision irrigation, soil moisture monitoring, and WUE improvement, can help in optimizing the use of water in agriculture, while achieving the goals of productivity, sustainability, and resilience. The adoption of these techniques requires a combination of technology, knowledge, and policy support to enable their widespread use among farmers, especially in water-scarce and vulnerable regions.

6.3. Pest and Disease Management

Pests and diseases are major constraints to agricultural production, causing significant yield losses and economic damages worldwide. Precision farming techniques offer a range of tools and approaches for optimizing pest and disease management in agriculture, from precision monitoring and diagnosis to site-specific control and integrated pest management.

6.3.1. *Precision Pest Monitoring*

Precision pest monitoring is a precision farming approach that involves the use of advanced technologies, such as remote sensing, sensor networks, and mobile apps, for the early detection and diagnosis of pest and disease outbreaks in crops. Precision pest monitoring enables farmers to identify the location, severity, and extent of pest and disease infestations, and to make informed decisions on control measures [149].

The advantages of precision pest monitoring include:

- Early warning and timely intervention of pest and disease outbreaks
- Reduction of crop losses and economic damages
- Optimization of pest and disease control measures based on site-specific conditions
- Potential for integration with other precision farming technologies, such as weather forecasting, crop modeling, and decision support systems [150]

Precision pest monitoring has been successfully adopted in various crops and regions, such as rice in Japan, citrus in Brazil, and cotton in the United States. For example, a study by the National Agriculture and Food Research Organization (NARO) on precision pest monitoring in rice in Japan showed that it led to a 50-70% reduction in pesticide use and a 20-30% increase in yield compared to conventional pest management practices [151].

6.3.2. *Site-Specific Pest Control* Site-specific

pest control is a precision farming approach that involves the application of pesticides and other control measures based on the specific location and severity of pest and disease infestations in a field. Site-specific pest control enables farmers to optimize the use of pesticides, reduce environmental impacts, and improve the effectiveness and efficiency of pest and disease management [152].

The advantages of site-specific pest control include:

- Reduction of pesticide use and costs

- Minimization of environmental and health risks associated with pesticide use
- Improvement of pest and disease control efficacy and crop protection
- Potential for automation and variable rate application of pesticides [153]

Site-specific pest control has been successfully adopted in various crops and regions, such as wheat in Germany, apples in the United States, and grapes in Australia. For example, a study by the Julius Kühn-Institut (JKI) on site-specific fungicide application in wheat in Germany showed that it led to a 30-50% reduction in fungicide use and a 5-10% increase in yield compared to uniform application [154].

6.3.3. *Integrated Pest Management (IPM)*

Integrated Pest Management (IPM) is a holistic approach to pest and disease management that combines various control methods, such as biological, cultural, physical, and chemical control, to minimize the economic, health, and environmental risks associated with pesticide use. IPM is based on the principles of prevention, monitoring, and intervention, and it emphasizes the use of non-chemical and ecological approaches to pest and disease management [155].

Precision farming techniques can support the implementation of IPM by providing tools and data for precision monitoring, site-specific control, and decision support. For example, remote sensing and sensor networks can help in the early detection and diagnosis of pest and disease outbreaks, enabling timely and targeted interventions. Site-specific pest control can help in reducing the use of chemical pesticides and minimizing their impacts on non-target organisms and the environment. Decision support systems can help in integrating various data sources and models to optimize the selection and timing of control measures based on economic and ecological thresholds [156].

The benefits of integrating precision farming and IPM include:

- Reduction of pesticide use and costs
- Minimization of environmental and health risks associated with pesticide use
- Improvement of pest and disease control efficacy and crop protection
- Enhancement of the sustainability and resilience of agricultural systems

- Promotion of the conservation and utilization of natural enemies and ecosystem services [157]

For example, a study by the International Centre for Tropical Agriculture (CIAT) on the integration of precision farming and IPM in cassava in Vietnam showed that it led to a 70-80% reduction in pesticide use, a 30-40% increase in yield, and a 50-60% increase in farmer income compared to conventional pest management practices [158].

6.4. Yield Optimization and Crop Management

Yield optimization and crop management are critical goals of precision farming, which involves the use of various techniques and technologies to improve crop productivity, quality, and profitability. Precision farming enables farmers to manage crops at a fine spatial and temporal scale, based on the specific needs and conditions of each part of a field, and to make informed decisions on input use, cultural practices, and harvest strategies.

6.4.1. *Precision Planting*

Precision planting is a precision farming technique that involves the use of advanced planting equipment and technologies to optimize seed placement, spacing, and depth based on soil conditions, seed characteristics, and desired plant population. Precision planting enables farmers to achieve uniform crop establishment, reduce seed costs, and improve crop yields and quality [159].

The advantages of precision planting include:

- Optimization of plant spacing and population based on site-specific conditions
- Reduction of seed costs and wastage
- Improvement of crop emergence, growth, and yield
- Potential for variable rate seeding and multi-hybrid planting [160]

Precision planting has been successfully adopted in various crops and regions, such as maize in the United States, sugarcane in Brazil, and cotton in China. For example, a study by the University of Illinois on precision planting in maize in the United States showed that it led to a 5-10% increase in yield and a

10-20% reduction in seed costs compared to conventional planting practices [161].

6.4.2. *Variable Rate Seeding*

Variable rate seeding is a precision farming technique that involves the application of different seeding rates based on the specific soil conditions, yield potential, and crop requirements of each part of a field. Variable rate seeding enables farmers to optimize seed inputs, improve crop uniformity and yield, and reduce production costs [162].

The advantages of variable rate seeding include:

- Optimization of seeding rates based on site-specific conditions
- Reduction of seed costs and wastage
- Improvement of crop emergence, growth, and yield
- Potential for integration with other precision farming technologies, such as soil mapping, yield monitoring, and decision support systems [163]

Variable rate seeding has been successfully adopted in various crops and regions, such as wheat in Australia, canola in Canada, and soybeans in Argentina. For example, a study by the Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation (CSIRO) on variable rate seeding in wheat in Australia showed that it led to a 10-15% increase in yield and a 20-30% reduction in seed costs compared to uniform seeding [164].

6.4.3. *Crop Health Monitoring*

Crop health monitoring is a precision farming technique that involves the use of various sensors, imaging technologies, and data analytics to assess the health status, stress levels, and nutrient deficiencies of crops in real-time. Crop health monitoring enables farmers to detect and diagnose crop problems early, and to make timely and targeted interventions to improve crop growth and yield [165].

The advantages of crop health monitoring include:

- Early detection and diagnosis of crop stress, pests, and diseases
- Optimization of nutrient, water, and pest management based on crop needs
- Improvement of crop growth, yield, and quality

- Potential for integration with other precision farming technologies, such as remote sensing, variable rate application, and decision support systems [166]

Crop health monitoring has been successfully adopted in various crops and regions, such as rice in Japan, potatoes in the Netherlands, and grapes in Chile. For example, a study by the National Agriculture and Food Research Organization (NARO) on crop health monitoring in rice in Japan showed that it led to a 20-30% reduction in nitrogen fertilizer use and a 10-15% increase in yield compared to conventional management practices [167].

Overall, precision planting, variable rate seeding, and crop health monitoring are important precision farming techniques for yield optimization and crop management. These techniques enable farmers to manage crops at a fine spatial and temporal scale, based on the specific needs and conditions of each part of a field, and to make informed decisions on input use, cultural practices, and harvest strategies. The adoption of these techniques requires a combination of technology, knowledge, and skills, as well as an enabling policy and institutional environment to support their widespread use among farmers.

7. Socio-Economic Implications of Precision Farming

Precision farming has significant socio-economic implications for farmers, rural communities, and the wider agricultural sector. While precision farming offers many potential benefits, such as increased productivity, profitability, and sustainability, it also presents various challenges and risks that need to be carefully considered and addressed.

7.1. Impact on Smallholder Farmers and Rural Livelihoods

Smallholder farmers, who constitute the majority of the world's farmers and produce a significant share of the global food supply, are particularly vulnerable to the impacts of precision farming. On one hand, precision farming technologies and practices can help smallholder farmers to increase their productivity, reduce their costs, and improve their livelihoods. For example, precision irrigation and nutrient management can help smallholder farmers to optimize their water and fertilizer use, increase their crop yields, and reduce their environmental impacts [168].

On the other hand, smallholder farmers often face significant barriers to adopting precision farming technologies and practices, such as high upfront costs, lack of access to credit and markets, limited technical knowledge and skills, and inadequate infrastructure and support services. These barriers can exacerbate the digital divide and widen the gap between large-scale and smallholder farmers, leading to increased inequality and marginalization [169].

To ensure that smallholder farmers can benefit from precision farming, it is important to develop and promote appropriate and affordable technologies and practices that are adapted to their specific needs and contexts. This may include low-cost sensors, mobile applications, and community-based approaches that enable smallholder farmers to access and use precision farming data and tools. It is also important to provide smallholder farmers with adequate training, extension, and financial services to support their adoption and use of precision farming technologies and practices [170].

7.2. **Economic Benefits and Cost-Benefit Analysis**

Precision farming can generate significant economic benefits for farmers, such as increased crop yields, reduced input costs, and improved profitability. For example, a study by the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) on the economic benefits of precision agriculture in the United States showed that precision farming technologies and practices could increase crop yields by 10-30%, reduce input costs by 10-20%, and improve farm profitability by 5-10% [171].

However, the economic benefits of precision farming vary widely depending on the specific technologies and practices used, the crops and regions involved, and the market and policy conditions. In some cases, the high upfront costs and learning curves associated with precision farming may outweigh the potential benefits, especially for smallholder farmers and in developing countries [172].

To assess the economic viability and attractiveness of precision farming, it is important to conduct a comprehensive cost-benefit analysis that takes into account the direct and indirect costs and benefits of different technologies and practices, as well as the risks and uncertainties involved. This may include the costs of equipment, software, data, and training, as well as the benefits of increased yields, reduced inputs, and improved quality and sustainability [173].

It is also important to consider the broader economic impacts of precision farming, such as the effects on employment, income, and rural development. Precision farming may create new job opportunities in areas such as data analysis, technology development, and service provision, but it may also displace some traditional agricultural jobs and skills. Precision farming may also have different impacts on different types of farmers and regions, depending on their access to resources, markets, and support services [174].

7.3. **Precision Farming and the Agricultural Value Chain**

Precision farming has significant implications for the wider agricultural value chain, including input suppliers, processors, traders, and retailers. Precision farming technologies and practices can help to improve the efficiency, transparency, and traceability of agricultural production and supply chains, and to meet the growing demands for food safety, quality, and sustainability [175].

For example, precision farming data and tools can help input suppliers to better understand and meet the specific needs and preferences of farmers, and to develop and market customized products and services. Precision farming can also help processors and traders to source and track agricultural products more efficiently and reliably, and to ensure their compliance with food safety and sustainability standards. Precision farming can also help retailers to provide consumers with more information and assurance about the origin, quality, and environmental footprint of their food products [176].

However, the integration of precision farming into the agricultural value chain also presents various challenges and risks, such as the need for data sharing and interoperability, the potential for market concentration and power imbalances, and the risk of exclusion and marginalization of smallholder farmers and local value chain actors. To address these challenges and risks, it is important to develop and promote inclusive and equitable value chain models and governance arrangements that enable all stakeholders to benefit from precision farming, and to ensure that the costs and benefits of precision farming are fairly distributed along the value chain [177].

7.4. **Capacity Building and Technology Transfer**

Capacity building and technology transfer are critical for the successful adoption and use of precision farming technologies and practices, especially in developing countries and among smallholder farmers. Capacity building involves the development of the knowledge, skills, and attitudes needed to effectively use and benefit from precision farming, while technology transfer involves the dissemination and adaptation of precision farming technologies and practices to different contexts and needs [178].

Capacity building and technology transfer for precision farming can take various forms, such as:

- Training and education programs for farmers, extension agents, and other stakeholders on the principles, tools, and applications of precision farming
- Demonstration and pilot projects that showcase the benefits and challenges of precision farming in different crops, regions, and farming systems
- Participatory research and innovation platforms that engage farmers, researchers, and other stakeholders in the co-design and co-evaluation of precision farming technologies and practices
- Digital and mobile-based solutions that provide farmers with access to precision farming data, advice, and services, such as weather forecasts, soil maps, and market information [179]

To be effective and sustainable, capacity building and technology transfer for precision farming need to be demand-driven, context-specific, and gender-sensitive. They also need to be supported by an enabling policy and institutional environment that provides incentives, resources, and coordination for the development and dissemination of precision farming technologies and practices [180].

Some examples of successful capacity building and technology transfer initiatives for precision farming include:

- The Precision Agriculture for Development (PAD) initiative, which uses mobile phone-based technologies to provide smallholder farmers in developing countries with personalized agricultural advice and services, based on their specific location, crop, and language [181]
- The Precision Agriculture for Smallholder Systems (PASS) project, which develops and promotes low-cost and user-friendly precision farming tools and practices for smallholder farmers in sub-Saharan Africa, such as handheld sensors, mobile apps, and participatory mapping [182]
- The Precision Agriculture Platform (PAP) in India, which provides farmers with access to precision farming data, tools, and services, such as satellite imagery, soil health cards, and custom hiring centers, through a network of public and private partners [183]

Overall, the socio-economic implications of precision farming are complex and multifaceted, and they require a holistic and inclusive approach that takes into account the needs, constraints, and aspirations of different stakeholders, especially smallholder farmers and rural communities. By carefully designing and implementing precision farming technologies and practices, and by providing adequate capacity building and technology transfer, it is possible to harness the potential of precision farming for sustainable and equitable agricultural development.

8. Future Perspectives and Research Directions

Precision farming is a rapidly evolving field that is driven by advances in technology, data, and analytics. As precision farming continues to develop and mature, it is important to consider the future perspectives and research directions that can help to realize its full potential for sustainable and equitable agricultural development.

8.1. Emerging Technologies in Precision Farming

Precision farming is being transformed by a range of emerging technologies that are enabling new ways of collecting, analyzing, and using agricultural data and insights. Some of the most promising and transformative technologies in precision farming include:

8.1.1. *Internet of Things (IoT)*

The Internet of Things (IoT) refers to the network of physical devices, vehicles, buildings, and other objects that are embedded with sensors, software, and connectivity, and that can collect and exchange data over the internet. In precision farming, IoT technologies can enable the real-time monitoring and control of various agricultural processes and parameters, such as soil moisture, nutrient levels, crop growth, and animal health [184].

IoT technologies can also enable the integration and interoperability of different precision farming tools and systems, such as sensors, drones, robots, and decision support systems, and can provide farmers with access to timely and actionable insights and recommendations. Some examples of IoT applications in precision farming include:

- Smart irrigation systems that use soil moisture sensors and weather data to optimize water use and reduce waste
- Precision livestock farming systems that use wearable sensors and machine learning to monitor animal health and behavior
- Connected tractors and equipment that use telematics and GPS to optimize field operations and reduce fuel consumption [185]

8.1.2. *Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning*

Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Machine Learning (ML) are transforming precision farming by enabling the automated and intelligent analysis of large and complex agricultural datasets, and the generation of predictive and prescriptive insights and recommendations. AI and ML technologies can help farmers to make better and faster decisions, to optimize resource use and productivity, and to reduce costs and risks [186].

Some examples of AI and ML applications in precision farming include:

- Crop yield prediction models that use remote sensing, weather, and soil data to forecast crop yields and optimize input use
- Disease and pest detection systems that use computer vision and deep learning to identify and diagnose crop health problems

- Precision spraying systems that use AI and robotics to apply herbicides and pesticides only where and when needed [187]

8.1.3. *Robotics and Automation*

Robotics and automation are increasingly being used in precision farming to perform various tasks and operations, such as planting, weeding, harvesting, and monitoring, with greater efficiency, accuracy, and consistency than human labor. Robotics and automation technologies can help farmers to reduce labor costs, improve worker safety, and increase productivity and quality [188].

Some examples of robotics and automation applications in precision farming include:

- Autonomous tractors and harvesters that use GPS and sensors to navigate and operate in fields with minimal human intervention
- Robotic weeders and sprayers that use computer vision and precision control to selectively remove weeds and apply chemicals
- Drones and ground robots that use multispectral imaging and machine learning to monitor crop health and detect pests and diseases [189]

8.2. **Precision Farming and Sustainable Intensification**

Precision farming has a critical role to play in achieving sustainable intensification of agriculture, which involves increasing food production while minimizing negative environmental and social impacts. Precision farming technologies and practices can help farmers to optimize resource use, reduce waste and pollution, and enhance ecosystem services, while also increasing productivity and profitability [190].

Some examples of how precision farming can contribute to sustainable intensification include:

- Reducing greenhouse gas emissions and carbon footprint by optimizing fertilizer and fuel use, and by increasing soil carbon sequestration
- Improving water use efficiency and reducing water scarcity by using precision irrigation and moisture sensors
- Enhancing biodiversity and ecosystem services by using precision pest management and habitat mapping

- Increasing food security and nutrition by improving crop yields and quality, and by reducing food loss and waste [191]

However, to fully realize the potential of precision farming for sustainable intensification, it is important to address some of the key challenges and barriers, such as the high costs and complexity of precision farming technologies, the lack of data and knowledge sharing, and the need for supportive policies and institutions. It is also important to ensure that precision farming benefits are equitably distributed and accessible to all farmers, especially smallholders and women [192].

8.3. **Precision Farming and Climate Change Adaptation**

Climate change is one of the greatest challenges facing agriculture and food security, with impacts such as rising temperatures, changing rainfall patterns, and increasing frequency and intensity of extreme weather events. Precision farming can play a key role in helping farmers to adapt to and mitigate the impacts of climate change, by providing them with tools and insights to manage risks and uncertainties, and to build resilience and sustainability [193].

Some examples of how precision farming can contribute to climate change adaptation include:

- Using weather and climate data to optimize planting and harvesting dates, and to select suitable crop varieties and management practices
- Using soil moisture and evapotranspiration data to optimize irrigation scheduling and water use efficiency, and to reduce water stress and crop failures
- Using pest and disease models to anticipate and prevent outbreaks, and to reduce the use of pesticides and other inputs
- Using yield and quality data to assess the impacts of climate variability and change, and to identify adaptation strategies and policies [194]

However, precision farming alone is not sufficient to address the complex and multifaceted challenges of climate change adaptation in agriculture. It is important to integrate precision farming with other adaptation strategies and approaches, such as crop diversification, agroforestry, and climate-smart agriculture, and to address the underlying drivers and barriers of vulnerability and resilience, such as poverty, inequality, and governance [195].

8.4. **Research Gaps and Future Directions**

Despite the significant advances and potential of precision farming, there are still many research gaps and future directions that need to be addressed to fully realize its benefits and impacts. Some of the key research gaps and future directions in precision farming include:

- Developing low-cost and user-friendly precision farming technologies and tools that are accessible and affordable to smallholder farmers and developing countries
- Improving the interoperability and standardization of precision farming data and systems, and promoting data sharing and knowledge exchange among stakeholders
- Assessing the long-term and landscape-level impacts of precision farming on soil health, water quality, biodiversity, and ecosystem services
- Evaluating the social and economic implications of precision farming, including its impacts on labor, gender, and equity, and its potential for inclusive and equitable development
- Integrating precision farming with other sustainable intensification and climate change adaptation strategies, such as agroecology, conservation agriculture, and climate-smart agriculture
- Strengthening the capacity and skills of farmers, extension agents, and other stakeholders in precision farming, and promoting participatory and transdisciplinary research and innovation [196]

To address these research gaps and future directions, it is important to invest in collaborative and interdisciplinary research and innovation platforms that bring together diverse stakeholders and expertise, such as farmers, researchers, policymakers, and private sector actors. It is also important to leverage new and emerging technologies and approaches, such as big data analytics, artificial intelligence, and citizen science, to generate and share knowledge and solutions for precision farming [197].

Some examples of recent research initiatives and projects that are addressing these gaps and directions include:

- The Precision Agriculture for Smallholder Systems (PASS) project, which is developing and testing low-cost and user-friendly precision farming tools and practices for smallholder farmers in sub-Saharan Africa, such as handheld sensors, mobile apps, and participatory mapping [198]
- The Global Open Data for Agriculture and Nutrition (GODAN) initiative, which is promoting the sharing and use of open data for agriculture and nutrition, including precision farming data, to support sustainable development and food security [199]
- The Precision Agriculture for Development (PAD) initiative, which is using mobile phone-based technologies to provide smallholder farmers in developing countries with personalized agricultural advice and services, based on their specific location, crop, and language [200]
- The CGIAR Platform for Big Data in Agriculture, which is leveraging big data analytics and machine learning to generate and share insights and solutions for sustainable agriculture and food security, including precision farming applications [201]

Overall, the future of precision farming is both promising and challenging, and it requires a collaborative and inclusive approach that engages diverse stakeholders and expertise, and that addresses the complex and context-specific needs and opportunities of farmers and food systems. By investing in research and innovation, capacity building, and policy support, it is possible to harness the potential of precision farming for sustainable and equitable agricultural development, and to contribute to the achievement of the Sustainable Development Goals.

9. Conclusion

Precision farming has emerged as a transformative approach to optimize resource utilization and enhance agricultural sustainability in the face of growing global food demands and resource constraints. By leveraging advanced technologies and data-driven insights, precision farming enables farmers to make informed decisions, reduce input costs, and improve crop yields, ultimately contributing to a more sustainable and resilient agricultural future.

This chapter has provided a comprehensive overview of precision farming techniques and their applications in optimizing resource utilization across global, Asian, and Indian contexts. It has explored the key components of precision farming, including remote sensing, geographic information systems (GIS), variable rate technology (VRT), and yield mapping, and their role in enhancing nutrient management, water conservation, pest and disease control, and crop yield optimization.

References

[1] United Nations, Department of Economic and Social Affairs, Population Division. (2019). World Population Prospects 2019: Highlights. United Nations.

[2] Gebbers, R., & Adamchuk, V. I. (2010). Precision agriculture and food security. Science, 327(5967), 828-831.

[3] Bongiovanni, R., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2004). Precision agriculture and sustainability. Precision Agriculture, 5(4), 359-387.

[4] McBratney, A., Whelan, B., Ancev, T., & Bouma, J. (2005). Future directions of precision agriculture. Precision Agriculture, 6(1), 7-23.

[5] Stafford, J. V. (2000). Implementing precision agriculture in the 21st century. Journal of Agricultural Engineering Research, 76(3), 267-275.

[6] Bongiovanni, R., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2004). Precision agriculture and sustainability. Precision Agriculture, 5(4), 359-387.

[7] Banhazi, T. M., Lehr, H., Black, J. L., Crabtree, H., Schofield, P., Tscharke, M., & Berckmans, D. (2012). Precision livestock farming: An international review of scientific and commercial aspects. International Journal of Agricultural and Biological Engineering, 5(3), 1-9.

[8] Føre, M., Frank, K., Norton, T., Svendsen, E., Alfredsen, J. A., Dempster, T., ... & Berckmans, D. (2018). Precision fish farming: A new framework to improve production in aquaculture. Biosystems Engineering, 173, 176-193.

[9] Mulla, D. J. (2013). Twenty five years of remote sensing in precision agriculture: Key advances and remaining knowledge gaps. Biosystems Engineering, 114(4), 358-371.

[10] Zhang, N., Wang, M., & Wang, N. (2002). Precision agriculture—a worldwide overview. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 36(2-3), 113-132.

[11] Mulla, D. J. (2013). Twenty five years of remote sensing in precision agriculture: Key advances and remaining knowledge gaps. Biosystems Engineering, 114(4), 358-371.

[12] Hunt, E. R., & Daughtry, C. S. (2018). What good are unmanned aircraft systems for agricultural remote sensing and precision agriculture?. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 39(15-16), 5345-5376.

[13] Gibbons, G. (2000). Turning a farm art into science: An overview of precision farming. URL: http://www. precisionfarming. com.

[14] Heege, H. J. (Ed.). (2013). Precision in crop farming: Site specific concepts and sensing methods: Applications and results. Springer Science & Business Media.

[15] Adamchuk, V. I., Hummel, J. W., Morgan, M. T., & Upadhyaya, S. K. (2004). On-the-go soil sensors for precision agriculture. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 44(1), 71-91.

[16] Schimmelpfennig, D. (2016). Farm profits and adoption of precision agriculture. United States Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service.

[17] Grisso, R. D., Alley, M. M., Holshouser, D. L., & Thomason, W. E. (2011). Precision farming tools. Virginia Cooperative Extension, 442-500.
[18] Raun, W. R., & Johnson, G. V. (1999). Improving nitrogen use efficiency for cereal production. Agronomy Journal, 91(3), 357-363.
[19] Daberkow, S. G., & McBride, W. D. (2003). Farm and operator characteristics affecting the awareness and adoption of precision agriculture technologies in the US. Precision Agriculture, 4(2), 163-177.
[20] Bongiovanni, R., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2004). Precision agriculture and sustainability. Precision Agriculture, 5(4), 359-387.
[21] Bullock, D. S., Ruffo, M. L., Bullock, D. G., & Bollero, G. A. (2009). The value of variable rate technology: An information-theoretic approach. American Journal of Agricultural Economics, 91(1), 209-223.
[22] Sadler, E. J., Evans, R. G., Stone, K. C., & Camp, C. R. (2005). Opportunities for conservation with precision irrigation. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation, 60(6), 371-378.
[23] Dobermann, A., Blackmore, S., Cook, S. E., & Adamchuk, V. I. (2004). Precision farming: challenges and future directions. In Proceedings of the 4th International Crop Science Congress (Vol. 26).
[24] Grisso, R. D., Alley, M. M., Holshouser, D. L., & Thomason, W. E. (2011). Precision farming tools. Virginia Cooperative Extension, 442-500.
[25] Dobermann, A., Blackmore, S., Cook, S. E., & Adamchuk, V. I. (2004). Precision farming: challenges and future directions. In Proceedings of the 4th International Crop Science Congress (Vol. 26).
[26] Mamani-Pati, F., Clay, D. E., & Smeltekop, H. (2014). The value of using site-specific management zones and yield maps to quantify yield gaps for maize-based cropping systems. Precision Agriculture, 15(2), 170-187.
[27] Robertson, M. J., Llewellyn, R. S., Mandel, R., Lawes, R., Bramley, R. G. V., Swift, L., ... & O'Callaghan, C. (2012). Adoption of variable rate fertiliser application in the Australian grains industry: status, issues and prospects. Precision Agriculture, 13(2), 181-199.
[28] Schimmelpfennig, D., & Ebel, R. (2011). On the doorstep of the information age: Recent adoption of precision agriculture. United States Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service.
[29] Bullock, D. S., Lowenberg-DeBoer, J., & Swinton, S. M. (2002). Adding value to spatially managed inputs by understanding site-specific yield response. Agricultural Economics, 27(3), 233-245.
[30] Bullock, D. S., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2007). Using spatial analysis to study the values of variable rate technology and information. Journal of Agricultural Economics, 58(3), 517-535.
[31] Arslan, S., & Colvin, T. S. (2002). Grain yield mapping: Yield sensing, yield reconstruction, and errors. Precision Agriculture, 3(2), 135-154.
[32] Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2015). The precision agriculture revolution: Making the modern farmer. Foreign Affairs, 94(3), 105-112.
[33] Schimmelpfennig, D. (2016). Farm profits and adoption of precision agriculture. United States Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service.
[34] Aubert, B. A., Schroeder, A., & Grimaudo, J. (2012). IT as enabler of sustainable farming: An empirical analysis of farmers' adoption decision of precision agriculture technology. Decision Support Systems, 54(1), 510-520.
[35] Zarco-Tejada, P. J., Hubbard, N., & Loudjani, P. (2014). Precision agriculture: an opportunity for EU farmers—potential support with the CAP 2014-2020. Joint Research Centre (JRC) of the European Commission.
[36] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.

[37] Balafoutis, A., Beck, B., Fountas, S., Vangeyte, J., van der Wal, T., Soto, I., ... & Eory, V. (2017). Precision agriculture technologies positively contributing to GHG emissions mitigation, farm productivity and economics. Sustainability, 9(8), 1339.
[38] Robertson, M. J., Llewellyn, R. S., Mandel, R., Lawes, R., Bramley, R. G. V., Swift, L., ... & O'Callaghan, C. (2012). Adoption of variable rate fertiliser application in the Australian grains industry: status, issues and prospects. Precision Agriculture, 13(2), 181-199.
[39] Jochinke, D. C., Noonon, B. J., Wachsmann, N. G., & Norton, R. M. (2007). The adoption of precision agriculture in an Australian broadacre cropping system—Challenges and opportunities. Field Crops Research, 104(1-3), 68-76.
[40] Eastwood, C., Klerkx, L., & Nettle, R. (2017). Dynamics and distribution of public and private research and extension roles for technological innovation and diffusion: Case studies of the implementation and adaptation of precision farming technologies. Journal of Rural Studies, 49, 1-12.
[41] Bongiovanni, R., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2004). Precision agriculture and sustainability. Precision Agriculture, 5(4), 359-387.
[42] Tey, Y. S., & Brindal, M. (2012). Factors influencing the adoption of precision agricultural technologies: a review for policy implications. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 713-730.
[43] Bongiovanni, R., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2004). Precision agriculture and sustainability. Precision Agriculture, 5(4), 359-387.
[44] Yin, X., McClure, M. A., Jaja, N., Tyler, D. D., & Hayes, R. M. (2011). In-season prediction of corn yield using plant height under major production systems. Agronomy Journal, 103(3), 923-929.
[45] Schimmelpfennig, D. (2016). Farm profits and adoption of precision agriculture. United States Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service.
[46] Smith, C. M., Dhuyvetter, K. C., Kastens, T. L., Kastens, D. L., & Smith, L. M. (2013). Economics of precision agricultural technologies across the Great Plains. Journal of the ASFMRA, 76(1), 185-206.
[47] Balafoutis, A., Beck, B., Fountas, S., Vangeyte, J., van der Wal, T., Soto, I., ... & Eory, V. (2017). Precision agriculture technologies positively contributing to GHG emissions mitigation, farm productivity and economics. Sustainability, 9(8), 1339.
[48] Swinton, S. M., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2001). Global adoption of precision agriculture technologies: Who, when and why. In Precision Agriculture (pp. 557-562). Wageningen Academic Publishers, Wageningen, the Netherlands.
[49] Bramley, R. G. V., & Ouzman, J. (2019). Farmer attitudes to the use of sensors and automation in fertilizer decision-making: nitrogen fertilization in the Australian grains sector. Precision Agriculture, 20(1), 157-175.
[50] Schimmelpfennig, D. (2016). Farm profits and adoption of precision agriculture. United States Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service.
[51] Zhang, N., Wang, M., & Wang, N. (2002). Precision agriculture—a worldwide overview. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 36(2-3), 113-132.
[52] Mulla, D. J. (2013). Twenty five years of remote sensing in precision agriculture: Key advances and remaining knowledge gaps. Biosystems Engineering, 114(4), 358-371.
[53] Bongiovanni, R., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2004). Precision agriculture and sustainability. Precision Agriculture, 5(4), 359-387.
[54] Sadler, E. J., Evans, R. G., Stone, K. C., & Camp, C. R. (2005). Opportunities for conservation with precision irrigation. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation, 60(6), 371-378.
[55] Grisso, R. D., Alley, M. M., Holshouser, D. L., & Thomason, W. E. (2011). Precision farming tools. Virginia Cooperative E
[50] Schimmelpfennig, D. (2016). Farm profits and adoption of precision agriculture. United States Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service.
[51] Zhang, N., Wang, M., & Wang, N. (2002). Precision agriculture—a worldwide overview. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 36(2-3), 113-132.

[52] Mulla, D. J. (2013). Twenty five years of remote sensing in precision agriculture: Key advances and remaining knowledge gaps. Biosystems Engineering, 114(4), 358-371.
[53] Bongiovanni, R., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2004). Precision agriculture and sustainability. Precision Agriculture, 5(4), 359-387.
[54] Sadler, E. J., Evans, R. G., Stone, K. C., & Camp, C. R. (2005). Opportunities for conservation with precision irrigation. Journal of Soil and Water Conservation, 60(6), 371-378.
[55] Grisso, R. D., Alley, M. M., Holshouser, D. L., & Thomason, W. E. (2011). Precision farming tools. Virginia Cooperative Extension, 442-500.
[56] Tey, Y. S., & Brindal, M. (2012). Factors influencing the adoption of precision agricultural technologies: a review for policy implications. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 713-730.
[57] Mondal, P., & Basu, M. (2009). Adoption of precision agriculture technologies in India and in some developing countries: Scope, present status and strategies. Progress in Natural Science, 19(6), 659-666.
[58] Kendall, H., Naughton, P., Clark, B., Taylor, J., Li, Z., Zhao, C., ... & Chen, J. (2017). Precision agriculture in China: Exploring awareness, understanding, attitudes and perceptions of agricultural experts and end-users in China. Advances in Animal Biosciences, 8(2), 703-707.
[59] Bramley, R. G. V., & Ouzman, J. (2019). Farmer attitudes to the use of sensors and automation in fertilizer decision-making: nitrogen fertilization in the Australian grains sector. Precision Agriculture, 20(1), 157-175.
[60] Pierpaoli, E., Carli, G., Pignatti, E., & Canavari, M. (2013). Drivers of precision agriculture technologies adoption: a literature review. Procedia Technology, 8, 61-69.
[61] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.
[62] Tey, Y. S., & Brindal, M. (2012). Factors influencing the adoption of precision agricultural technologies: a review for policy implications. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 713-730.
[63] Pierpaoli, E., Carli, G., Pignatti, E., & Canavari, M. (2013). Drivers of precision agriculture technologies adoption: a literature review. Procedia Technology, 8, 61-69.
[64] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.
[65] Schimmelpfennig, D. (2016). Farm profits and adoption of precision agriculture. United States Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service.
[66] Pierpaoli, E., Carli, G., Pignatti, E., & Canavari, M. (2013). Drivers of precision agriculture technologies adoption: a literature review. Procedia Technology, 8, 61-69.
[67] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.
[68] Tey, Y. S., & Brindal, M. (2012). Factors influencing the adoption of precision agricultural technologies: a review for policy implications. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 713-730.
[69] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.
[70] Peng, S., Buresh, R. J., Huang, J., Zhong, X., Zou, Y., Yang, J., ... & Witt, C. (2010). Improving nitrogen fertilization in rice by sitespecific N management. A review. Agronomy for Sustainable Development, 30(3), 649-656.
[71] Peng, S., Buresh, R. J., Huang, J., Zhong, X., Zou, Y., Yang, J., ... & Witt, C. (2010). Improving nitrogen fertilization in rice by sitespecific N management. A review. Agronomy for Sustainable Development, 30(3), 649-656.
[72] Cao, Q., Miao, Y., Wang, H., Huang, S., Cheng, S., Khosla, R., & Jiang, R. (2013). Non-destructive estimation of rice plant nitrogen status with Crop Circle multispectral active canopy sensor. Field Crops Research, 154, 133-144.
[73] Zhang, X., Shi, L., Jia, X., Seielstad, G., & Helgason, C. (2010). Zone mapping application for precision-farming: a decision support tool for variable rate application. Precision Agriculture, 11(2), 103-114.

[74] Pasuquin, J. M., Pampolino, M. F., Witt, C., Dobermann, A., Oberthür, T., Fisher, M. J., & Inubushi, K. (2014). Closing yield gaps in maize production in Southeast Asia through site-specific nutrient management. Field Crops Research, 156, 219-230.
[75] Pasuquin, J. M., Pampolino, M. F., Witt, C., Dobermann, A., Oberthür, T., Fisher, M. J., & Inubushi, K. (2014). Closing yield gaps in maize production in Southeast Asia through site-specific nutrient management. Field Crops Research, 156, 219-230.
[76] Pampolino, M. F., Witt, C., Pasuquin, J. M., Johnston, A., & Fisher, M. J. (2012). Development approach and evaluation of the Nutrient Expert software for nutrient management in cereal crops. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 88, 103-110.
[77] Hayashi, K., Hayashi, E. T., & Fatondji, D. (2013). Evaluation of the Indigenous Soil Fertility Management Practices for Sustainable Crop Production in the Sahel: With Special Reference to the Improvement of the Planting Hole (Zaï) System. In Soil Fertility (pp. 149-166). InTech.
[78] Hayashi, K., Hayashi, E. T., & Fatondji, D. (2013). Evaluation of the Indigenous Soil Fertility Management Practices for Sustainable Crop Production in the Sahel: With Special Reference to the Improvement of the Planting Hole (Zaï) System. In Soil Fertility (pp. 149-166). InTech.
[79] Shibata, R., Shinohara, A., Tabata, J., Sasaki, N., Kudo, S., Sawada, A., ... & Higashida, S. (2017). Development of a robotic harvesting system for cherry tomatoes. Japan Agricultural Research Quarterly: JARQ, 51(3), 233-240.
[80] Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2017). The future of food and agriculture–Trends and challenges. Annual Report.
[81] Mondal, P., & Basu, M. (2009). Adoption of precision agriculture technologies in India and in some developing countries: Scope, present status and strategies. Progress in Natural Science, 19(6), 659-666.
[82] Shanwad, U. K., Patil, V. C., & Gowda, H. H. (2004). Precision farming: Dreams and realities for Indian agriculture. In Proceedings of the 7th International Conference on Precision Agriculture and Other Precision Resources Management, Minneapolis, MN, USA (pp. 25-28).
[83] Raghavan, R., Geetha, K. N., & Ali, M. S. M. (2003). Remote Sensing and GIS in Indian Agriculture. ICAR Publication.
[84] Mondal, P., & Basu, M. (2009). Adoption of precision agriculture technologies in India and in some developing countries: Scope, present status and strategies. Progress in Natural Science, 19(6), 659-666.
[85] Mondal, P., Basu, M., & Bhadoria, P. B. S. (2011). Critical review of precision agriculture technologies and its scope of adoption in India. American Journal of Experimental Agriculture, 1(3), 49.
[86] Tey, Y. S., & Brindal, M. (2012). Factors influencing the adoption of precision agricultural technologies: a review for policy implications. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 713-730.
[87] Shanwad, U. K., Patil, V. C., & Gowda, H. H. (2004). Precision farming: Dreams and realities for Indian agriculture. In Proceedings of the 7th International Conference on Precision Agriculture and Other Precision Resources Management, Minneapolis, MN, USA (pp. 25-28).
[88] Singh, A. K., Goyal, V., Mishra, A. K., & Parihar, S. S. (2013). Validation of CropSyst simulation model for direct seeded rice-wheat cropping system. Journal of Agronomy, 12(2), 61-78.
[89] Murthy, V. R. K. (2004). Crop growth modeling and its applications in agricultural meteorology. Satellite remote sensing and GIS applications in agricultural meteorology, 235.
[90] Mondal, P., & Basu, M. (2009). Adoption of precision agriculture technologies in India and in some developing countries: Scope, present status and strategies. Progress in Natural Science, 19(6), 659-666.
[91] Shanwad, U. K., Patil, V. C., & Gowda, H. H. (2004). Precision farming: Dreams and realities for Indian agriculture. In Proceedings of the 7th International Conference on Precision Agriculture and Other Precision Resources Management, Minneapolis, MN, USA (pp. 25-28).
[92] Mondal, P., & Basu, M. (2009). Adoption of precision agriculture technologies in India and in some developing countries: Scope, present status and strategies. Progress in Natural Science, 19(6), 659-666.

[93] Singh, A. K., Goyal, V., Mishra, A. K., & Parihar, S. S. (2013). Validation of CropSyst simulation model for direct seeded rice-wheat cropping system. Journal of Agronomy, 12(2), 61-78.
[94] Department of Agriculture, Cooperation & Farmers Welfare. (2016). Soil Health Card Scheme. Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India.
[95] Department of Agriculture, Cooperation & Farmers Welfare. (2016). Soil Health Card Scheme. Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India.
[96] Mondal, P., & Basu, M. (2009). Adoption of precision agriculture technologies in India and in some developing countries: Scope, present status and strategies. Progress in Natural Science, 19(6), 659-666.
[97] Department of Agriculture, Cooperation & Farmers Welfare. (2015). Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchayee Yojana (PMKSY). Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India.
[98] Department of Agriculture, Cooperation & Farmers Welfare. (2015). Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchayee Yojana (PMKSY). Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India.
[99] Shanwad, U. K., Patil, V. C., & Gowda, H. H. (2004). Precision farming: Dreams and realities for Indian agriculture. In Proceedings of the 7th International Conference on Precision Agriculture and Other Precision Resources Management, Minneapolis, MN, USA (pp. 25-28).
[100] Mondal, P., & Basu, M. (2009). Adoption of precision agriculture technologies in India and in some developing countries: Scope, present status and strategies. Progress in Natural Science, 19(6), 659-666.
[101] Directorate of Economics and Statistics. (2019). Agricultural Statistics at a Glance 2018. Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India.
[102] Parihar, C. M., Jat, S. L., Singh, A. K., Kumar, B., Pradhan, S., Pooniya, V., ... & Yadav, O. P. (2016). Conservation agriculture in irrigated intensive maize-based systems of north-western India: effects on crop yields, water productivity and economic profitability. Field Crops Research, 193, 104-116.
[103] Jat, M. L., Dagar, J. C., Sapkota, T. B., Singh, Y., Govaerts, B., Ridaura, S. L., ... & Stirling, C. (2016). Climate change and agriculture: adaptation strategies and mitigation opportunities for food security in South Asia and Latin America. Advances in Agronomy, 137, 127-235.
[104] Directorate of Economics and Statistics. (2019). Agricultural Statistics at a Glance 2018. Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India.
[105] Saharawat, Y. S., Singh, B., Malik, R. K., Ladha, J. K., Gathala, M., Jat, M. L., & Kumar, V. (2010). Evaluation of alternative tillage and crop establishment methods in a rice–wheat rotation in North Western IGP. Field Crops Research, 116(3), 260-267.
[106] Ladha, J. K., Kumar, V., Alam, M. M., Sharma, S., Gathala, M., Chandna, P., ... & Balasubramanian, V. (2009). Integrating crop and resource management technologies for enhanced productivity, profitability, and sustainability of the rice-wheat system in South Asia. Integrated Crop and Resource Management in the Rice-Wheat System of South Asia, 69-108.
[107] Directorate of Economics and Statistics. (2019). Agricultural Statistics at a Glance 2018. Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India.
[108] Blaise, D., Manikandan, A., & Nalayini, P. (2011). Modeling the effects of site specific nutrient management on the yield of cotton (Gossypium hirsutum) in a Vertisol. Communications in soil science and plant analysis, 42(22), 2701-2707.
[109] Hebbar, K. B., Venugopalan, M. V., Prakash, A. H., & Aggarwal, P. K. (2013). Simulating the impacts of climate change on cotton production in India. Climatic Change, 118(3-4), 701-713.
[110] Directorate of Economics and Statistics. (2019). Agricultural Statistics at a Glance 2018. Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India.
[111] Thind, H. S., Sharma, S., Sidhu, A. S., Singh, Y., Jat, M. L., & Singh, V. (2019). Evaluation of precision land leveling, permanent raised beds and straw mulching for increasing water productivity and nitrogen use efficiency of spring maize (Zea mays L.) in North-West India. Agricultural Water Management, 210, 292-302.

[113] Department of Agriculture, Cooperation & Farmers Welfare. (2019). Agriculture Census 2015-16 (Phase-I): All India Report on Number and Area of Operational Holdings. Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India.
[114] Tey, Y. S., & Brindal, M. (2012). Factors influencing the adoption of precision agricultural technologies: a review for policy implications. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 713-730.
[115] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.
[116] Indian Council of Agricultural Research. (2016). Vision 2050. Indian Council of Agricultural Research, New Delhi.
[117] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.
[118] Tey, Y. S., & Brindal, M. (2012). Factors influencing the adoption of precision agricultural technologies: a review for policy implications. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 713-730.
[119] Tey, Y. S., & Brindal, M. (2012). Factors influencing the adoption of precision agricultural technologies: a review for policy implications. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 713-730.
[120] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.
[121] Tey, Y. S., & Brindal, M. (2012). Factors influencing the adoption of precision agricultural technologies: a review for policy implications. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 713-730.
[122] Singh, M., Grover, J., & Singh, S. (2018). Economic viability of precision farming in Punjab agriculture. Indian Journal of Economics and Development, 14(1a), 294-299.
[123] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.
[124] Tey, Y. S., & Brindal, M. (2012). Factors influencing the adoption of precision agricultural technologies: a review for policy implications. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 713-730.
[125] Mondal, P., & Basu, M. (2009). Adoption of precision agriculture technologies in India and in some developing countries: Scope, present status and strategies. Progress in Natural Science, 19(6), 659-666.
[126] Shanwad, U. K., Patil, V. C., & Gowda, H. H. (2004). Precision farming: Dreams and realities for Indian agriculture. In Proceedings of the 7th International Conference on Precision Agriculture and Other Precision Resources Management, Minneapolis, MN, USA (pp. 25-28).
[127] Mondal, P., & Basu, M. (2009). Adoption of precision agriculture technologies in India and in some developing countries: Scope, present status and strategies. Progress in Natural Science, 19(6), 659-666.
[128] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.
[129] Dobermann, A., Witt, C., Dawe, D., Abdulrachman, S., Gines, H. C., Nagarajan, R., ... & Adviento, M. A. A. (2002). Site-specific nutrient management for intensive rice cropping systems in Asia. Field Crops Research, 74(1), 37-66.
[130] Witt, C., Pasuquin, J. M., Mutters, R., & Buresh, R. J. (2005). New leaf color chart for effective nitrogen management in rice. Better Crops, 89(1), 36-39.
[131] Dobermann, A., Witt, C., Dawe, D., Abdulrachman, S., Gines, H. C., Nagarajan, R., ... & Adviento, M. A. A. (2002). Site-specific nutrient management for intensive rice cropping systems in Asia. Field Crops Research, 74(1), 37-66.
[132] Haefele, S. M., Wopereis, M. C. S., Ndiaye, M. K., Barro, S. E., & Ould Isselmou, M. (2003). Internal nutrient efficiencies, fertilizer recovery rates and indigenous nutrient supply of irrigated lowland rice in Sahelian West Africa. Field Crops Research, 80(1), 19-32.
[133] Haefele, S. M., Wopereis, M. C. S., Ndiaye, M. K., Barro, S. E., & Ould Isselmou, M. (2003). Internal nutrient efficiencies, fertilizer recovery rates and indigenous nutrient supply of irrigated lowland rice in Sahelian West Africa. Field Crops Research, 80(1), 19-32.
[134] Babu, M., Naik, G. R., & Hanumantharaya, L. (2009). Site-specific nutrient management through precision farming in rice. Karnataka Journal of Agricultural Sciences, 22(5), 1091-1093.

[135] Dobermann, A., & Cassman, K. G. (2005). Cereal area and nitrogen use efficiency are drivers of future nitrogen fertilizer consumption. Science in China Series C: Life Sciences, 48(2), 745-758.

[136] Dobermann, A., Witt, C., Dawe, D., Abdulrachman, S., Gines, H. C., Nagarajan, R., ... & Adviento, M. A. A. (2002). Site-specific nutrient management for intensive rice cropping systems in Asia. Field Crops Research, 74(1), 37-66.

[137] Dobermann, A., & Cassman, K. G. (2005). Cereal area and nitrogen use efficiency are drivers of future nitrogen fertilizer consumption. Science in China Series C: Life Sciences, 48(2), 745-758.

[138] Bijay-Singh, Yadvinder-Singh, Imas, P., & Xie, J. C. (2003). Potassium nutrition of the rice-wheat cropping system. Advances in Agronomy, 81, 203-259.

[139] Howell, T. A. (2001). Enhancing water use efficiency in irrigated agriculture. Agronomy journal, 93(2), 281-289.

[140] Fereres, E., & Soriano, M. A. (2007). Deficit irrigation for reducing agricultural water use. Journal of experimental botany, 58(2), 147-159.

[141] Nagore, M. L., Echarte, L., Andrade, F. H., & Della Maggiora, A. (2014). Crop evapotranspiration in Argentinean maize hybrids released in different decades. Field Crops Research, 155, 23-29.

[142] Adeyemi, O., Grove, I., Peets, S., & Norton, T. (2017). Advanced monitoring and management systems for improving sustainability in precision irrigation. Sustainability, 9(3), 353.

[143] Chávez, J. L., Pierce, F. J., Elliott, T. V., & Evans, R. G. (2010). A remote irrigation monitoring and control system for continuous move systems. Part A: Description and development. Precision agriculture, 11(1), 1-10.

[144] Inman-Bamber, N. G., Attard, S. J., Baillie, C., Lawson, D., & Simpson, L. (2005). A web-based system for planning use of limited irrigation water in sugarcane. Proceedings of the Australian Society of Sugar Cane Technologists, 27, 170-181.

[145] Hsiao, T. C., Steduto, P., & Fereres, E. (2007). A systematic and quantitative approach to improve water use efficiency in agriculture. Irrigation science, 25(3), 209-231.

[146] Fereres, E., & Soriano, M. A. (2007). Deficit irrigation for reducing agricultural water use. Journal of experimental botany, 58(2), 147-159.

[147] Hochman, Z., Prestwidge, D., & Carberry, P. S. (2014). Crop sequences in Australia's northern grain zone are less agronomically efficient than implied by the sum of their parts. Agricultural Systems, 129, 124-132.

[148] Kijne, J. W., Barker, R., & Molden, D. (Eds.). (2003). Water productivity in agriculture: limits and opportunities for improvement. Cabi.

[149] Mahlein, A. K. (2016). Plant disease detection by imaging sensors–parallels and specific demands for precision agriculture and plant phenotyping. Plant disease, 100(2), 241-251.

[150] Sankaran, S., Mishra, A., Ehsani, R., & Davis, C. (2010). A review of advanced techniques for detecting plant diseases. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 72(1), 1-13.

[151] Hirafuji, M., & Yoichi, H. (2011). Creating high-performance agricultural systems using sensing and ICT. Journal of Agricultural Meteorology, 67(2), 125-134.

[152] Gerhards, R., & Christensen, S. (2003). Real-time weed detection, decision making and patch spraying in maize, sugarbeet, winter wheat and winter barley. Weed research, 43(6), 385-392.

[153] López-Granados, F. (2011). Weed detection for site-specific weed management: mapping and real-time approaches. Weed Research, 51(1), 1-11.

[154] Dammer, K. H., Thöle, H., Volk, T., & Hau, B. (2009). Variable-rate fungicide spraying in real time by combining a plant cover sensor and a decision support system. Precision Agriculture, 10(5), 431-442.

[155] Kogan, M. (1998). Integrated pest management: historical perspectives and contemporary developments. Annual review of entomology, 43(1), 243-270.

[156] Rossi, V., Salinari, F., Poni, S., Caffi, T., & Bettati, T. (2014). Addressing the implementation problem in agricultural decision support systems: the example of vite. net®. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 100, 88-99.

[157] Rossi, V., Salinari, F., Poni, S., Caffi, T., & Bettati, T. (2014). Addressing the implementation problem in agricultural decision support systems: the example of vite. net®. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 100, 88-99.
[158] Cock, J., Oberthür, T., Isaacs, C., Läderach, P. R., Palma, A., Carbonell, J., ... & Lundy, M. (2011). Crop management based on field observations: Case studies in sugarcane and coffee. Agricultural Systems, 104(9), 755-769.
[159] Irmak, A., Jones, J. W., & Jagtap, S. S. (2005). Evaluation of the CROPGRO-soybean model for assessing climate impacts on regional soybean yields. Transactions of the ASAE, 48(6), 2343-2353.
[160] Liu, J., Pattey, E., & Jégo, G. (2012). Assessment of vegetation indices for regional crop green LAI estimation from Landsat images over multiple growing seasons. Remote Sensing of Environment, 123, 347-358.
[161] Bullock, D. G., & Anderson, D. S. (1998). Evaluation of the Minolta SPAD-502 chlorophyll meter for nitrogen management in corn. Journal of Plant Nutrition, 21(4), 741-755.
[162] Scharf, P. C., Kitchen, N. R., Sudduth, K. A., Davis, J. G., Hubbard, V. C., & Lory, J. A. (2005). Field-scale variability in optimal nitrogen fertilizer rate for corn. Agronomy Journal, 97(2), 452-461.
[163] Scharf, P. C., Kitchen, N. R., Sudduth, K. A., Davis, J. G., Hubbard, V. C., & Lory, J. A. (2005). Field-scale variability in optimal nitrogen fertilizer rate for corn. Agronomy Journal, 97(2), 452-461.
[164] Robertson, M. J., Llewellyn, R. S., Mandel, R., Lawes, R., Bramley, R. G. V., Swift, L., ... & O'Callaghan, C. (2012). Adoption of variable rate fertiliser application in the Australian grains industry: status, issues and prospects. Precision Agriculture, 13(2), 181-199.
[165] Mahlein, A. K. (2016). Plant disease detection by imaging sensors–parallels and specific demands for precision agriculture and plant phenotyping. Plant disease, 100(2), 241-251.
[166] Sankaran, S., Mishra, A., Ehsani, R., & Davis, C. (2010). A review of advanced techniques for detecting plant diseases. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 72(1), 1-13.
[167] Hirafuji, M., & Yoichi, H. (2011). Creating high-performance agricultural systems using sensing and ICT. Journal of Agricultural Meteorology, 67(2), 125-134.
[168] Aubert, B. A., Schroeder, A., & Grimaudo, J. (2012). IT as enabler of sustainable farming: An empirical analysis of farmers' adoption decision of precision agriculture technology. Decision support systems, 54(1), 510-520.
[169] Tey, Y. S., & Brindal, M. (2012). Factors influencing the adoption of precision agricultural technologies: a review for policy implications. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 713-730.
[170] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.
[171] Schimmelpfennig, D., & Ebel, R. (2016). Sequential adoption and cost savings from precision agriculture. Journal of Agricultural and Resource Economics, 41(1), 97-115.
[172] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.
[173] Robertson, M., Llewellyn, R., Mandel, R., Lawes, R., Bramley, R., Swift, L., ... & O'Callaghan, C. (2012). Adoption of variable rate fertiliser application in the Australian grains industry: status, issues and prospects. Precision agriculture, 13(2), 181-199.
[174] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.
[175] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big data in smart farming–a review. Agricultural Systems, 153, 69-80.
[176] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big data in smart farming–a review. Agricultural Systems, 153, 69-80.
[177] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.

[178] Bongiovanni, R., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2004). Precision agriculture and sustainability. Precision agriculture, 5(4), 359-387.

[179] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.

[180] Bongiovanni, R., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2004). Precision agriculture and sustainability. Precision agriculture, 5(4), 359-387.

[181] Fabregas, R., Kremer, M., & Schilbach, F. (2019). Realizing the potential of digital development: The case of agricultural advice. Science, 366(6471), eaay3038.

[182] Tsan, M., Totapally, S., Hailu, M., & Addom, B. K. (2019). The Digitalisation of African Agriculture Report 2018–2019. CTA.

[183] Mondal, P., Basu, M., & Bhadoria, P. B. S. (2011). Critical review of precision agriculture technologies and its scope of adoption in India. American Journal of Experimental Agriculture, 1(3), 49.

[184] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big data in smart farming–a review. Agricultural Systems, 153, 69-80.

[185] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big data in smart farming–a review. Agricultural Systems, 153, 69-80.

[186] Liakos, K. G., Busato, P., Moshou, D., Pearson, S., & Bochtis, D. (2018). Machine learning in agriculture: A review. Sensors, 18(8), 2674.

[187] Liakos, K. G., Busato, P., Moshou, D., Pearson, S., & Bochtis, D. (2018). Machine learning in agriculture: A review. Sensors, 18(8), 2674.

[188] Finger, R., Swinton, S. M., El Benni, N., & Walter, A. (2019). Precision farming at the nexus of agricultural production and the environment. Annual Review of Resource Economics, 11, 313-335.

[189] Lowenberg-DeBoer, J., & Erickson, B. (2019). Setting the record straight on precision agriculture adoption. Agronomy Journal, 111(4), 1552-1569.

[190] Walter, A., Finger, R., Huber, R., & Buchmann, N. (2017). Opinion: Smart farming is key to developing sustainable agriculture. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 114(24), 6148-6150.

[191] Walter, A., Finger, R., Huber, R., & Buchmann, N. (2017). Opinion: Smart farming is key to developing sustainable agriculture. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 114(24), 6148-6150.

[192] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.

[193] Lipper, L., Thornton, P., Campbell, B. M., Baedeker, T., Braimoh, A., Bwalya, M., ... & Hottle, R. (2014). Climate-smart agriculture for food security. Nature climate change, 4(12), 1068-1072.

[194] Lipper, L., Thornton, P., Campbell, B. M., Baedeker, T., Braimoh, A., Bwalya, M., ... & Hottle, R. (2014). Climate-smart agriculture for food security. Nature climate change, 4(12), 1068-1072.

[195] Campbell, B. M., Thornton, P., Zougmoré, R., Van Asten, P., & Lipper, L. (2014). Sustainable intensification: What is its role in climate smart agriculture?. Current Opinion in Environmental Sustainability, 8, 39-43.

[196] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.

[197] Kutter, T., Tiemann, S., Siebert, R., & Fountas, S. (2011). The role of communication and co-operation in the adoption of precision farming. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 2-17.

[198] Tsan, M., Totapally, S., Hailu, M., & Addom, B. K. (2019). The Digitalisation of African Agriculture Report 2018–2019. CTA.

[199] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big data in smart farming–a review. Agricultural Systems, 153, 69-80.

[200] Fabregas, R., Kremer, M., & Schilbach, F. (2019). Realizing the potential of digital development: The case of agricultural advice. Science, 366(6471), eaay3038.
[201] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big data in smart farming–a review. Agricultural Systems, 153, 69-80.

CHAPTER - 2

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Nutrient Management in Protected Cultivation

Pranav Raj

M.Sc. Research scholar (Soil Science and agricultural chemistry), Sam Higginbottom University of Agriculture technology and sciences

Corresponding Author
Pranav Raj
pranav.40raj@gmail.com

Abstract

Protected cultivation, including greenhouses and other controlled environments, has become increasingly important for crop production worldwide. Proper nutrient management is critical for optimizing crop yield and quality in these systems. This chapter provides an overview of nutrient management practices and challenges in protected cultivation, with a focus on global trends and specific considerations for Asia and India. Key topics include nutrient requirements and uptake of common greenhouse crops, fertigation systems and scheduling, substrate and hydroponic nutrient solutions, leaf and sap analysis, and the use of organic and microbial amendments. Recent research on crop-specific nutrient management protocols and strategies for reducing nutrient loss and environmental impact are highlighted. The current status and future outlook for protected cultivation in India and Asia are discussed, including the adoption of modern nutrient management technologies and the need for ongoing research and extension efforts to support growers. As protected cultivation continues to expand in response to land and resource constraints, climate change, and the demand for high-quality produce, sustainable nutrient management will be essential to ensure the long-term productivity and profitability of these systems.

Keywords: greenhouse, hydroponic, fertigation, substrate, Asia

Protected cultivation, also known as controlled environment agriculture (CEA), refers to the production of crops in greenhouses, high tunnels, growth chambers, and other structures that provide control over environmental factors such as temperature, humidity, light, and carbon dioxide (CO_2) levels [1]. This approach offers several advantages over open field production, including higher yields, improved crop quality, reduced water and nutrient inputs, and the ability to extend the growing season and produce crops in regions with unfavorable outdoor conditions [2]. Global greenhouse vegetable production has increased rapidly in recent decades, reaching over 500 million tons in 2018, with Asia accounting for over 80% of this total [3].

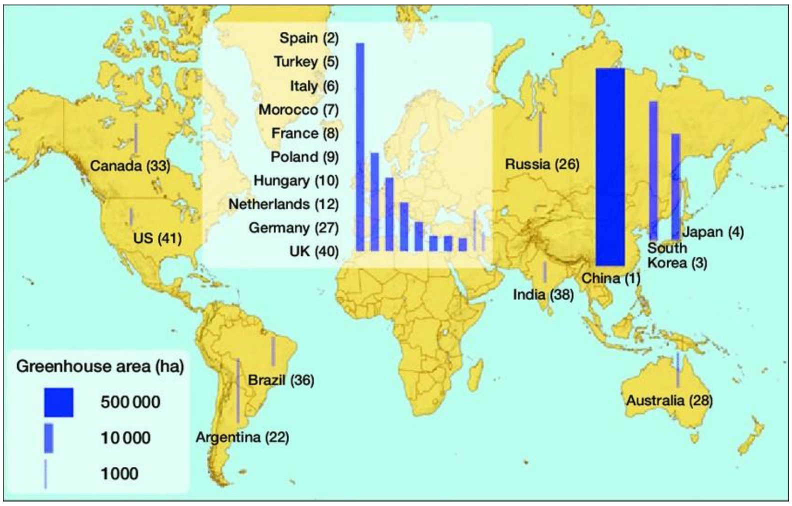


Figure 1: Global greenhouse vegetable production area by country in 2018 [3].

Nutrient management is a critical aspect of protected cultivation, as crops grown in controlled environments have different nutritional requirements and uptake patterns compared to field-grown crops [4]. Improper nutrient management can lead to deficiencies or toxicities that reduce crop yield and quality, as well as environmental impacts such as nutrient runoff and groundwater contamination [5]. This chapter provides an overview of nutrient management practices and challenges in protected cultivation, with a focus on global trends and specific considerations for Asia and India.

Nutrient Requirements and Uptake

The nutrient requirements of crops grown in protected cultivation depend on various factors, including the crop species and cultivar, growth stage, environmental conditions, and production system [6]. Table 1 shows the typical nutrient uptake and partitioning of common greenhouse crops.

Crop	**Total Uptake (kg/ha)**	**% Partitioned to Fruits**
Tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum*)	560-1,120	45-60
Cucumber (*Cucumis sativus*)	335-560	70-80
Pepper (*Capsicum annuum*)	225-450	45-65
Eggplant (*Solanum melongena*)	450-670	40-50
Lettuce (*Lactuca sativa*)	110-225	N/A
Spinach (*Spinacia oleracea*)	225-450	N/A
Strawberry (*Fragaria × ananassa*)	170-280	20-30
Rose (*Rosa* spp.)	560-1,120	N/A
Chrysanthemum (*Chrysanthemum* spp.)	335-450	N/A
Lily (*Lilium* spp.)	170-390	N/A

Table 1. Nutrient uptake and partitioning of common greenhouse crops. Adapted from [7].

In general, fruit-bearing crops such as tomatoes, cucumbers, and peppers have higher nutrient requirements and allocate a larger proportion of nutrients to the harvested portion compared to leafy greens and ornamental crops [8]. Macronutrients such as nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P), and potassium (K) are required in the largest quantities, while micronutrients such as iron (Fe), manganese (Mn), zinc (Zn), and boron (B) are needed in smaller amounts but are still essential for proper growth and development [9].

Nutrient uptake in protected cultivation is influenced by factors such as temperature, humidity, light intensity, and CO2 concentration [10]. For example, high temperatures can increase nutrient demand and uptake rates, while low humidity can reduce transpiration and limit nutrient transport [11]. Supplemental lighting and CO2 enrichment can also enhance nutrient uptake and utilization by promoting photosynthesis and biomass accumulation [12].

Fertigation Systems and Scheduling

Fertigation, the application of nutrients through irrigation water, is the most common method of nutrient delivery in protected cultivation [13]. Fertigation allows for precise control over nutrient concentrations and timing, and can be automated using programmable controllers and sensors [14]. Table 2 compares the advantages and disadvantages of different fertigation systems used in greenhouses.

System	Advantages	Disadvantages
Drip irrigation	High efficiency, precision placement, automation	Emitter clogging, limited root zone coverage
Micro-sprinklers	Larger wetted area, suitable for dense crops	Higher evaporation losses, less precise
Ebb-and-flow	Uniform distribution, good aeration	Higher initial cost, potential for waterlogging
Nutrient film technique (NFT)	Constant nutrient supply, good aeration	Limited buffer capacity, requires precise management
Aeroponic	High oxygen levels, minimal water use	High system complexity and cost

Table 2. Comparison of fertigation systems used in protected cultivation. Adapted from [15].

Drip irrigation and micro-sprinklers are the most widely used fertigation methods in soil-based greenhouse production, while hydroponic systems such as NFT and aeroponics are more common in soilless production [16]. The choice of fertigation system depends on factors such as the crop type, growing media, greenhouse design, and management preferences [17].

Fertigation scheduling involves determining the frequency, duration, and rate of nutrient application based on crop demand and environmental conditions [18].

Several approaches can be used for fertigation scheduling, including:

1. **Time-based:** Nutrients are applied at fixed intervals (e.g., daily or weekly) based on crop stage and general recommendations [19].
2. Volume-based: Nutrients are applied based on the volume of water delivered or the amount of drainage collected [20].

3. **Sensor-based:** Nutrients are applied based on feedback from sensors that measure parameters such as substrate moisture, electrical conductivity (EC), and pH [21].
4. **Model-based:** Nutrients are applied based on crop growth models that predict nutrient demand based on environmental data and physiological parameters [22].

Table 3 shows an example of a fertigation schedule for greenhouse tomatoes using a time-based approach.

Growth Stage	**Duration (weeks)**	**Irrigation Frequency**	**N (mg/L)**	**P (mg/L)**	**K (mg/L)**
Transplant to first flower	3-4	2-3 times/day	100-150	40-50	150-200
First flower to first fruit	4-5	3-4 times/day	150-200	50-60	200-250
First fruit to peak harvest	8-10	4-6 times/day	200-250	60-70	250-300
Peak harvest to end of crop	4-6	3-4 times/day	150-200	50-60	200-250

Table 3. Example fertigation schedule for greenhouse tomatoes. Adapted from [23].

The actual fertigation rates and frequencies may need to be adjusted based on factors such as climate, substrate, and crop performance [24]. Regular monitoring of substrate EC and pH, as well as plant tissue analysis, can help fine-tune fertigation programs and avoid nutrient imbalances [25].

Substrate and Hydroponic Nutrient Solutions

The choice of growing media or substrate is an important consideration in protected cultivation, as it influences nutrient retention, aeration, and water-holding capacity [26].

Peat moss and coir are organic substrates that provide good water retention and cation exchange capacity (CEC), while perlite, vermiculite, and rockwool are inorganic substrates that offer high porosity and aeration [28]. Many commercial greenhouse mixes contain a blend of these components to achieve the desired physical and chemical properties [29].

Substrate	**Bulk Density (g/cm³)**	**Porosity (%)**	**Water-Holding Capacity (%)**	**pH**	**EC (dS/m)**
Peat moss	0.1-0.3	80-90	50-75	3.5-4.5	0.2-0.5
Coir fiber	0.05-0.1	94-96	750-850	5.5-6.8	0.4-1.2
Perlite	0.05-0.2	70-80	30-40	6.5-7.5	0.1-0.3
Vermiculite	0.1-0.2	70-80	40-50	6.0-7.2	0.5-1.0
Rockwool	0.06-0.1	90-95	80-90	7.0-7.5	0.1-0.2

Table 4. Properties of common substrates used in greenhouse production. Adapted from [27].

In hydroponic systems, plants are grown in nutrient solutions rather than solid substrates [30]. The composition of hydroponic nutrient solutions varies depending on the crop, growth stage, and environmental conditions, but typically includes all essential macro- and micronutrients [31]. Table 5 shows an example of a commonly used hydroponic nutrient solution for greenhouse vegetables.

Nutrient	Concentration (mg/L)
N	150-250
P	30-50
K	200-300
Ca	150-200
Mg	40-60
S	50-100
Fe	2-4
Mn	0.5-1.0
Zn	0.3-0.7
B	0.3-0.7
Cu	0.1-0.2
Mo	0.05-0.1

Table 5. Example of a hydroponic nutrient solution for greenhouse vegetables. Adapted from [32].

The pH and EC of hydroponic nutrient solutions must be carefully managed to ensure optimal nutrient availability and prevent salt stress [33]. The ideal pH range for most greenhouse crops is 5.5-6.5, while the target EC range is typically 1.5-2.5 dS/m, depending on the crop and growth stage [34]. Regular monitoring and adjustment of pH and EC using meters and injection systems are essential for maintaining nutrient solution quality [35].

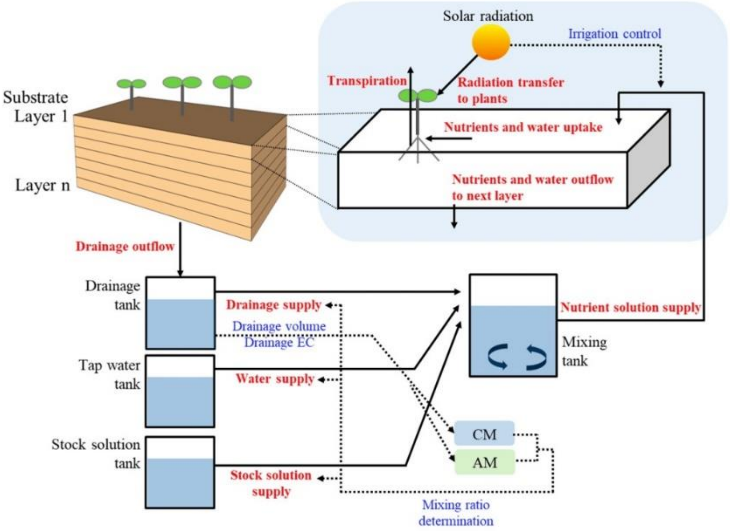


Figure 2: Schematic representation of a closed-loop soilless culture system with recirculation of the nutrient solution [15].

Leaf and Sap Analysis

Leaf and sap analysis are important tools for assessing the nutrient status of crops grown in protected cultivation [36]. Leaf analysis involves collecting representative leaf samples at specific growth stages and sending them to a laboratory for determination of nutrient concentrations [37]. Table 6 shows the typical nutrient sufficiency ranges for greenhouse tomato leaves.

Leaf nutrient concentrations below or above these ranges may indicate deficiencies or toxicities that require corrective action, such as adjusting fertigation rates or applying foliar sprays [39]. However, leaf analysis has some limitations, as it reflects nutrient status at a single point in time and may not detect short-term fluctuations or interactions between nutrients [40].

Nutrient	Sufficiency Range (% dry weight)
N	2.8-4.0
P	0.3-0.6
K	2.5-4.5
Ca	1.0-2.0
Mg	0.3-0.6
S	0.3-0.8
Fe	50-100 ppm
Mn	50-250 ppm
Zn	20-100 ppm
B	30-100 ppm
Cu	5-20 ppm
Mo	0.5-2.0 ppm

Table 6. Nutrient sufficiency ranges for greenhouse tomato leaves. Adapted from [38].

Sap analysis, also known as petiole analysis, involves collecting plant sap from leaf petioles or stems and measuring nutrient concentrations using portable meters or test strips [41]. This method provides a more rapid and dynamic assessment of plant nutrient status compared to leaf analysis, and can be used to make real-time adjustments to fertigation programs [42]. Table 7 shows the optimal sap nutrient ranges for greenhouse cucumbers at different growth stages.

Growth Stage	NO3-N (ppm)	K (ppm)	Ca (ppm)	Mg (ppm)
Vegetative	800-1,200	3,500-5,000	500-800	200-400
Flowering	600-800	4,000-5,500	600-900	250-450
Fruiting	400-600	4,500-6,000	700-1,000	300-500

Table 7. Optimal sap nutrient ranges for greenhouse cucumbers. Adapted from [43].

Sap analysis can be used in conjunction with leaf analysis and substrate testing to provide a comprehensive assessment of crop nutrient status and guide nutrient management decisions [44].

Organic and Microbial Amendments

The use of organic and microbial amendments in protected cultivation has gained increasing attention in recent years, as growers seek to improve soil health, reduce reliance on synthetic fertilizers, and enhance crop resilience [45].

Table 8 summarizes the potential benefits and challenges of using organic and microbial amendments in greenhouse production.

Amendment Type	**Benefits**	**Challenges**
Compost	Improves soil structure and nutrient retention, suppresses pathogens	Variable composition, may contain heavy metals or salts
Vermicompost	Rich in plant-available nutrients, contains beneficial microbes	High cost, may attract pests
Biochar	Improves soil water and nutrient holding capacity, sequesters carbon	Limited availability, may alter soil pH
Mycorrhizal fungi	Enhances nutrient uptake, drought tolerance, and disease resistance	Requires specific host plants and soil conditions
Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR)	Stimulates root growth, nutrient acquisition, and disease suppression	Inconsistent performance, may compete with native microbes
Trichoderma spp.	Antagonistic to plant pathogens, promotes root growth and nutrient uptake	May not persist in soil, requires specific application methods

Table 8. Benefits and challenges of using organic and microbial amendments in greenhouse production. Adapted from [46].

Organic amendments such as compost, vermicompost, and biochar can be incorporated into greenhouse substrates to improve soil physical, chemical, and biological properties [47]. These amendments can increase soil organic matter content, CEC, and water-holding capacity, while also providing a slow-release source of nutrients [48]. However, the quality and consistency of organic amendments can vary widely, and growers must ensure that they are free from contaminants and properly matured before use [49].

Microbial amendments, also known as biofertilizers or biostimulants, contain beneficial microorganisms that can enhance crop growth and nutrient uptake [50]. Mycorrhizal fungi form symbiotic associations with plant roots and can increase the absorption of nutrients, particularly phosphorus, while also improving drought tolerance and disease resistance [51]. PGPR, such as *Bacillus* and *Pseudomonas* species, colonize the rhizosphere and can stimulate root growth, nutrient acquisition, and disease suppression through various mechanisms [52]. ****Trichoderma*** **spp**. are fungal antagonists that can inhibit plant pathogens through competition, antibiosis, and mycoparasitism, while also promoting root growth and nutrient uptake [53].

The effectiveness of microbial amendments in protected cultivation depends on various factors, including the crop species, substrate type, environmental conditions, and application method [54]. Proper selection and formulation of microbial inoculants, as well as compatible integration with other management practices, are essential for achieving the desired benefits [55].

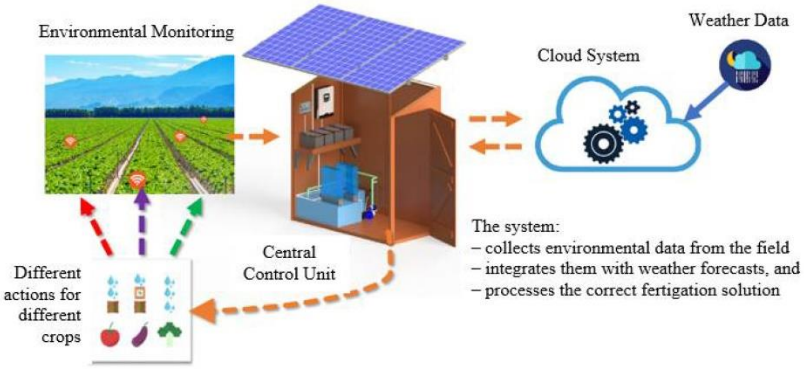


Figure 3: Example of a sensor-based automated fertigation system for greenhouse crops [21].

Crop-Specific Nutrient Management

Nutrient management protocols in protected cultivation must be tailored to the specific requirements and growth habits of each crop [56]. Table 9 presents examples of crop-specific nutrient management strategies for common greenhouse crops.

In addition to these general strategies, growers must also consider the specific cultivar, growing system, and environmental conditions when developing nutrient management programs for each crop [73]. Regular monitoring of crop growth, yield, and quality, as well as periodic substrate and tissue testing, can help identify and correct nutrient imbalances before they impact production [74].

Crop	**Nutrient Management Strategies**

Tomato	- Maintain high K:N ratio (1.2-1.5) to promote fruit quality and prevent blotchy ripening [57] - Adjust Ca and Mg levels to prevent blossom-end rot and improve shelf life [58] - Monitor and correct micronutrient deficiencies, especially Fe, Mn, and Zn [59]
Cucumber	- Provide balanced N and K nutrition to optimize yield and fruit size [60] - Avoid excess N, which can lead to vegetative growth and reduced fruit set [61] - Ensure adequate Ca supply to prevent fruit deformities and hollow stems [62]
Pepper	- Maintain moderate N levels to promote fruit set and avoid flower abscission [63] - Increase K and Ca during fruit development to improve fruit quality and storability [64] - Monitor and correct micronutrient deficiencies, especially Fe, Mn, and B [65]
Lettuce	- Provide adequate N to promote rapid leaf growth and prevent tipburn [66] - Avoid excess N, which can lead to nitrate accumulation and soft leaves [67] - Ensure sufficient K and Ca to improve leaf texture and shelf life [68]
Rose	- Adjust N and K levels based on growth stage and flower development [69] - Provide adequate Ca and Mg to prevent leaf chlorosis and improve vase life [70] - Monitor and correct micronutrient deficiencies, especially Fe and Mn [71]

Table 9. Crop-specific nutrient management strategies for common greenhouse crops. Adapted from [72].

Reducing Nutrient Loss and Environmental Impact

Nutrient loss and environmental impact are major concerns in protected cultivation, as intensive fertigation practices can lead to the accumulation of salts, leaching of nutrients, and pollution of groundwater and surface water [75]. Table 10 summarizes various strategies for reducing nutrient loss and environmental impact in greenhouse production.

Implementing these strategies requires a holistic approach to nutrient management that considers the entire production system, from substrate preparation to post-harvest handling [83]. Growers must also stay informed about local regulations and best management practices for nutrient management and environmental protection [84].

Strategy	**Description**	**Benefits**
Closed fertigation	Collect and recirculate drainage water to conserve nutrients and water [76]	Reduces nutrient and water waste, prevents groundwater

systems		contamination
Substrate moisture sensors	Monitor substrate moisture content and control irrigation based on plant demand [77]	Optimizes irrigation efficiency, reduces leaching and runoff
Controlled-release fertilizers	Provide slow, steady release of nutrients based on temperature and moisture [78]	Reduces nutrient loss, improves nutrient use efficiency
Nitrification inhibitors	Slow down the conversion of ammonium to nitrate, reducing N leaching [79]	Improves N use efficiency, reduces nitrate leaching and groundwater pollution
Cover crops and catch crops	Incorporate legumes or grasses to scavenge excess nutrients and improve soil health [80]	Reduces nutrient loss, enhances soil organic matter and biodiversity
Constructed wetlands	Use natural or engineered wetlands to filter and remove nutrients from greenhouse runoff [81]	Improves water quality, provides habitat for wildlife

Table 10. Strategies for reducing nutrient loss and environmental impact in greenhouse production. Adapted from [82].

Current Status and Future Outlook

Protected cultivation has experienced rapid growth and technological advancement in recent decades, particularly in Asia and other regions with limited arable land and water resources [85]. In India, the area under protected cultivation has increased from around 25,000 hectares in 2010 to over 100,000 hectares in 2020, with a focus on high-value crops such as vegetables, flowers, and medicinal plants [86].

The future of protected cultivation in Asia and other regions will be shaped by various factors, including population growth, urbanization, climate change, and technological innovation [104]. To meet the growing demand for fresh, safe, and nutritious produce, while also addressing resource constraints and environmental challenges, growers will need to adopt sustainable and resilient nutrient management practices [105].

Country	Current Status	Future Outlook
China	- World's largest producer of	- Continued expansion and intensification of

	greenhouse vegetables, with over 3.7 million hectares [87] - Rapid adoption of modern technologies, including hydroponic systems and intelligent control [88]	protected cultivation to meet growing food demand [89] - Increased focus on sustainable and eco-friendly production practices [90]
India	- Significant growth in protected cultivation area, driven by government support and private investment [91] - Diverse range of crops and production systems, from low-cost polyhouses to high-tech greenhouses [92]	- Potential to double the area under protected cultivation by 2030, with emphasis on climate-smart and resource-efficient technologies [93] - Need for improved infrastructure, market linkages, and extension services to support small and marginal farmers [94]
Japan	- Long history of protected cultivation, with a focus on high-quality and high-value crops [95] - Advanced technologies, such as plant factories with artificial lighting and automated control systems [96]	- Continued innovation in controlled environment agriculture to address labor shortages and aging population [97] - Increased collaboration between industry, academia, and government to develop sustainable and resilient production systems [98]
South Korea	- Intensive protected cultivation of vegetables, fruits, and flowers, with a focus on domestic market [99] - Adoption of smart farming technologies, such as IoT sensors and data-driven decision support systems [100]	- Expansion of export-oriented protected cultivation, leveraging Korea's reputation for quality and safety [101] - Investment in research and development of advanced technologies, such as vertical farming and precision agriculture [102]

Table 11. Current status and future outlook for protected cultivation in selected Asian countries. Adapted from [103].

Conclusion

Nutrient management is a critical component of protected cultivation, as it directly influences crop yield, quality, and sustainability. This chapter has provided an overview of the principles, practices, and challenges of nutrient management in greenhouse production, with a focus on global trends and specific considerations for Asia and India. As protected cultivation continues to expand in response to land and resource constraints, climate change, and the demand for high-quality produce, sustainable nutrient management will be essential to ensure the long-term productivity and profitability of these systems. This will require a holistic approach that integrates advanced technologies, best management practices, and knowledge exchange between researchers, extensionists, and growers. With continued innovation and collaboration, protected cultivation has the potential to play a vital role in meeting the food and nutrition security needs of a growing global population, while also promoting sustainable and resilient agriculture in the face of climate change and other challenges.

References

[1] Sharma, N., Acharya, S., Kumar, K., Singh, N., & Chaurasia, O. P. (2018). Hydroponics as an advanced technique for vegetable production: An overview. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*, 17(4), 364-371.

[2] Savvas, D., & Gruda, N. (2018). Application of soilless culture technologies in the modern greenhouse industry - A review. *European Journal of Horticultural Science*, 83(5), 280-293.

[3] Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2020). *Protected cultivation - A tool for sustainable crop production intensification*.

[4] Rouphael, Y., & Colla, G. (2020). Editorial: Biostimulants in agriculture. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 11, 40.

[5] Sánchez-Díaz, M., & Aguirreolea, J. (2008). Transpiration. In A. J. Laisk et al. (Eds.), *Photosynthesis in silico: Understanding complexity from molecules to ecosystems* (pp. 315-338). Springer Netherlands.

[6] Sonneveld, C., & Voogt, W. (2009). *Plant nutrition of greenhouse crops*. Springer Netherlands.

[7] Raviv, M., & Lieth, J. H. (2008). *Soilless culture: Theory and practice*. Elsevier Science.

[8] Silber, A., & Bar-Tal, A. (2019). Nutrition of substrate-grown plants. In M. Raviv et al. (Eds.), *Soilless culture: Theory and practice* (pp. 197-257). Elsevier.

[9] Marschner, P. (2012). *Marschner's mineral nutrition of higher plants* (3rd ed.). Academic Press.

[10] Gericke, W. F. (1937). Hydroponics - Crop production in liquid culture media. *Science*, 85(2198), 177-178.

[11] Cooper, A. (1979). *The ABC of NFT: Nutrient film technique, the world's first method of crop production without a solid rooting medium*. Grower Books.

[12] Hoagland, D. R., & Arnon, D. I. (1950). *The water-culture method for growing plants without soil* (2nd ed.). California Agricultural Experiment Station.

[13] Benton Jones Jr., J. (2016). *Hydroponics: A practical guide for the soilless grower* (3rd ed.). CRC Press.

[14] Schwarz, D., Franken, P., Krumbein, A., & Kläring, H.-P. (2009). Nutrient management in soilless culture. In M. Raviv & J. H. Lieth (Eds.), *Soilless culture: Theory and practice* (pp. 259-289). Elsevier Science.

[15] Bar-Yosef, B. (2008). Fertigation management and crops response to solution recycling in semi-closed greenhouses. In M. Raviv & J. H. Lieth (Eds.), *Soilless culture: Theory and practice* (pp. 341-424). Elsevier Science.

[16] Savvas, D. (2002). Automated replenishment of recycled greenhouse effluents with individual nutrients in hydroponics by means of two alternative models. *Biosystems Engineering*, 83(2), 225-236.

[17] Rouphael, Y., & Kyriacou, M. C. (2018). Enhancing quality of fresh vegetables through salinity eustress and biofortification applications facilitated by soilless cultivation. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 9, 1254.

[18] Gruda, N., & Schnitzler, W. H. (2006). Holistic approach in soilless culture research. *Acta Horticulturae*, 742, 45-53.

[19] Putra, P. A., & Yuliando, H. (2015). Soilless culture system to support water use efficiency and product quality: A review. *Agriculture and Agricultural Science Procedia*, 3, 283-288.

[20] Massa, D., Incrocci, L., Maggini, R., Carmassi, G., Campiotti, C. A., & Pardossi, A. (2010). Strategies to decrease water drainage and nitrate emission from soilless cultures of greenhouse tomato. *Agricultural Water Management*, 97(7), 971-980.

[21] Baille, A., González-Real, M. M., & Baille, L. (2009). Water management in soilless cultivation. In M. Raviv & J. H. Lieth (Eds.), *Soilless culture: Theory and practice* (pp. 161-196). Elsevier Science.

[22] Signore, A., Serio, F., & Santamaria, P. (2016). A targeted management of the nutrient solution in a soilless tomato crop according to plant needs. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 7, 391.

[23] Heuvelink, E., & Dorais, M. (2005). Crop growth and yield. In E. Heuvelink (Ed.), *Tomatoes* (pp. 85-144). CABI Publishing.

[24] Moe, R., Flæten, K., & Arvesen, A. (2013). Effect of nutrient solution temperature on yield and quality of roses 'Aida' and 'Amadeus' in a recirculating culture system. *Acta Horticulturae*, 990, 161-168.

[25] Truffault, V., Ristorto, M., Brajeul, E., Vercambre, G., & Gautier, H. (2019). To stop nitrogen overdose in soilless tomato crop: A way to promote fruit quality without affecting fruit yield. *Agronomy*, 9(2), 80.

[26] Blok, C., Jackson, B. E., Guo, X., de Visser, P. H. B., & Marcelis, L. F. M. (2017). Maximum plant uptakes for water, nutrients, and oxygen are not always met by irrigation rate and distribution in water-based cultivation systems. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 8, 562.

[27] Caron, J., Xu, H. L., Bernier, P. Y., Duchesne, I., & Tardif, P. (1998). Water availability in three artificial substrates during Prunus × cistena growth: Variable threshold values. *Journal of the American Society for Horticultural Science*, 123(5), 931-936.

[28] Maher, M., Prasad, M., & Raviv, M. (2008). Organic soilless media components. In M. Raviv & J. H. Lieth (Eds.), *Soilless culture: Theory and practice* (pp. 459-504). Elsevier Science.

[29] Lieth, J. H., & Oki, L. R. (2008). Irrigation in soilless production. In M. Raviv & J. H. Lieth (Eds.), *Soilless culture: Theory and practice* (pp. 117-156). Elsevier Science.

[30] Resh, H. M. (2013). *Hydroponic food production: A definitive guidebook for the advanced home gardener and the commercial hydroponic grower* (7th ed.). CRC Press.

[31] Adams, P. (1993). Nutrition of greenhouse vegetables in NFT and hydroponic systems. *Acta Horticulturae*, 323, 245-257.

[32] Resh, H. M. (2015). *Hydroponics for the home grower*. CRC Press.
[33] Sonneveld, C., & Voogt, W. (2001). Chemical analysis in substrate systems and hydroponics - Use and interpretation. *Acta Horticulturae*, 548, 247-259.
[34] Pardossi, A., Malorgio, F., & Tognoni, F. (2015). Hydroponic technologies for greenhouse crops. In F. Tognoni et al. (Eds.), *Advances in research on fertilization management of vegetable crops* (pp. 23-67). Springer International Publishing.
[35] Trejo-Téllez, L. I., & Gómez-Merino, F. C. (2012). Nutrient solutions for hydroponic systems. In T. Asao (Ed.), *Hydroponics - A standard methodology for plant biological researches* (pp. 1-22). InTech.
[36] Cadahía, C. (2008). *Fertirrigación: Cultivos hortícolas, frutales y ornamentales* (3rd ed.). Mundi-Prensa.
[37] Hochmuth, G. J. (2001). Fertilizer management for greenhouse vegetables. In G. J. Hochmuth & R. C. Hochmuth (Eds.), *Greenhouse vegetable production handbook, Vol. 3* (pp. 13-31). University of Florida, IFAS Extension.
[38] García-Caparrós, P., Llanderal, A., El-Tarawy, A., Maksimovic, I., & Lao, M. T. (2016). Crop and irrigation management systems under greenhouse conditions. In P. Parvatha Reddy (Ed.), *Sustainable crop production* (pp. 123-152). InTech.
[39] Sonneveld, C., & Voogt, W. (2009). *Correction of nutritional disorders*. Springer Netherlands.
[40] Huett, D. O. (1997). Fertiliser use efficiency by containerised nursery plants: 2. Nutrient leaching. *Australian Journal of Agricultural Research*, 48(2), 251-258.
[41] Peña-Fleitas, M. T., Gallardo, M., Thompson, R. B., Farneselli, M., & Padilla, F. M. (2015). Assessing crop N status of fertigated vegetable crops using plant and soil monitoring techniques. *Annals of Applied Biology*, 167(3), 387-405.
[42] Thompson, R. B., Martínez-Gaitan, C., Gallardo, M., Giménez, C., & Fernández, M. D. (2007). Identification of irrigation and N management practices that contribute to nitrate leaching loss from an intensive vegetable production system by use of a comprehensive survey. *Agricultural Water Management*, 89(3), 261-274.
[43] Muñoz, P., Paranjpe, A., Montero, J. I., & Antón, A. (2012). Cascade crops: An alternative solution for increasing sustainability of greenhouse tomato crops in Mediterranean zone. *Acta Horticulturae*, 927, 801-805.
[44] Gruda, N., & Tanny, J. (2014). Protected crops. In G. R. Dixon & D. E. Aldous (Eds.), *Horticulture: Plants for people and places, Volume 1* (pp. 327-405). Springer Netherlands.
[45] Montero, J. I., Antón, A., Torrellas, M., Ruijs, M., & Vermeulen, P. (2012). Environmental and economic profile of present greenhouse production systems in Europe. *Acta Horticulturae*, 927, 755-762.
[46] Lal, R. (2020). Regenerative agriculture for food and climate. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*, 75(5), 123A-124A.
[47] Gomiero, T. (2018). Food quality assessment in organic vs. conventional agricultural produce: Findings and issues. *Applied Soil Ecology*, 123, 714-728.
[48] Burnett, S. E., Mattson, N. S., & Williams, K. A. (2016). Substrates and fertilizers for organic container production of herbs, vegetables, and herbaceous ornamental plants grown in greenhouses in the United States. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 208, 111-119.
[49] Liang, X., Gao, Y., Zhang, X., Tian, Y., Zhang, Z., & Gao, L. (2014). Effect of optimal daily fertigation on migration of water and salt in soil, root growth and fruit yield of cucumber (Cucumis sativus L.) in solar-greenhouse. *PloS One*, 9(1), e86975.

[50] Bhardwaj, D., Ansari, M. W., Sahoo, R. K., & Tuteja, N. (2014). Biofertilizers function as key player in sustainable agriculture by improving soil fertility, plant tolerance and crop productivity. *Microbial Cell Factories*, 13(1), 66.

[51] Singh, R., Soni, S. K., & Kalra, A. (2013). Synergy between *Glomus fasciculatum* and a beneficial *Pseudomonas* in reducing root diseases and improving yield and forskolin content in *Coleus forskohlii* Briq. under organic field conditions. *Mycorrhiza*, 23(1), 35-44.

[52] Hayat, R., Ali, S., Amara, U., Khalid, R., & Ahmed, I. (2010). Soil beneficial bacteria and their role in plant growth promotion: A review. *Annals of Microbiology*, 60(4), 579-598.

[53] Harman, G. E., Howell, C. R., Viterbo, A., Chet, I., & Lorito, M. (2004). *Trichoderma* species - opportunistic, avirulent plant symbionts. *Nature Reviews Microbiology*, 2(1), 43-56.

[54] du Jardin, P. (2015). Plant biostimulants: Definition, concept, main categories and regulation. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 196, 3-14.

[55] Ruzzi, M., & Aroca, R. (2015). Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria act as biostimulants in horticulture. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 196, 124-134.

[56] Baca, M. T., & Cánovas, F. M. (2018). Nitrogen use efficiency in plants: An overview. In S. Kopriva (Ed.), *Annual plant reviews online* (pp. 1-28). John Wiley & Sons.

[57] Hartz, T. K., Johnstone, P. R., Francis, D. M., & Miyao, E. M. (2005). Processing tomato yield and fruit quality improved with potassium fertigation. *HortScience*, 40(6), 1862-1867.

[58] De Pascale, S., Maggio, A., Orsini, F., & Barbieri, G. (2016). Cultivar, soil type, nitrogen source and irrigation regime as quality determinants of organically grown tomatoes. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 199, 88-94.

[59] Taber, H., Perkins-Veazie, P., Li, S., White, W., Rodermel, S., & Xu, Y. (2008). Enhancement of tomato fruit lycopene by potassium is cultivar dependent. *HortScience*, 43(1), 159-165.

[60] Sun, Y., Holm, P. E., & Liu, F. (2014). A review of the effects of nitrogen fertilization on tomato fruit yield and quality. *Journal of Agricultural Science*, 6(7), 63-76.

[61] Dorais, M., Ehret, D. L., & Papadopoulos, A. P. (2008). Tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum*) health components: From the seed to the consumer. *Phytochemistry Reviews*, 7(2), 231-250.

[62] Marcelis, L. F. M., Heuvelink, E., & Goudriaan, J. (1998). Modelling biomass production and yield of horticultural crops: A review. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 74(1-2), 83-111.

[63] Flores, P., Navarro, J. M., Garrido, C., Rubio, J. S., & Martínez, V. (2004). Influence of Ca2+, K+ and NO3- fertilisation on nutritional quality of pepper. *Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture*, 84(6), 569-574.

[64] Chapagain, B. P., Wiesman, Z., Zaccai, M., Imas, P., & Magen, H. (2003). Potassium chloride enhances fruit appearance and improves quality of fertigated greenhouse tomato as compared to potassium nitrate. *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 26(3), 643-658.

[65] Moe, R., & Kristoffersen, T. (1969). The effect of temperature and light on growth and flowering of rosa 'Baccara' in greenhouses. *Acta Horticulturae*, 14, 157-166.

[66] Magne, C., Saladin, G., & Clément, C. (2006). Transient effect of the herbicide flazasulfuron on carbohydrate physiology in *Vitis vinifera* L. *Chemosphere*, 62(4), 650-657.

[67] Rouphael, Y., Colla, G., Battistelli, A., Moscatello, S., Proietti, S., & Rea, E. (2004). Yield, water requirement, nutrient uptake and fruit quality of zucchini squash grown in soil and closed soilless culture. *The Journal of Horticultural Science & Biotechnology*, 79(3), 423-430.

[68] Castellanos, M. T., Cabello, M. J., Cartagena, M. C., Tarquis, A. M., Arce, A., & Ribas, F. (2011). Growth dynamics and yield of melon as influenced by nitrogen fertilizer. *Scientia Agricola*, 68(2), 191-199.

[69] Cabrera, R. I., Evans, R. Y., & Paul, J. L. (1993). Leaching losses of N from container-grown roses. *Scientia Horticulturae,* 53(4), 333-345.

[70] De Pascale, S., Maggio, A., Orsini, F., Stanghellini, C., & Heuvelink, E. (2018). Growth response and radiation use efficiency in tomato exposed to short-term and long-term salinized soils. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 231, 189-198.

[71] Mohammad, M. J., Zuraiqi, S., Quasmeh, W., & Papadopoulos, I. (1999). Yield response and nitrogen utilization efficiency by drip-irrigated potato. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*, 54(3), 243-249.

[72] Bar-Yosef, B., Markovich, T., & Levkovich, I. (2001). Pepper response to leachate recycling in a greenhouse in Israel. *Acta Horticulturae*, 548, 357-364.

[73] Pardossi, A., Falossi, F., Malorgio, F., Incrocci, L., & Bellocchi, G. (2005). Empirical models of macronutrient uptake in melon plants grown in recirculating nutrient solution culture. *Journal of Plant Nutrition*, 27(7), 1261-1280.

[74] Gallardo, M., Thompson, R. B., Peña-Fleitas, M. T., Padilla, F. M., & Fernández, M. D. (2014). Utilización de medidas de las plantas y del suelo para la determinación del estado nutricional de cultivos hortícolas. *Horticultura*, 313, 20-25.

[75] Thompson, R. B., Martínez-Gaitan, C., Gallardo, M., Giménez, C., & Fernández, M. D. (2007). Identification of irrigation and N management practices that contribute to nitrate leaching loss from an intensive vegetable production system by use of a comprehensive survey. *Agricultural Water Management*, 89(3), 261-274.

[76] Van Os, E. A. (1999). Closed soilless growing systems: A sustainable solution for Dutch greenhouse horticulture. *Water Science and Technology*, 39(5), 105-112.

[77] Incrocci, L., Marzialetti, P., Incrocci, G., Di Vita, A., Balendonck, J., Bibbiani, C., Spagnol, S., & Pardossi, A. (2014). Substrate water status and evapotranspiration irrigation scheduling in heterogenous container nursery crops. *Agricultural Water Management*, 131, 30-40.

[78] Alva, A. K., Paramasivam, S., Fares, A., Obreza, T. A., & Schumann, A. W. (2006). Nitrogen best management practice for citrus trees: I. Fruit yield, quality, and leaf nutritional status. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 107(3), 233-244.

[79] Abbasi, P. A., Al-Dahmani, J., Sahin, F., Hoitink, H. A. J., & Miller, S. A. (2002). Effect of compost amendments on disease severity and yield of tomato in conventional and organic production systems. *Plant Disease*, 86(2), 156-161.

[80] Campiglia, E., Mancinelli, R., Radicetti, E., & Marinari, S. (2011). Legume cover crops and mulches: Effects on nitrate leaching and nitrogen input in a pepper crop (Capsicum annuum L.). *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*, 89(3), 399-412.

[81] Zhang, H., Xiong, Y., Huang, G., Xu, X., & Huang, Q. (2017). Effects of water stress on processing tomatoes yield, quality and water use efficiency with plastic mulched

drip irrigation in sandy soil of the Hetao Irrigation District. *Agricultural Water Management*, 179, 205-214.

[82] Pardossi, A., Tognoni, F., & Incrocci, L. (2004). Mediterranean greenhouse technology. *Chronica Horticulturae*, 44(2), 28-34.

[83] Gruda, N. (2005). Impact of environmental factors on product quality of greenhouse vegetables for fresh consumption. *Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences*, 24(3), 227-247.

[84] Thompson, R. B., Padilla, F. M., Peña-Fleitas, M. T., & Gallardo, M. (2020). Reducing nitrate leaching losses from vegetable production in Mediterranean greenhouses. *Agricultural Water Management*, 239, 106267.

[85] Castilla, N., & Baeza, E. (2013). Greenhouse site selection. In F. J. Villalobos & E. Fereres (Eds.), *Principles of agronomy for sustainable agriculture* (pp. 515-522). Springer International Publishing.

[86] Indian National Committee for Irrigation and Drainage. (2020). *Vision 2030: Protected cultivation in India*. INCID.

[87] Shen, Y., Wei, R., & Xu, L. (2018). Energy consumption prediction of a greenhouse and optimization of daily average temperature. *Energies*, 11(1), 65.

[88] Wang, J., Zhao, Z., & Yu, C. (2018). Development and application of intelligent monitor and control system in the greenhouse. *Smart Agriculture*, 1(2), 13-23.

[89] Sanyé-Mengual, E., Oliver-Solà, J., Montero, J. I., & Rieradevall, J. (2015). An environmental and economic life cycle assessment of rooftop greenhouse (RTG) implementation in Barcelona, Spain. Assessing new forms of urban agriculture from the greenhouse structure to the final product level. *The International Journal of Life Cycle Assessment*, 20(3), 350-366.

[90] Luo, W., de Zwart, H. F., Dieleman, J. A., Wang, X., Stanghellini, C., & Bu, C. (2005). Simulation of greenhouse management in the subtropics, part I: Model validation and scenario study for the winter season. *Biosystems Engineering*, 90(3), 307-318.

[91] Singh, D., Basu, C., Meinhardt-Wollweber, M., & Roth, B. (2015). LEDs for energy efficient greenhouse lighting. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, 49, 139-147.

[92] Sabeh, N. C., Giacomelli, G. A., & Kubota, C. (2011). Water use for pad and fan evaporative cooling of a greenhouse in a semi-arid climate. *Acta Horticulturae*, 893, 409-416.

[93] Kumar, K. S., Tiwari, K. N., & Jha, M. K. (2009). Design and technology for greenhouse cooling in tropical and subtropical regions: A review. *Energy and Buildings*, 41(12), 1269-1275.

[94] Ghani, S., Bakochristou, F., ElBialy, E. M. A. A., Gamaledin, S. M. A., Rashwan, M. M., Abdelhalim, A. M., & Ismail, S. M. (2019). Design challenges of agricultural greenhouses in hot and arid environments – A review. *Engineering in Agriculture, Environment and Food*, 12(1), 48-70.

[95] Kozai, T., & Niu, G. (2020). Plant factory: An indoor vertical farming system for efficient quality food production (2nd ed.). Academic Press.

[96] Kozai, T., Niu, G., & Takagaki, M. (Eds.). (2019). Plant factory: An indoor vertical farming system for efficient quality food production (2nd ed.). Academic Press.

[97] Shamshiri, R. R., Kalantari, F., Ting, K. C., Thorp, K. R., Hameed, I. A., Weltzien, C., Ahmad, D., & Shad, Z. M. (2018). Advances in greenhouse automation and controlled environment agriculture: A transition to plant factories and urban agriculture. *International Journal of Agricultural and Biological Engineering*, 11(1), 1-22.

[98] Kozai, T. (2018). Smart plant factory: The next generation indoor vertical farms. Springer.

[99] Kim, H. J., Lee, J. H., Ahn, T. I., Shin, J. H., & Lim, Y. J. (2020). Analysis of research trend on smart greenhouse environment control and plant growth control. *Protected Horticulture and Plant Factory*, 29(3), 269-280.

[100] Lee, J. H., Ahn, T. I., & Kim, H. J. (2021). Smart greenhouse environment monitoring and automatic control system based on wireless sensor network. *Journal of Korea Academy-Industrial cooperation Society*, 22(4), 16-23.

[101] Cha, M. K., An, S. E., Jang, J. Y., & Son, J. E. (2020). Development of an integrated environment control algorithm for smart greenhouse system using deep reinforcement learning. *Agriculture*, 10(7), 264.

[102] Moon, T., Ahn, T. I., & Son, J. E. (2019). Forecasting root-zone electrical conductivity of nutrient solutions in closed-loop soilless cultures via a recurrent neural network using environmental and cultivation information. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 10, 859.

[103] Tewari, S., & Ravindranath, R. (2018). IOT based monitoring and control of protected cultivation environment. In J. S. Raj & J. Ilanthirayan (Eds.), *Proceedings of the International Conference on Emerging Technologies in Computer Engineering: Microservices in Big Data Analytics* (pp. 237-244). Springer Singapore.

[104] Benke, K., & Tomkins, B. (2017). Future food-production systems: Vertical farming and controlled-environment agriculture. *Sustainability: Science, Practice and Policy*, 13(1), 13-26.

[105] Pawlowski, A., Sánchez-Molina, J. A., Guzmán, J. L., Rodríguez, F., & Dormido, S. (2017). Evaluation of event-based irrigation system control scheme for tomato crops in greenhouses. *Agricultural Water Management*, 183, 16-25.

[106] Tzortzakis, N., Nicola, S., Savvas, D., & Voogt, W. (2020). Soilless cultivation through an intensive crop production scheme. Management strategies, challenges and future directions. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 11, 1-14.

[107] Sharma, S., Sharma, P., & Yadav, A. K. (2021). The role of biostimulants in sustainable agriculture: Current status and future challenges. In A. K. Yadav et al. (Eds.), *Biostimulants for sustainable crop production* (pp. 3-19). Springer International Publishing.

CHAPTER - 3

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Integrated Pest Management

[1]Vikash Tyagi,[2]Yashraj, and [3]Nisha yadav

[1]Ph.D research scholar (Horti) Department of Vegetable Science sardar vallabhbhai patel agri. & tech . Uni. Modipuram meerut 250110

[2]M.sc (Horti), Department of Vegetable Science sardar vallabhbhai patel agri. & tech . Uni. Modipuram meerut 250110

[3]Ph.D. Department of Agriculture Extension Education, sardar Vallabhbhai Patel Agriculture and Technology University Modipuram Meerut

Corresponding Author
[1]Vikash Tyagi

Abstract

Integrated Pest Management (IPM) is a holistic approach to managing pests in greenhouse crop production that minimizes reliance on chemical pesticides. It combines cultural, biological, physical, and chemical control methods in an environmentally sustainable and economically viable manner. Globally, the adoption of IPM in greenhouses has been increasing due to growing consumer demand for pesticide-free produce, stricter regulations on pesticide use, and the development of resistance in pest populations to commonly used pesticides. In Asia, IPM adoption has been supported by government policies and extension services, particularly in China, Japan, and South Korea. India has also seen growth in IPM, driven by export demand and increasing domestic consumer awareness, though adoption levels vary across states. Key challenges include limited availability of registered biopesticides and natural enemies, need for grower training and technical support, and tailoring IPM protocols to local conditions and cropping systems. Research priorities include development of innovative tools for monitoring and decision support, breeding for host plant

resistance, conservation and augmentation of natural enemies, and integration of preventive and therapeutic tactics. Successful implementation of IPM in greenhouse crops requires a participatory approach involving growers, researchers, extension agents, and other stakeholders in the value chain.

Keywords: Integrated Pest Management, Greenhouse Crops, Biological Control, Biopesticides, Decision Support Tools

Greenhouse crop production has expanded rapidly in recent decades, driven by the demand for high-quality, year-round produce and the need to optimize land and water use efficiency [1]. However, the warm, humid environment and high plant density in greenhouses also favor the development of arthropod pests, diseases, and weeds, which can cause significant yield and quality losses if not effectively managed [2]. Historically, pest management in greenhouses relied heavily on chemical pesticides, but their repeated use has led to the development of resistance, adverse effects on beneficial organisms, human health risks, and environmental contamination [3]. Integrated Pest Management (IPM) has emerged as a sustainable alternative that combines various control tactics to maintain pest populations below economic injury levels while minimizing reliance on pesticides [4].

2. Principles and Components of IPM in Greenhouse Crops

IPM is based on the principles of prevention, monitoring, and intervention [5]. The key components of IPM in greenhouse crops include:

2.1. Cultural control: This involves manipulating the greenhouse environment and crop management practices to create conditions less favorable for pest development, such as sanitation, crop rotation, plant spacing, pruning, and irrigation management [6].

2.2. Biological control: This involves the use of natural enemies such as predators, parasitoids, and pathogens to suppress pest populations [7]. Common examples include the use of predatory mites, parasitic wasps, and entomopathogenic fungi (Table 1).

2.3. Physical control: This involves the use of barriers, traps, and other mechanical methods to exclude or remove pests from the greenhouse [9]. Examples include insect screens, sticky traps, and vacuum devices (Figure 1).

Natural Enemy	**Target Pest**	**Crop**
Amblyseius swirskii	Thrips, whiteflies	Tomato, cucumber, pepper
Aphidius colemani	Aphids	Lettuce, herbs
Encarsia formosa	Whiteflies	Tomato, ornamentals
Phytoseiulus persimilis	Two-spotted spider mite	Various crops
Steinernema feltiae	Fungus gnats, shore flies	Various crops

Table 1. Examples of commercially available natural enemies used in greenhouse IPM [8].

2.4. Chemical control: This involves the judicious use of pesticides, preferably selective and low-risk products such as insect growth regulators, microbial pesticides, and botanical extracts, applied based on monitoring data and action thresholds [11].

3. Global Adoption of IPM in Greenhouse Crops

The adoption of IPM in greenhouse crops has been increasing worldwide, driven by various factors such as consumer demand for pesticide-free produce, stricter regulations on pesticide use, and the development of resistance in pest populations to commonly used pesticides [12]. In Europe, IPM has been promoted through the EU Directive on Sustainable Use of Pesticides, which requires member states to implement IPM as the standard approach to crop protection [13]. In North America, IPM adoption has been supported by university extension programs, grower associations, and sustainability certification schemes such as the Pesticide Environmental Stewardship Program [14].

4. IPM in Greenhouse Crops in Asia

In Asia, the adoption of IPM in greenhouse crops has been driven by government policies, research and extension services, and export market demands [15]. China, the world's largest producer of greenhouse vegetables, has promoted IPM through the "National Guidelines for Integrated Pest Management in Protected Vegetable Production" and the "Green Control, Green Food, and

Organic Food" certification programs [16]. Japan and South Korea have also been leaders in greenhouse IPM, with well-established systems for the production and release of natural enemies and biopesticides [17].

5. IPM in Greenhouse Crops in India

India has seen significant growth in protected cultivation in recent years, with an estimated area of 50,000 hectares under greenhouses and other protected structures [18]. The adoption of IPM in Indian greenhouses has been driven by export demand for pesticide-free produce and increasing domestic consumer awareness of food safety issues [19]. The National Centre for Integrated Pest Management (NCIPM) has played a key role in promoting IPM through research, training, and demonstration projects [20].

However, the adoption of IPM in Indian greenhouses varies across states and cropping systems. In Maharashtra, one of the leading states in protected cultivation, a survey of rose growers found that 60% were using biocontrol agents, while 40% relied solely on chemical pesticides [21]. In Karnataka, a study of capsicum growers found that only 20% were using IPM, with lack of knowledge and availability of biocontrol agents being the main barriers to adoption [22].

6. Key Pests and IPM Strategies in Greenhouse Crops

6.1. Aphids: Aphids are major pests of greenhouse crops, causing direct damage by feeding on plant sap and indirect damage by transmitting viral diseases [23]. IPM strategies for aphid control include the use of resistant varieties, crop rotation, reflective mulches, and the release of parasitic wasps such as *Aphidius colemani* [24] (Table 2).

Crop	Resistant Variety	Reflective Mulch	Parasitic Wasp
Capsicum	'Andalus'	Silver plastic	*A. colemani*
Cucumber	'Cumlaude'	Silver plastic	*A. colemani*
Eggplant	'Mesoamerica'	Silver plastic	*A. colemani*
Tomato	'Astuco'	Silver plastic	*A. colemani*

Table 2. IPM strategies for aphid control in greenhouse crops [25].

6.2. Whiteflies: Whiteflies are another major pest of greenhouse crops, causing direct damage by feeding on plant sap and indirect damage by transmitting viral diseases and excreting honeydew, which promotes the growth of sooty mold [26]. IPM strategies for whitefly control include the use of yellow sticky traps, the release of parasitic wasps such as *Encarsia formosa* and *Eretmocerus eremicus*, and the application of insect growth regulators such as pyriproxyfen [27

6.3. Thrips: Thrips are small, slender insects that feed on plant cells, causing silvery scars, distorted growth, and transmission of viral diseases [29]. IPM strategies for thrips control include the use of blue sticky traps, the release of predatory mites such as *Amblyseius swirskii* and *Neoseiulus cucumeris*, and the application of entomopathogenic fungi such as *Beauveria bassiana* [30].

6.4. Spider mites: Spider mites are tiny arachnids that feed on plant cells, causing stippling, bronzing, and defoliation [31]. IPM strategies for spider mite control include the use of resistant varieties, the release of predatory mites such as *Phytoseiulus persimilis* and *Neoseiulus californicus*, and the application of selective acaricides such as bifenazate and spiromesifen [32] (Table 3).

Crop	Resistant Variety	Predatory Mite	Selective Acaricide
Cucumber	'Shakira'	*P. persimilis*, *N. californicus*	Bifenazate, spiromesifen
Eggplant	'Jaylo'	*P. persimilis*, *N. californicus*	Bifenazate, spiromesifen
Pepper	'Bendigo'	*P. persimilis*, *N. californicus*	Bifenazate, spiromesifen
Tomato	'Vimero'	*P. persimilis*, *N. californicus*	Bifenazate, spiromesifen

Table 3. IPM strategies for spider mite control in greenhouse crops [33].

7. Challenges and Opportunities for IPM in Greenhouse Crops

Despite the growing adoption of IPM in greenhouse crops, several challenges remain:

7.1. Limited availability and high cost of registered biopesticides and natural enemies [34].

7.2. Need for grower training and technical support to implement IPM effectively [35].

7.3. Variability in greenhouse environments and cropping systems, requiring tailored IPM protocols [36].

7.4. Lack of effective IPM options for some emerging pests and invasive species [37].

7.5. Development of innovative tools for monitoring and decision support, such as sensors, imaging technologies, and predictive models [38]

7.6. Breeding for host plant resistance to pests and diseases, using conventional and molecular approaches [40].

7.7. Conservation and augmentation of natural enemies through habitat management and banker plant systems [41].

7.8. Integration of preventive and therapeutic tactics, such as cultural control, biopesticides, and selective pesticides, for optimal pest suppression [42].

8. Conclusion

Integrated Pest Management (IPM) is a sustainable approach to managing pests in greenhouse crops that combines cultural, biological, physical, and chemical control tactics. Its adoption has been increasing globally, driven by consumer demand, regulatory pressures, and the need to mitigate the negative impacts of pesticide use. In Asia, IPM has been promoted through government policies, research and extension services, and export market requirements. India has seen growth in IPM adoption in greenhouses, particularly in the export-oriented sector, but challenges remain in terms of availability of biocontrol agents, grower training, and tailoring IPM protocols to local conditions. Successful implementation of IPM in greenhouse crops requires a participatory approach involving growers, researchers, extension agents, and other stakeholders in the value chain. Research priorities include the development of innovative tools for monitoring and decision support, breeding for host plant resistance, conservation and augmentation of natural enemies, and integration of preventive and therapeutic tactics. By adopting IPM, greenhouse growers can produce high-quality, safe, and environmentally sustainable crops while reducing reliance on chemical pesticides and enhancing the resilience of their production systems.

References

[1] Shamshiri, R. R., Jones, J. W., Thorp, K. R., Ahmad, D., Man, H. C., & Taheri, S. (2018). Review of optimum temperature, humidity, and vapour pressure deficit for microclimate evaluation and control in greenhouse cultivation of tomato: A review. *International Agrophysics*, 32(2), 287-302.

[2] Pérez-Hedo, M., Riahi, C., Urbaneja, A., & Jaques, J. A. (2021). Use of predatory mirids for the biological control of pests in greenhouse crops. *Journal of Pest Science*, 94(1), 1-17.

[3] Barzman, M., Bàrberi, P., Birch, A. N. E., Boonekamp, P., Dachbrodt-Saaydeh, S., Graf, B., ... & Sattin, M. (2015). Eight principles of integrated pest management. *Agronomy for Sustainable Development*, 35(4), 1199-1215.

[4] Stenberg, J. A. (2017). A conceptual framework for integrated pest management. *Trends in Plant Science*, 22(9), 759-769.

[5] Radcliffe, E. B., Hutchison, W. D., & Cancelado, R. E. (Eds.). (2009). *Integrated pest management: Concepts, tactics, strategies and case studies*. Cambridge University Press.

[6] Mao, L., Zhang, L., Jiang, H., & Liu, S. (2021). Application of cultural control tactics for management of pests in greenhouse vegetables. *Journal of Integrative Agriculture*, 20(12), 3126-3140.

[7] van Lenteren, J. C., Alomar, O., Ravensberg, W. J., & Urbaneja, A. (2020). Biological control agents for control of pests in greenhouses. In *Integrated pest and disease management in greenhouse crops* (pp. 409-439). Springer, Cham.

[8] Knapp, M., van Houten, Y., & Hoogerbrugge, H. (2021). Forty-five years of using the predatory mite *Phytoseiulus persimilis* in greenhouses: What has been achieved and what still needs to be done? *Experimental and Applied Acarology*, 85(1), 1-30.

[9] Teitel, M. (2020). Physical methods for greenhouse pest control. In *Integrated pest and disease management in greenhouse crops* (pp. 441-454). Springer, Cham.

[10] Shimoda, M., & Honda, K. I. (2013). Insect reactions to light and its applications to pest management. *Applied Entomology and Zoology*, 48(4), 413-421.

[11] Guedes, R. N. C., Smagghe, G., Stark, J. D., & Desneux, N. (2016). Pesticide-induced stress in arthropod pests for optimized integrated pest management programs. *Annual Review of Entomology*, 61, 43-62.

[12] Lamichhane, J. R., Bischoff-Schaefer, M., Bluemel, S., Dachbrodt-Saaydeh, S., Dreux, L., Jansen, J. P., ... & Villeneuve, F. (2017). Identifying obstacles and ranking common biological control research priorities for Europe to manage most economically important pests in arable, vegetable and perennial crops. *Pest Management Science*, 73(1), 14-21.

[13] Barzman, M., Lamichhane, J. R., Booij, K., Boonekamp, P., Desneux, N., Huber, L., ... & Messean, A. (2021). Research and development priorities in the face of climate change and rapidly evolving pests. *Sustainable Agriculture Reviews*, 49, 1-29.

[14] Piñero, J. C., & Keay, J. (Eds.). (2018). *Integrated pest management in tropical regions*. CABI.

[15] Srinivasan, R. (Ed.). (2019). *Integrated pest management in tropical regions: Towards food security and sustainability*. Springer Nature.

[16] Yang, X., Gao, X., Ren, Y., Li, Z., Zhang, H., & Wang, S. (2021). Development and application of integrated pest management in vegetable production in China. *Journal of Integrative Agriculture*, 20(12), 3065-3079.

[17] Oka, Y. (2020). From old-fashioned to modern crop protection: The rise and fall of chemical pesticides and the development of alternative pest control strategies in Japan. *Journal of Pesticide Science*, 45(4), 175-185.

[18] Sabir, N., & Singh, B. (2013). Protected cultivation of vegetables in global arena: A review. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 83(2), 123-135.

[19] Sood, A. K., & Sood, S. (2016). Constraints in adopting protected cultivation by vegetable growers in Himachal Pradesh. *Indian Journal of Economics and Development*, 12(1a), 399-404.

[20] Kannan, M., & Uthamasamy, S. (2007). Integrated pest management in protected cultivation. *Journal of Horticultural Sciences*, 2(1), 49-57.

[21] Shinde, S. T., Patel, P. G., Darade, N. V., & Patel, N. M. (2017). Knowledge of rose growers about integrated pest management practices. *International Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 13(1), 53-56.

[22] Sreenivasa, M. U., Bhavya, V. P., & Nandini, G. (2018). Adoption of integrated pest management practices by capsicum growers in Karnataka. *Journal of Extension Education*, 30(4), 6187-6191.

[23] Blackman, R. L., & Eastop, V. F. (2000). *Aphids on the world's crops: An identification and information guide* (No. Ed. 2). John Wiley & Sons Ltd.

[24] Rimaz, V., & Valizadegan, O. (2013). Toxicity of agricultural adjuvant cytogate oil and the insecticide pymetrozine to the aphid parasitoid, *Aphidius colemani* (Hymenoptera: Braconidae) in the laboratory. *Journal of Crop Protection*, 2(2), 203-210.

[25] Basij, M., Askarianzaeh, A., Asgari, S., Moharramipou, S., & Rafezi, R. (2011). Evaluation of resistance of cucumber cultivars to the vegetable leaf miner (*Liriomyza sativae* Blanchard) (Diptera: Agromyzidae) in greenhouse. *Chilean Journal of Agricultural Research*, 71(3), 395-400.

[26] Byrne, D. N., & Bellows Jr, T. S. (1991). Whitefly biology. *Annual Review of Entomology*, 36(1), 431-457.

[27] Grávalos, C., Fernández, E., Belando, A., Moreno, I., Ros, C., & Bielza, P. (2015). Cross-resistance and baseline susceptibility of Mediterranean strains of *Bemisia tabaci* to cyantraniliprole. *Pest Management Science*, 71(7), 1030-1036.

[28] Gullan, P. J., & Cranston, P. S. (2014). *The insects: An outline of entomology*. John Wiley & Sons.

[29] Reitz, S. R. (2009). Biology and ecology of the western flower thrips (Thysanoptera: Thripidae): The making of a pest. *Florida Entomologist*, 92(1), 7-13.

[30] Premachandra, W. T. S. D., Borgemeister, C., Berndt, O., Ehlers, R. U., & Poehling, H. M. (2003). Combined releases of entomopathogenic nematodes and the predatory mite *Hypoaspis aculeifer* to control soil-dwelling stages of western flower thrips *Frankliniella occidentalis*. *Biocontrol*, 48(5), 529-541.

[31] Helle, W., & Sabelis, M. W. (Eds.). (1985). *Spider mites: Their biology, natural enemies and control* (Vol. 1, p. 458). Amsterdam: Elsevier.

[32] Van Leeuwen, T., Vontas, J., Tsagkarakou, A., Dermauw, W., & Tirry, L. (2010). Acaricide resistance mechanisms in the two-spotted spider mite *Tetranychus urticae* and other important *Acari*: A review. *Insect Biochemistry and Molecular Biology*, 40(8), 563-572.

[33] Attia, S., Grissa, K. L., Lognay, G., Bitume, E., Hance, T., & Mailleux, A. C. (2013). A review of the major biological approaches to control the worldwide pest *Tetranychus urticae* (Acari: Tetranychidae) with special reference to natural pesticides. *Journal of Pest Science*, 86(3), 361-386.

[34] Chandler, D., Bailey, A. S., Tatchell, G. M., Davidson, G., Greaves, J., & Grant, W. P. (2011). The development, regulation and use of biopesticides for integrated pest management. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 366(1573), 1987-1998.

[35] Pretty, J., & Bharucha, Z. P. (2015). Integrated pest management for sustainable intensification of agriculture in Asia and Africa. *Insects*, 6(1), 152-182.

[36] Pedigo, L. P., & Rice, M. E. (2014). *Entomology and pest management*. Waveland Press.

[37] Amano, H. (2021). Recent developments in the use of indigenous natural enemies and entomopathogens for the biological control of invasive pest species in Japan. *Insects*, 12(3), 196.

[38] Mahlein, A. K. (2016). Plant disease detection by imaging sensors–parallels and specific demands for precision agriculture and plant phenotyping. *Plant Disease*, 100(2), 241-251.

[39] Cao, X., Wang, X., Guan, X., & Zhang, Y. (2018). Deployment of a wireless sensor network for greenhouse environment monitoring. *International Journal of Distributed Sensor Networks*, 14(2), 1550147718758263.

[40] Broekgaarden, C., Snoeren, T. A., Dicke, M., & Vosman, B. (2011). Exploiting natural variation to identify insect-resistance genes. *Plant Biotechnology Journal*, 9(8), 819-825.

[41] Messelink, G. J., Bennison, J., Alomar, O., Ingegno, B. L., Tavella, L., Shipp, L., ... & Wäckers, F. L. (2014). Approaches to conserving natural enemy populations in greenhouse crops: Current methods and future prospects. *Biocontrol*, 59(4), 377-393.

[42] Dara, S. K. (2019). The new integrated pest management paradigm for the modern age. *Journal of Integrated Pest Management*, 10(1), 12.

CHAPTER - 4

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Wireless Sensor Networks (WSNs) for Monitoring Greenhouse Environments

Khushboo Gupta

Ph.D, IARI New Delhi

Corresponding Author
Khushboo Gupta
khushbooagrahari2012@gmail.com

Abstract

Wireless sensor networks (WSNs) have emerged as a promising technology for monitoring and optimizing greenhouse environments to enhance crop productivity and quality. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of the application of WSNs in greenhouse cultivation, focusing on global, Asian, and Indian perspectives. We discuss the key components and architecture of greenhouse WSNs, including sensor nodes, communication protocols, and data management systems. The chapter highlights the benefits of WSNs in enabling real-time monitoring of critical environmental parameters such as temperature, humidity, light intensity, and CO2 levels. We present case studies showcasing successful implementations of WSNs in greenhouses across different regions, demonstrating their potential to improve resource efficiency, reduce labor costs, and optimize crop growth. The challenges and future directions for WSN deployment in greenhouse environments are also explored, considering factors such as scalability, energy efficiency, and data security. The chapter emphasizes the role of WSNs in advancing protected cultivation practices and contributing to the development of smart agriculture systems. By harnessing the power of WSNs, greenhouse growers can make data-driven decisions, minimize

environmental impact, and maximize crop yields, ultimately promoting sustainable and profitable greenhouse cultivation worldwide.

Keywords: Wireless Sensor Networks, Greenhouse Monitoring, Smart Agriculture, Protected Cultivation, Environmental Control

The rapid growth of the global population and the increasing demand for food have necessitated the adoption of advanced technologies in agriculture to enhance crop productivity and ensure food security. Protected cultivation, particularly greenhouse farming, has emerged as a vital approach to meet these challenges by providing controlled environments for year-round crop production [1]. Wireless sensor networks (WSNs) have proven to be a transformative technology in greenhouse monitoring, enabling real-time data collection, analysis, and automation of environmental control systems [2].

In this chapter, we explore the application of WSNs in monitoring greenhouse environments from a global perspective, with a specific focus on Asia and India. We begin by discussing the fundamental concepts and architecture of WSNs in the context of greenhouse monitoring. The key components of a greenhouse WSN, including sensor nodes, communication protocols, and data management systems, are examined in detail. We then highlight the significant benefits of deploying WSNs in greenhouses, such as improved resource efficiency, reduced labor costs, and optimized crop growth.

To illustrate the practical implementation of WSNs in greenhouse environments, we present case studies from various regions worldwide. These case studies showcase successful deployments of WSNs in greenhouses, demonstrating their ability to enhance crop yield, quality, and sustainability. We also discuss the challenges and future directions for WSN deployment in greenhouses, addressing issues such as scalability, energy efficiency, and data security.

Throughout the chapter, we emphasize the crucial role of WSNs in advancing protected cultivation practices and contributing to the development of smart agriculture systems. By leveraging the power of WSNs, greenhouse growers can make informed decisions based on real-time data, optimize resource utilization, and minimize environmental impact. The adoption of WSNs in greenhouse cultivation has the potential to revolutionize the agriculture industry, promoting sustainable and profitable farming practices worldwide.

2. Wireless Sensor Networks: Fundamentals and Architecture

Wireless sensor networks (WSNs) consist of spatially distributed autonomous sensors that collaborate to monitor and collect data from the environment [3]. In the context of greenhouse monitoring, WSNs play a crucial role in providing real-time information about various environmental parameters that influence crop growth and development. This section delves into the fundamental concepts and architecture of WSNs, laying the foundation for understanding their application in greenhouse environments.

2.1 Sensor Nodes

Sensor nodes are the basic building blocks of a WSN. These small, low-power devices are equipped with sensors, microcontrollers, and wireless communication capabilities [4]. In a greenhouse WSN, sensor nodes are strategically placed to measure critical environmental parameters such as temperature, humidity, light intensity, and CO2 levels. The sensors convert physical phenomena into electrical signals, which are then processed by the microcontroller and transmitted wirelessly to a central gateway or base station.

Table 1: Common sensors used in greenhouse WSNs

Sensor Type	Measurement Parameter	Typical Range	Accuracy
Temperature	Air temperature	-40°C to 125°C	±0.5°C
Humidity	Relative humidity	0% to 100%	±2%
Light	Photosynthetically active radiation (PAR)	0 to 2500 μmol/m²/s	±5%
CO2	Carbon dioxide concentration	0 to 5000 ppm	±50 ppm

The selection of sensor nodes for a greenhouse WSN depends on factors such as the size of the greenhouse, the crop type, and the desired level of monitoring granularity. Sensor nodes can be powered by batteries, solar panels, or a combination of both, ensuring continuous operation and minimizing maintenance requirements.

2.2 Communication Protocols

Efficient and reliable communication between sensor nodes and the central gateway is essential for the successful operation of a greenhouse WSN. Several wireless communication protocols have been developed specifically for low-power, resource-constrained sensor networks [5]. These protocols aim to minimize energy consumption, reduce data transmission overhead, and ensure robust communication in challenging environments.

Table 2: Comparison of wireless communication protocols for greenhouse WSNs

Protocol	Frequency Band	Data Rate	Range	Power Consumption
ZigBee	2.4 GHz, 868/915 MHz	250 kbps	10-100 m	Low
LoRaWAN	868/915 MHz	0.3-50 kbps	2-15 km	Very Low
Wi-Fi	2.4 GHz, 5 GHz	11-54 Mbps	50-100 m	High
Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE)	2.4 GHz	1 Mbps	10-30 m	Very Low

The choice of communication protocol depends on factors such as the size of the greenhouse, the required data transmission range, and the power constraints of the sensor nodes. For example, ZigBee and LoRaWAN are well-suited for large-scale greenhouse deployments due to their low power consumption and long-range capabilities, while Wi-Fi and Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) are more suitable for smaller greenhouses or localized monitoring applications.

2.3 Data Management Systems

The data collected by sensor nodes in a greenhouse WSN needs to be efficiently stored, processed, and analyzed to derive meaningful insights and support decision-making. Data management systems play a crucial role in handling the large volumes of data generated by the WSN and providing user-friendly interfaces for data visualization and interpretation.

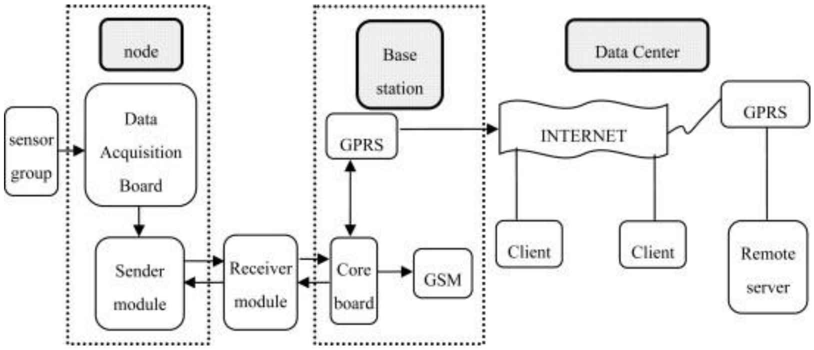


Figure 1: Architecture of a typical greenhouse WSN data management system

Key components of a greenhouse WSN data management system include:

1. **Data acquisition:** Collecting data from sensor nodes via the central gateway or base station.
2. **Data storage**: Storing the collected data in a database, either locally or in the cloud.
3. **Data processing:** Applying algorithms and machine learning techniques to analyze the data and extract relevant information.
4. **Data visualization:** Presenting the analyzed data through user-friendly interfaces, such as web-based dashboards or mobile applications.
5. **Automation and control:** Integrating the data management system with greenhouse control systems to enable automated adjustments of environmental parameters based on real-time data.

3. Benefits of WSNs in Greenhouse Monitoring

The deployment of wireless sensor networks (WSNs) in greenhouse environments offers numerous benefits that contribute to improved crop productivity, resource efficiency, and overall sustainability. This section explores the key advantages of using WSNs for monitoring greenhouse environments, highlighting their potential to revolutionize protected cultivation practices.

3.1 Real-time Monitoring and Early Warning Systems

One of the primary benefits of WSNs in greenhouse monitoring is the ability to provide real-time data on critical environmental parameters. By continuously collecting and transmitting data from strategically placed sensor nodes, WSNs enable growers to maintain optimal growing conditions for their crops [6]. Real-time monitoring allows for the early detection of any deviations from ideal conditions, such as temperature fluctuations, humidity imbalances, or nutrient deficiencies.

Table 3: Benefits of real-time monitoring in greenhouse environments

Benefit	**Description**
Early detection of issues	Real-time monitoring enables the identification of potential problems, such as pest infestations or equipment malfunctions, before they cause significant damage to crops.
Timely interventions	With real-time data, growers can make informed decisions and take immediate actions to address issues, minimizing crop losses and maintaining optimal growing conditions.
Improved crop quality	Continuous monitoring of environmental parameters ensures that crops receive the ideal conditions for growth and development, resulting in higher quality produce.
Reduced labor costs	Automated monitoring systems reduce the need for manual inspections, allowing growers to allocate labor resources more efficiently.

Moreover, WSNs can be configured to trigger early warning systems when specific thresholds are breached. For example, if the temperature in a greenhouse exceeds a predefined limit, the WSN can send an alert to the grower's smartphone or email, enabling prompt corrective measures. This proactive approach to greenhouse management helps prevent crop damage, minimize losses, and ensure consistent product quality.

3.2 Resource Optimization and Sustainability

WSNs play a crucial role in optimizing resource utilization in greenhouse environments, contributing to increased sustainability and cost-effectiveness. By providing accurate and real-time data on environmental parameters, WSNs enable growers to make data-driven decisions regarding irrigation, fertilization, and climate control [7].

By optimizing resource utilization, WSNs contribute to the development of sustainable and eco-friendly greenhouse practices. Precision irrigation and fertilization techniques not only reduce input costs but also minimize the environmental impact of greenhouse operations by preventing water and nutrient waste. Additionally, intelligent climate control systems powered by WSN data help reduce energy consumption and associated greenhouse gas emissions, promoting a more sustainable approach to protected cultivation.

Table 4: Resource optimization benefits of WSNs in greenhouses

Resource	Optimization Benefit
Water	Precision irrigation based on real-time soil moisture data, reducing water waste and improving water use efficiency.
Fertilizer	Targeted nutrient application based on crop requirements and growth stages, minimizing fertilizer runoff and environmental impact.
Energy	Intelligent climate control systems that adjust heating, cooling, and ventilation based on real-time data, reducing energy consumption and costs.
Labor	Automated monitoring and control systems that reduce the need for manual interventions, allowing for more efficient allocation of labor resources.

3.3 Improved Crop Yield and Quality

The implementation of WSNs in greenhouse environments has a direct impact on crop yield and quality. By maintaining optimal growing conditions through real-time monitoring and automated control systems, WSNs create an ideal environment for crop development [8]. This results in healthier plants, reduced susceptibility to pests and diseases, and ultimately, higher yields of superior quality produce.

Table 5: Impact of WSNs on crop yield and quality

Crop Parameter	WSN Benefit
Growth rate	Optimal environmental conditions maintained by WSNs promote faster and more uniform crop growth.
Pest and disease resistance	Early detection of pest infestations or disease outbreaks through WSN monitoring enables timely interventions, reducing crop damage and losses.
Nutrient uptake	Precision fertilization based on WSN data ensures that crops receive the right nutrients at the right time, enhancing nutrient uptake efficiency and overall plant health.
Fruit/flower quality	Consistent environmental control facilitated by WSNs leads to the production of high-quality fruits, flowers, or vegetables with desired attributes such as size, color, and flavor.

The positive impact of WSNs on crop yield and quality translates into significant economic benefits for greenhouse growers. Increased productivity and improved product quality lead to higher market value and profitability, while reduced crop losses and optimized resource utilization contribute to overall cost savings. By leveraging the power of WSNs, greenhouse growers can achieve sustainable intensification, meeting the growing demand for fresh produce while minimizing the environmental footprint of their operations.

4. Case Studies: Successful WSN Implementations in Greenhouses

To illustrate the practical application and benefits of wireless sensor networks (WSNs) in greenhouse environments, this section presents a series of case studies from different regions worldwide. These case studies showcase successful implementations of WSNs in greenhouses, highlighting their impact on crop productivity, resource efficiency, and overall sustainability. By examining real-world examples, we can gain valuable insights into the potential of WSNs to transform protected cultivation practices and contribute to the development of smart agriculture systems.

4.1 Case Study 1: Tomato Greenhouse in the Netherlands

The Netherlands is a global leader in greenhouse horticulture, renowned for its advanced technology and innovative growing practices. In this case study, we explore the implementation of a WSN in a tomato greenhouse located in the western part of the country [9].

Table 6: Key features of the Dutch tomato greenhouse WSN

Feature	Description
Greenhouse size	5 hectares
Crop	Tomatoes (*Solanum lycopersicum*)
Sensor types	Temperature, humidity, light intensity, CO2, and soil moisture
Communication protocol	ZigBee
Data management system	Custom-developed web-based platform

The WSN deployed in the Dutch tomato greenhouse consists of 150 sensor nodes distributed evenly throughout the facility. The sensor nodes collect data on critical environmental parameters every 5 minutes and transmit the data to a central gateway using the ZigBee communication protocol. The collected data is then processed and analyzed by a custom-developed web-based platform, which provides the grower with real-time insights into the greenhouse environment.

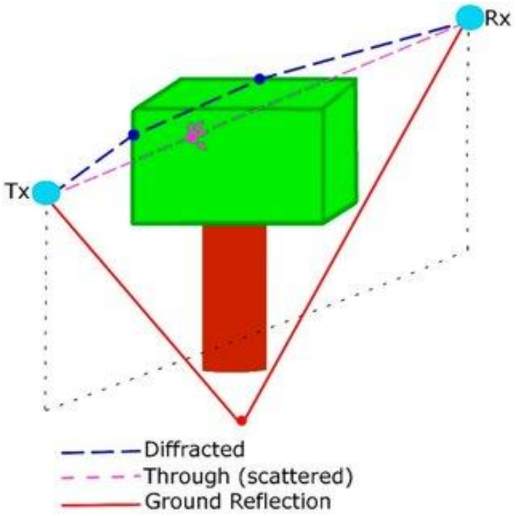


Figure 2: Schematic representation of the Dutch tomato greenhouse WSN

The implementation of the WSN in the Dutch tomato greenhouse has led to significant improvements in crop productivity and resource efficiency. By optimizing climate control, irrigation, and fertilization based on real-time data, the grower has achieved a 15% increase in tomato yield and a 20% reduction in water and energy consumption. Additionally, the early detection of potential issues through WSN monitoring has enabled timely interventions, minimizing crop losses and ensuring consistent product quality.

4.2 Case Study 2: Orchid Greenhouse in Thailand

Thailand is a major producer and exporter of orchids, with a thriving greenhouse industry dedicated to the cultivation of these highly valued ornamental plants. This case study focuses on the implementation of a WSN in an orchid greenhouse located in the Ratchaburi province of Thailand [10].

The WSN deployed in the Thai orchid greenhouse consists of 80 sensor nodes strategically placed to monitor the microclimate conditions crucial for orchid growth and development. The sensor nodes transmit data to a central gateway using the LoRaWAN communication protocol, which enables long-range, low-power communication in the greenhouse environment. The collected data is stored and processed in a cloud-based platform, accessible through a user-friendly mobile application.

Table 7: Key features of the Thai orchid greenhouse WSN

Feature	**Description**
Greenhouse size	2 hectares
Crop	Orchids (*Dendrobium* spp.)
Sensor types	Temperature, humidity, light intensity, and soil moisture
Communication protocol	LoRaWAN
Data management system	Cloud-based platform with mobile application

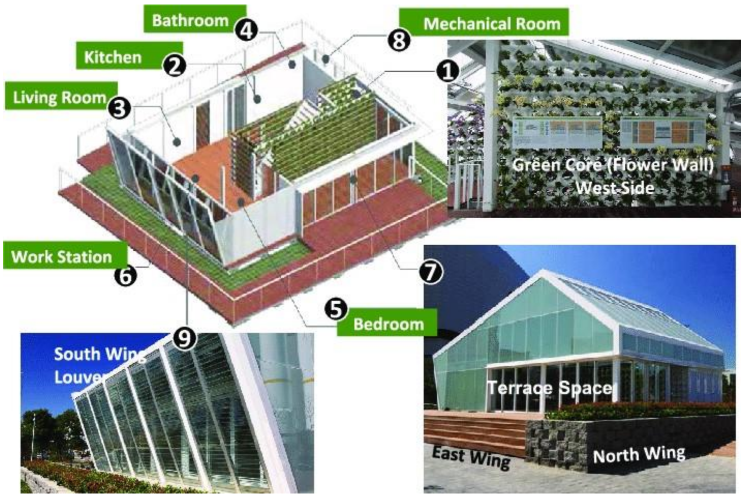


Figure 3: Architecture of the Thai orchid greenhouse WSN

The implementation of the WSN in the Thai orchid greenhouse has resulted in significant improvements in orchid quality and production efficiency. By maintaining optimal temperature, humidity, and light conditions based on real-time data, the grower has achieved a 20% increase in orchid yield and a 25% reduction in crop cycle time. The WSN-enabled precision irrigation system has also led to a 30% reduction in water consumption, contributing to the overall sustainability of the greenhouse operation.

4.3 Case Study 3: Rose Greenhouse in India

India has a rapidly growing greenhouse industry, with an increasing focus on the cultivation of high-value crops such as roses. This case study examines the implementation of a WSN in a rose greenhouse located in the Pune district of Maharashtra, India [11].

Table 8: Key features of the Indian rose greenhouse WSN

Feature	**Description**
Greenhouse size	1 hectare
Crop	Roses (*Rosa* spp.)
Sensor types	Temperature, humidity, light intensity, and soil moisture
Communication protocol	Wi-Fi
Data management system	Local server with web-based interface

The WSN deployed in the Indian rose greenhouse consists of 50 sensor nodes distributed throughout the facility. The sensor nodes communicate with a central gateway using Wi-Fi, which is suitable for the relatively small size of the greenhouse. The collected data is stored and processed on a local server, accessible through a web-based interface for real-time monitoring and decision-making.

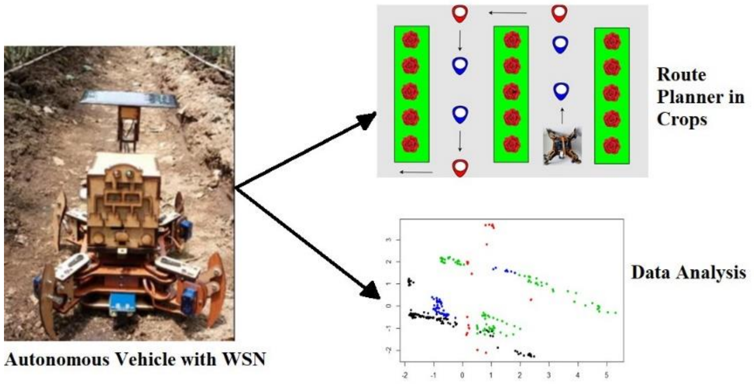


Figure 4: Dashboard of the Indian rose greenhouse WSN web-based interface

The implementation of the WSN in the Indian rose greenhouse has led to significant improvements in rose quality and resource efficiency. By optimizing environmental conditions based on real-time data, the grower has achieved a 15% increase in rose yield and a 20% improvement in flower quality, as measured by stem length and bud size. The WSN-enabled precision irrigation and fertigation system has also resulted in a 25% reduction in water and fertilizer consumption, promoting sustainable growing practices.

These case studies demonstrate the tangible benefits of implementing WSNs in greenhouse environments across different regions and crop types. By providing real-time monitoring, data-driven decision support, and automated control, WSNs have the potential to revolutionize protected cultivation practices, leading to increased productivity, resource efficiency, and sustainability.

5. Challenges and Future Directions

While wireless sensor networks (WSNs) offer numerous benefits for monitoring greenhouse environments, there are also challenges that need to be addressed to ensure their effective deployment and long-term success. This section explores the key challenges associated with implementing WSNs in greenhouses and discusses future directions for research and development in this field.

5.1 Scalability and Network Density

One of the primary challenges in deploying WSNs in large-scale greenhouse operations is ensuring scalability and optimal network density. As the size of the greenhouse increases, the number of sensor nodes required to provide comprehensive coverage also grows [12]. This can lead to issues such as network congestion, reduced battery life, and increased costs.

Table 9: Factors affecting WSN scalability in greenhouses

Factor	Description
Greenhouse size	Larger greenhouses require more sensor nodes to ensure adequate coverage, increasing network complexity and costs.
Crop type and layout	Different crops and planting layouts may require specific sensor placement and density to capture relevant data.

Data transmission frequency	Higher data transmission frequencies can increase network traffic and energy consumption, affecting scalability.
Communication range	Limited communication range of some protocols may require the deployment of additional gateways or repeaters in large greenhouses.

To address scalability challenges, researchers are exploring techniques such as adaptive network topologies, dynamic sensor node clustering, and energy-efficient routing protocols [13]. These approaches aim to optimize network performance, reduce energy consumption, and ensure reliable data collection in large-scale greenhouse deployments.

5.2 Energy Efficiency and Battery Life

Energy efficiency is a critical concern in WSN deployments, particularly in remote or off-grid greenhouse locations. Sensor nodes rely on batteries or energy harvesting systems to power their operations, and the limited energy supply can impact the long-term sustainability and maintenance requirements of the network [14].

Table 10: Strategies for improving energy efficiency in greenhouse WSNs

Strategy	**Description**
Low-power hardware	Selecting sensor nodes and communication modules with low power consumption to extend battery life.
Energy-efficient protocols	Implementing communication protocols designed for low-power operation, such as ZigBee or LoRaWAN.
Duty cycling	Configuring sensor nodes to enter sleep mode when not actively collecting or transmitting data, conserving energy.
Energy harvesting	Integrating solar panels or other energy harvesting technologies to supplement or replace battery power.

Researchers are also investigating advanced energy management techniques, such as adaptive sampling and data compression, to further optimize energy efficiency in greenhouse WSNs [15]. By reducing the energy consumption of sensor nodes and extending battery life, these strategies contribute to the long-term sustainability and cost-effectiveness of WSN deployments.

5.3 Data Security and Privacy

As WSNs collect and transmit sensitive data related to greenhouse operations, ensuring data security and privacy becomes paramount. Unauthorized access to greenhouse data can lead to potential misuse, tampering, or even industrial espionage [16].

To address data security and privacy concerns, researchers are focusing on developing robust security frameworks for greenhouse WSNs. This includes the implementation of advanced encryption algorithms, secure communication protocols, and access control mechanisms [17]. Additionally, blockchain technology is being explored as a potential solution for ensuring data integrity and traceability in greenhouse WSN deployments [18].

Table 11: Security threats and countermeasures in greenhouse WSNs

Threat	**Description**	**Countermeasure**
Eavesdropping	Intercepting wireless communication to access sensitive data	Data encryption and secure communication protocols
Node tampering	Physical tampering of sensor nodes to manipulate data or disrupt network operations	Tamper-resistant hardware and intrusion detection systems
Denial of service (DoS) attacks	Overwhelming the network with traffic to disrupt data collection and transmission	Firewalls, traffic monitoring, and rate limiting
Unauthorized access	Gaining unauthorized access to the data management system or control interfaces	Strong authentication mechanisms and access control policies

5.4 Integration with Existing Systems

Integrating WSNs with existing greenhouse management systems and control equipment can pose challenges due to compatibility issues and proprietary protocols. Greenhouses often rely on a variety of legacy systems for climate control, irrigation, and fertigation, which may not seamlessly integrate with modern WSN technologies [19].

To overcome integration challenges, researchers and industry stakeholders are working towards the development of standardized protocols and interfaces for greenhouse WSNs [20]. The adoption of open standards and interoperable solutions will facilitate the seamless integration of WSNs with existing greenhouse infrastructure, enabling growers to leverage the benefits of real-time monitoring and control without the need for extensive system modifications.

5.5 Cost-Benefit Analysis and Adoption Barriers

Despite the numerous benefits of WSNs in greenhouse monitoring, the adoption of these technologies is often hindered by cost considerations and the perceived complexity of implementation. Growers may be hesitant to invest in WSN solutions due to the initial installation costs and the uncertainty regarding the return on investment (ROI) [21].

Table 12: Approaches for integrating WSNs with existing greenhouse systems

Approach	Description
Middleware platforms	Developing middleware solutions that bridge the gap between WSNs and existing systems, enabling data exchange and interoperability.
Standardized protocols	Adopting standardized communication protocols, such as MQTT or OPC-UA, to facilitate integration between WSNs and greenhouse control systems.
Application programming interfaces (APIs)	Creating APIs that allow WSN data to be accessed and utilized by existing greenhouse management software.
Retrofit solutions	Developing retrofit solutions that enable the integration of WSN components with legacy equipment, minimizing the need for complete system overhauls.

Table 13: Factors influencing the adoption of WSNs in greenhouses

Factor	Description
Initial investment costs	The cost of purchasing and installing WSN hardware, software, and infrastructure.
Maintenance and replacement costs	The ongoing costs associated with maintaining and replacing sensor nodes, batteries, and other components.
Technical expertise	The level of technical knowledge required to install, configure, and operate WSN systems.
Perceived benefits	The grower's understanding and appreciation of the potential benefits of WSNs in terms of productivity, resource efficiency, and sustainability.

To address adoption barriers, researchers and industry partners are focusing on developing cost-effective WSN solutions that demonstrate clear ROI for greenhouse growers. This involves creating user-friendly interfaces, providing comprehensive support and training, and showcasing successful case studies that highlight the tangible benefits of WSN adoption [22].

By addressing cost concerns, simplifying deployment processes, and demonstrating the tangible benefits of WSNs, researchers and industry stakeholders can accelerate the adoption of these technologies in the greenhouse sector. As more growers recognize the potential of WSNs to improve productivity, resource efficiency, and sustainability, the widespread implementation of these systems will contribute to the development of smart and resilient greenhouse operations worldwide.

Table 14: Strategies for promoting WSN adoption in greenhouses

Strategy	**Description**
Cost-benefit analysis tools	Developing tools that help growers assess the potential ROI of WSN solutions based on their specific greenhouse characteristics and requirements.
Modular and scalable solutions	Offering modular and scalable WSN solutions that allow growers to start small and expand their systems as needed, reducing upfront costs.
Demonstration projects	Collaborating with leading growers and research institutions to establish demonstration projects that showcase the benefits of WSNs in real-world greenhouse environments.
Education and training	Providing educational resources, workshops, and training programs to help growers understand the value of WSNs and develop the necessary skills for successful implementation.

6. Conclusion

Wireless sensor networks (WSNs) have emerged as a transformative technology for monitoring greenhouse environments, offering numerous benefits for growers, researchers, and the wider agriculture industry. By providing real-time data on critical environmental parameters, WSNs enable data-driven decision-making, optimize resource utilization, and enhance crop productivity and quality.

This chapter has explored the application of WSNs in greenhouse monitoring from a global perspective, with a specific focus on Asia and India. We have discussed the fundamental concepts and architecture of WSNs, including sensor nodes, communication protocols, and data management systems. The key benefits of deploying WSNs in greenhouses, such as real-time monitoring, resource optimization, and improved crop yield and quality, have been highlighted through case studies from the Netherlands, Thailand, and India.

However, the adoption of WSNs in greenhouse environments is not without challenges. Issues such as scalability, energy efficiency, data security, and integration with existing systems need to be addressed to ensure the long-term success and sustainability of WSN deployments. Researchers and industry stakeholders are actively working on developing solutions to overcome these challenges, focusing on advanced energy management techniques, robust security frameworks, and standardized protocols for seamless integration.

Table 15: Key takeaways from the chapter

Aspect	**Key Points**
Benefits of WSNs in greenhouses	Real-time monitoring, resource optimization, improved crop yield and quality, early warning systems, and sustainable growing practices.
Successful case studies	Tomato greenhouse in the Netherlands, orchid greenhouse in Thailand, and rose greenhouse in India demonstrating the tangible benefits of WSN deployment.
Challenges and future directions	Scalability, energy efficiency, data security, integration with existing systems, and cost-benefit analysis as key challenges to be addressed through research and development.
Strategies for promoting adoption	Developing cost-effective solutions, providing education and training, establishing demonstration projects, and offering modular and scalable systems to overcome adoption barriers.

As the greenhouse industry continues to evolve and adapt to the challenges of sustainable food production, the role of WSNs in enabling smart and resilient growing practices will become increasingly crucial. By harnessing the power of real-time data and intelligent automation, growers can optimize their operations, reduce environmental impact, and meet the growing demand for fresh, high-quality produce.

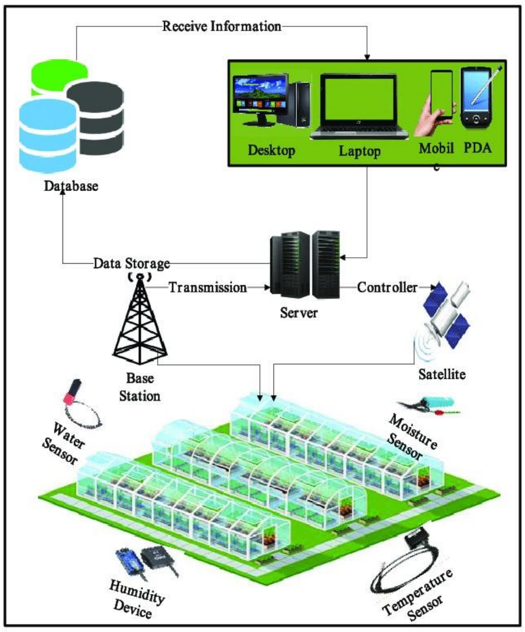


Figure 5: The future of greenhouse monitoring with WSNs

References

[1] Abbasi, A. Z., Islam, N., & Shaikh, Z. A. (2014). A review of wireless sensors and networks' applications in agriculture. Computer Standards & Interfaces, 36(2), 263-270. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csi.2011.03.004

[2] Ojha, T., Misra, S., & Raghuwanshi, N. S. (2015). Wireless sensor networks for agriculture: The state-of-the-art in practice and future challenges. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 118, 66-84. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2015.08.011

[3] Yick, J., Mukherjee, B., & Ghosal, D. (2008). Wireless sensor network survey. Computer Networks, 52(12), 2292-2330. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.comnet.2008.04.002

[4] Akyildiz, I. F., Su, W., Sankarasubramaniam, Y., & Cayirci, E. (2002). Wireless sensor networks: a survey. Computer Networks, 38(4), 393-422. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1389-1286(01)00302-4

[5] Wang, N., Zhang, N., & Wang, M. (2006). Wireless sensors in agriculture and food industry—Recent development and future perspective. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 50(1), 1-14. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2005.09.003

[6] Ruiz-Garcia, L., Lunadei, L., Barreiro, P., & Robla, J. I. (2009). A review of wireless sensor technologies and applications in agriculture and food industry: state of the art and current trends. Sensors, 9(6), 4728-4750. https://doi.org/10.3390/s90604728

[7] Pahuja, R., Verma, H. K., & Uddin, M. (2013). A wireless sensor network for greenhouse climate control. IEEE Pervasive Computing, 12(2), 49-58. https://doi.org/10.1109/MPRV.2013.26

[8] Mancuso, M., & Bustaffa, F. (2006). A wireless sensors network for monitoring environmental variables in a tomato greenhouse. IEEE International Workshop on Factory Communication Systems, 107-110. https://doi.org/10.1109/WFCS.2006.1704135

[9] Bontsema, J., van Henten, E. J., Gieling, T. H., & Swinkels, G. L. A. M. (2011). The effect of sensor errors on production and energy consumption in greenhouse horticulture. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 79(1), 63-66. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2011.08.008

[10] Boonchieng, E., Boonchieng, W., & Sribuddee, O. (2018). Smart farm monitoring using Raspberry Pi and Arduino. 2018 International Conference on Digital Arts, Media and Technology (ICDAMT), 62-65. https://doi.org/10.1109/ICDAMT.2018.8376504

[11] Saha, A. K., Saha, J., Ray, R., Sircar, S., Dutta, S., Chattopadhyay, S. P., & Saha, H. N. (2018). IOT-based drone for improvement of crop quality in agricultural field. 2018 IEEE 8th Annual Computing and Communication Workshop and Conference (CCWC), 612-615. https://doi.org/10.1109/CCWC.2018.8301662

[12] Aqeel-ur-Rehman, Abbasi, A. Z., Islam, N., & Shaikh, Z. A. (2014). A review of wireless sensors and networks' applications in agriculture. Computer Standards & Interfaces, 36(2), 263-270. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csi.2011.03.004

[13] Jawad, H. M., Nordin, R., Gharghan, S. K., Jawad, A. M., & Ismail, M. (2017). Energy-efficient wireless sensor networks for precision agriculture: A review. Sensors, 17(8), 1781. https://doi.org/10.3390/s17081781

[14] Rault, T., Bouabdallah, A., & Challal, Y. (2014). Energy efficiency in wireless sensor networks: A top-down survey. Computer Networks, 67, 104-122. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.comnet.2014.03.027

[15] Anastasi, G., Conti, M., Di Francesco, M., & Passarella, A. (2009). Energy conservation in wireless sensor networks: A survey. Ad Hoc Networks, 7(3), 537-568. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.adhoc.2008.06.003

[16] Alcaraz, C., Lopez, J., Roman, R., & Chen, H. H. (2016). Selecting key management schemes for WSN applications. Computers & Security, 56, 28-42. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cose.2015.10.001

[17] Nguyen, K. T., Laurent, M., & Oualha, N. (2015). Survey on secure communication protocols for the Internet of Things. Ad Hoc Networks, 32, 17-31.https://doi.org/10.1016/j.adhoc.2015.01.006

[18] Feng, H., Wang, X., Duan, Y., Zhang, J., & Zhang, X. (2020). Applying blockchain technology to improve agri-food traceability: A review of development methods, benefits and challenges. Journal of Cleaner Production, 260, 121031. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2020.121031

[19] Tzounis, A., Katsoulas, N., Bartzanas, T., & Kittas, C. (2017). Internet of Things in agriculture, recent advances and future challenges. Biosystems Engineering, 164, 31-48. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biosystemseng.2017.09.007

[20] Brewster, C., Roussaki, I., Kalatzis, N., Doolin, K., & Ellis, K. (2017). IoT in Agriculture: Designing a Europe-Wide Large-Scale Pilot. IEEE Communications Magazine, 55(9), 26-33. https://doi.org/10.1109/MCOM.2017.1600528

[21] Pivoto, D., Waquil, P. D., Talamini, E., Finocchio, C. P. S., Dalla Corte, V. F., & de Vargas Mores, G. (2018). Scientific development of smart farming technologies and their application in Brazil. Information Processing in Agriculture, 5(1), 21-32. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.inpa.2017.12.002

[22] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big Data in Smart Farming – A review. Agricultural Systems, 153, 69-80. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agsy.2017.01.023

CHAPTER - 5

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Remote Sensing and GIS for Crop Health Monitoring and Management

[1]Pranav Raj, [2]Aditya Prakash and [3]Purwa Sinha

[1]*M.Sc. Research scholar (Soil Science and agricultural chemistry), Sam Higginbottom University of Agriculture technology and sciences*

[2]*International research trainee on Turf grass management, Department of Agriculture, SHUATS.*

[3]*Junior Software EngineerDepartment of Electronics and Communication Engineering, BIT, Mesra*

Corresponding Author
Pranav Raj
pranav.40raj@gmail.com

Abstract

Remote sensing and geographic information systems (GIS) have emerged as powerful tools for monitoring and managing crop health in recent years. By providing detailed spatial and temporal data on vegetation, soil, weather and other environmental factors, these technologies enable farmers, researchers and policymakers to assess crop conditions, detect problems early, and take corrective actions to maximize productivity and sustainability. This chapter reviews the state-of-the-art in remote sensing and GIS applications for crop health, with a focus on global trends and developments in Asia and India. It covers the use of multispectral, hyperspectral and thermal sensors on satellites, drones and ground-based platforms to measure plant vigor, water stress, nutrient deficiencies, disease, and pest infestations. The integration of remote sensing data with crop models, precision agriculture systems, and mobile apps for site-specific management is also discussed. Case studies are presented on the use of remote sensing and GIS for major crops such as rice, wheat, maize, cotton, sugarcane, and horticultural crops. The chapter concludes with a discussion of challenges

and future directions, including the need for higher resolution data, improved algorithms, cloud computing, capacity building and policies to promote the adoption of these technologies for sustainable crop production.

Keywords: Remote Sensing, GIS, Crop Health, Precision Agriculture, Sustainable Agriculture

The world's population is expected to reach 9.7 billion by 2050, putting immense pressure on the agricultural sector to increase food production [1]. At the same time, climate change, land degradation, water scarcity and other environmental stresses are making it harder to sustain crop yields and quality [2]. In this context, there is an urgent need for efficient and effective methods to monitor crop health and manage agricultural resources. Remote sensing and GIS have emerged as key technologies to address this challenge by providing timely and accurate information on crop conditions over large areas [3].

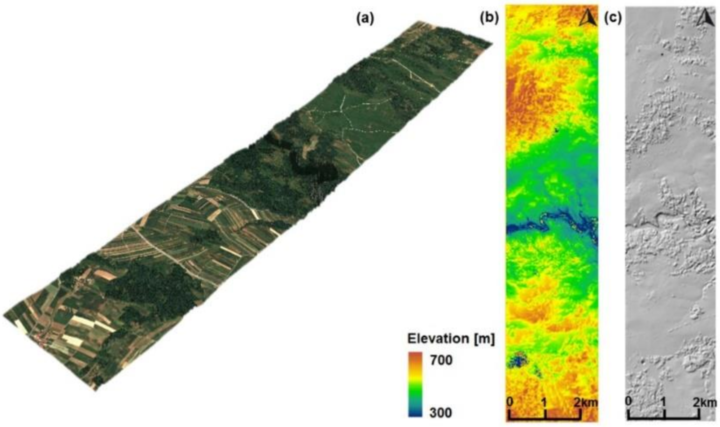


Figure 1. Electromagnetic spectrum and common remote sensing systems used in agriculture

Remote sensing involves the acquisition of data about an object or phenomenon from a distance, typically using sensors on satellites, aircraft or drones [4]. These sensors measure the electromagnetic radiation reflected or emitted by the Earth's surface in different wavelengths, such as visible, near-infrared, shortwave-infrared and thermal bands. By analyzing these spectral signatures, it is possible to derive various biophysical parameters related to crop health, such as leaf area index (LAI), chlorophyll content, biomass, evapotranspiration and yield [5].

GIS, on the other hand, is a computer-based system for capturing, storing, analyzing and displaying spatial data [6]. It allows the integration of remote sensing data with other geospatial information, such as soil maps, weather data, crop management records and socioeconomic variables. GIS also enables the visualization and modeling of spatial patterns and relationships, which can help in understanding the factors affecting crop health and guiding site-specific interventions [7].

The use of remote sensing and GIS in agriculture has grown rapidly in recent decades, driven by advances in sensor technology, computing power, data analytics and internet connectivity [8]. Today, these tools are being used for a wide range of applications, from crop type mapping and yield estimation to precision irrigation and pest management [9]. They are also playing a crucial role in supporting sustainable intensification, climate resilience, and food security goals at local to global scales [10].

2. Remote Sensing Platforms and Sensors

Remote sensing data for crop health monitoring can be obtained from various platforms, including satellites, aircraft, drones and ground-based systems [11]. Each platform has its own strengths and limitations in terms of spatial resolution, temporal frequency, spectral range, cost and accessibility [12]. Table 1 compares the key features of different remote sensing platforms used in agriculture.

Satellites are the most widely used platform for large-scale crop monitoring due to their ability to cover vast areas repeatedly and consistently [13]. Some of the popular satellites for agriculture include Landsat, Sentinel, MODIS, AVHRR and SPOT [14]. These satellites carry multispectral sensors that measure reflected radiation in discrete bands, typically in the visible (400-700 nm), near-infrared (700-1100 nm) and shortwave-infrared (1100-2500 nm) regions [15]. The spatial resolution of satellite images ranges from 10-60 m for

Landsat and Sentinel to 250-1000 m for MODIS and AVHRR [16]. The revisit time of these satellites varies from 1-2 days for MODIS to 5-16 days for Landsat [17].

Table 1. Comparison of remote sensing platforms used in agriculture

Platform	Spatial resolution	Temporal resolution	Spectral range	Cost	Examples
Satellites	0.3-1000 m	1-16 days	Visible to microwave	High	Landsat, Sentinel, MODIS
Aircraft	0.1-10 m	On-demand	Visible to thermal	Medium	Manned and unmanned planes
Drones	1-100 cm	On-demand	Visible to thermal	Low	Multirotor and fixed-wing UAVs
Ground	1-10 cm	Continuous	Visible to thermal	Low	Handheld sensors, proximal scanners

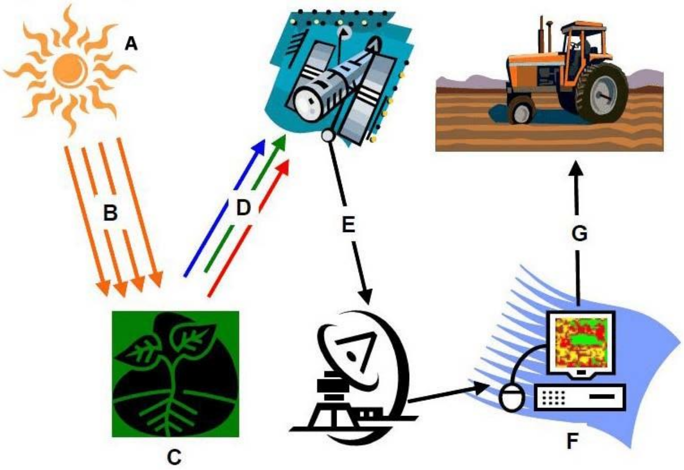


Figure 2. Workflow of remote sensing and GIS applications in crop monitoring

In addition to multispectral sensors, some satellites also carry hyperspectral sensors that measure reflected radiation in hundreds of narrow contiguous bands, providing a more detailed spectral profile of vegetation [18]. Examples of hyperspectral satellites include EO-1 Hyperion, PRISMA and EnMAP [19]. These sensors have a high spectral resolution (10-20 nm) but a relatively coarse spatial resolution (30-60 m) and a low temporal resolution (16-30 days) [20]. Hyperspectral data has shown potential for early detection of plant stress, nutrient deficiencies and diseases [21].

Thermal sensors on satellites measure the emitted radiation from the Earth's surface in the thermal infrared region (8-14 μm), which is related to the surface temperature [22]. Thermal data can be used to estimate evapotranspiration, water stress and irrigation requirements of crops [23]. Examples of thermal satellites include Landsat, ASTER and ECOSTRESS [24]. The spatial resolution of thermal images is generally lower than that of optical images, ranging from 60-100 m for Landsat to 1 km for MODIS [25].

Aircraft-based remote sensing offers higher spatial and temporal resolution than satellites, but at a higher cost and lower coverage [26]. Manned aircraft equipped with multispectral, hyperspectral or thermal sensors can provide images with a spatial resolution of 0.1-10 m and a revisit time of a few days to weeks [27]. Unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) or drones have become increasingly popular for crop monitoring due to their low cost, flexibility and ease of use [28]. UAVs can carry various sensors and fly at low altitudes (<120 m) to capture high-resolution images (1-100 cm) on demand [29]. However, the battery life and payload capacity of UAVs limit their coverage to a few hundred hectares per flight [30].

Ground-based sensors provide the highest spatial and temporal resolution for crop monitoring, but are limited to small areas or individual plants [31]. Handheld devices such as chlorophyll meters, SPAD meters and fluorometers can measure leaf-level parameters related to plant health [32]. Proximal sensors mounted on tractors, sprayers or irrigation systems can scan crops from close range and provide real-time data for precision agriculture applications [33]. Some examples of proximal sensors include GreenSeeker, CropCircle and OptRx [34].

3. Vegetation Indices and Crop Parameters

Remote sensing data is usually processed to derive various vegetation indices (VIs) and crop parameters that are related to plant health and productivity [35]. VIs are mathematical combinations of two or more spectral bands that enhance the contrast between vegetation and background features [36]. Some of the commonly used VIs for crop monitoring are listed in Table 2.

Table 2. Commonly used vegetation indices for crop monitoring

Index	**Formula**	**Description**
NDVI	(NIR - Red) / (NIR + Red)	Normalized Difference Vegetation Index, indicates green biomass and leaf area
EVI	2.5 * (NIR - Red) / (NIR + 6*Red* - *7.5*Blue + 1)	Enhanced Vegetation Index, reduces soil background and atmospheric effects
SAVI	(NIR - Red) / (NIR + Red + L) * (1 + L), L=0.5	Soil Adjusted Vegetation Index, minimizes soil brightness influences
GNDVI	(NIR - Green) / (NIR + Green)	Green Normalized Difference Vegetation Index, sensitive to chlorophyll content
NDRE	(NIR – Red Edge) / (NIR + Red Edge)	Normalized Difference Red Edge Index, indicates leaf nitrogen status
NDWI	(NIR - SWIR) / (NIR + SWIR)	Normalized Difference Water Index, reflects leaf water content
CWSI	(T canopy – T wet) / (T dry > - T wet)	Crop Water Stress Index, estimates plant water status from thermal data

The most widely used VI is the Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI), which is based on the difference in reflectance between the red and near-infrared bands [37]. NDVI ranges from -1 to 1, with higher values indicating more green vegetation cover and biomass [38]. NDVI has been used to monitor crop growth, yield, water stress, nutrient deficiencies and pest/disease damage [39]. However, NDVI is sensitive to soil background effects and can saturate at high biomass levels [40].

To overcome some of the limitations of NDVI, other VIs have been developed that use additional spectral bands or incorporate soil adjustment factors [41]. For example, the Enhanced Vegetation Index (EVI) includes the blue band to reduce atmospheric effects and a soil adjustment factor to minimize soil brightness influences [42]. The Green Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (GNDVI) is more sensitive to chlorophyll content than NDVI and can detect early signs of plant stress [43]. The Normalized Difference Red Edge Index (NDRE) uses the red edge band (720-730 nm) to estimate leaf nitrogen status [44].

In addition to VIs, various biophysical crop parameters can be derived from remote sensing data using empirical or physical models [45]. These parameters include leaf area index (LAI), fraction of absorbed photosynthetically active radiation (fAPAR), chlorophyll content, biomass, yield, evapotranspiration and water stress [46]. LAI is a key parameter that represents the total one-sided leaf area per unit ground area and is related to light interception, photosynthesis and productivity [47]. LAI can be estimated from VIs using regression models or inverted from canopy reflectance using radiative transfer models [48].

Chlorophyll content is another important parameter that indicates the photosynthetic capacity and nitrogen status of plants [49]. Chlorophyll can be estimated from hyperspectral data using various methods, such as vegetation indices, red edge position, continuum removal and machine learning [50]. Biomass and yield are critical parameters for crop production and can be estimated from remote sensing data using empirical models based on VIs or LAI, or process-based models that simulate crop growth and development [51].

Evapotranspiration (ET) is a key parameter for water management and can be estimated from thermal data using energy balance models, such as SEBAL, METRIC and ALEXI [52]. These models calculate the latent heat flux from the surface temperature, albedo, vegetation cover and meteorological data [53]. The Crop Water Stress Index (CWSI) is another parameter that can be derived from thermal data to indicate the plant water status and irrigation needs [54].

4. Data Processing and Analysis Techniques

Processing and analyzing remote sensing data for crop health monitoring involves several steps, including pre-processing, feature extraction, classification, modeling and validation [55]. Pre-processing steps are necessary to correct the raw data for geometric, radiometric and atmospheric effects and to convert it into a usable format [56]. Common pre-processing techniques include image registration, orthorectification, radiometric calibration, atmospheric correction and mosaicking [57].

Feature extraction involves deriving useful information from the pre-processed data, such as vegetation indices, texture metrics, principal components and segmented objects [58]. These features can be used as input variables for classification or modeling algorithms [59]. Classification is the process of assigning pixels or objects to predefined classes based on their spectral, spatial or temporal properties [60]. Some of the common classification methods used in crop monitoring are listed in Table 3.

Table 3. Common classification methods used in crop monitoring

Method	**Description**	**Advantages**	**Disadvantages**
Maximum Likelihood	Assumes normal distribution of classes and assigns pixels to the most probable class	Simple and effective for well-separated classes	Sensitive to non-normal distributions and requires large training samples
Support Vector Machines	Finds optimal hyperplane to separate classes in a high-dimensional feature space	Can handle complex and non-linear class boundaries	Computationally intensive and sensitive to parameter settings
Random Forests	Builds an ensemble of decision trees using random subsets of features and samples	Robust to overfitting and can handle high-dimensional data	Tends to overestimate minority classes and may produce biased results
Neural Networks	Learns complex non-linear relationships between input features and output classes using hidden layers	Can adapt to different data types and structures	Requires large training data and may suffer from overfitting and interpretability issues
Object-Based Image Analysis	Groups pixels into homogeneous objects and classifies them based on spectral, spatial and contextual features	Can reduce salt-and-pepper effect and incorporate expert knowledge	Depends on the quality of segmentation and may miss small or fragmented objects

Modeling involves establishing quantitative relationships between remote sensing features and crop parameters using statistical or machine learning methods [61]. Some of the common modeling approaches used in crop monitoring are listed in Table 4.

Validation is an essential step to assess the accuracy and reliability of remote sensing products and models [62]. Validation can be done using independent ground truth data, such as field measurements, yield monitors or farmer surveys [63]. Common validation metrics include overall accuracy, kappa coefficient, root mean square error (RMSE), mean absolute error (MAE) and coefficient of determination (R^2) [64].

Table 4. Common modeling approaches used in crop monitoring

Approach	**Description**	**Advantages**	**Disadvantages**
Regression	Fits a linear or non-linear function between input features and output parameters	Simple and interpretable	May not capture complex relationships and interactions
Partial Least Squares	Projects input features and output parameters onto latent variables that maximize their covariance	Can handle multicollinearity and high-dimensional data	Requires careful selection of the number of latent variables
Kriging	Interpolates values at unsampled locations based on the spatial autocorrelation of sampled data	Can provide uncertainty estimates and incorporate anisotropy	Assumes stationarity and may be sensitive to outliers
Machine Learning	Learns patterns and relationships from data using algorithms such as decision trees, random forests, support vector machines and neural networks	Can handle non-linear and non-parametric data and interactions	Requires large training data and may suffer from overfitting and interpretability issues
Crop Models	Simulates crop growth and development processes based on genotype, environment and management factors	Can integrate multiple data sources and provide mechanistic insights	Requires extensive parameterization and calibration for specific conditions

5. Applications in Major Crops

Remote sensing and GIS have been widely used for monitoring and managing various crops around the world, including cereals, oilseeds, pulses, cotton, sugarcane, fruits and vegetables [65]. Some of the major applications are listed in Table 5.

Rice

Rice is the staple food for more than half of the world's population and is grown on over 160 million hectares globally [66]. In Asia, rice accounts for more than 90% of the total production and consumption [67]. Remote sensing has been extensively used for mapping rice area, monitoring crop growth and condition, estimating yield and detecting pest and disease outbreaks [68].

Table 5. Major applications of remote sensing and GIS in crop monitoring

Crop	**Application**	**Remote sensing data**	**Methods**
Rice	Mapping rice area, flood monitoring, yield estimation, pest and disease detection	Landsat, Sentinel, MODIS, SAR	Classification, modeling, change detection
Wheat	Mapping wheat area, growth monitoring, yield forecasting, nutrient management	Landsat, Sentinel, SPOT, UAV	Classification, modeling, precision agriculture
Maize	Mapping maize area, phenology monitoring, yield prediction, water stress detection	Landsat, Sentinel, MODIS, UAV	Classification, modeling, evapotranspiration
Cotton	Mapping cotton area, boll development monitoring, yield estimation, pest management	Landsat, Sentinel, MODIS, UAV	Classification, modeling, spect

Mapping rice area: Landsat, Sentinel and MODIS data have been widely used for mapping rice area at regional to continental scales [69]. The unique spectral signature of rice, especially during the flooding and transplanting stages, allows its differentiation from other crops [70]. Multi-temporal classification using machine learning algorithms such as random forests and support vector machines has shown high accuracies (>90%) for rice mapping [71]. SAR data from Sentinel-1 and ALOS-2 has also been used for mapping rice area, particularly in cloud-prone regions [72].

Crop growth monitoring:Time series of vegetation indices derived from Landsat, Sentinel and MODIS data have been used to monitor rice growth and phenology [73]. The NDVI and EVI profiles can capture the key growth stages of rice, such as transplanting, tillering, heading and harvesting [74]. The LAI and fAPAR derived from these indices can indicate the crop vigor and productivity [75]. UAV-based multispectral and thermal data have also been used for high-resolution monitoring of rice growth and stress [76].

Yield estimation*:*Remote sensing-based yield estimation models for rice have been developed using empirical regression, machine learning and crop simulation approaches [77]. Vegetation indices, LAI and fAPAR at critical growth stages have been used as input variables for yield estimation [78]. Crop simulation models such as ORYZA and DSSAT have been coupled with remote sensing data for spatial yield forecasting [79]. Machine learning models such as random forests and neural networks have shown improved accuracies over traditional regression models [80].

Pest and disease detection*:* Hyperspectral remote sensing has been used for early detection of pest and disease infestation in rice [81]. The spectral signatures of infected plants differ from healthy plants due to changes in pigments, water content and leaf structure [82]. Spectral indices and machine learning algorithms have been used to detect and map brown planthopper, leaf folder and blast disease in rice [83]. UAV-based high-resolution multispectral and thermal data have also been used for precision pest management in rice [84].

Wheat

Wheat is the second most important cereal crop after rice and is grown on over 200 million hectares worldwide [85]. In India, wheat is the second largest crop after rice and is cultivated on around 30 million hectares [86]. Remote sensing has been used for mapping wheat area, monitoring crop growth and condition, estimating yield and guiding nutrient management [87].

Mapping wheat area: Landsat, Sentinel and SPOT data have been used for mapping wheat area at regional to national scales [88]. The spectral signature of wheat varies with growth stages and can be distinguished from other crops using multi-temporal classification [89]. Machine learning algorithms such as random forests and support vector machines have shown high accuracies (>85%) for wheat mapping [90]. The use of SAR data has improved the classification accuracy in regions with frequent cloud cover [91].

Crop growth monitoring*:* Time series of vegetation indices derived from Landsat, Sentinel and MODIS data have been used to monitor wheat growth and phenology [92]. The NDVI and NDWI profiles can capture the key growth stages of wheat, such as emergence, jointing, heading and ripening [93]. The LAI and chlorophyll content derived from these indices can indicate the crop vigor and nitrogen status [94]. UAV-based multispectral and thermal data have also been used for high-resolution monitoring of wheat growth and stress [95].

Yield estimation: Remote sensing-based yield estimation models for wheat have been developed using empirical regression, machine learning and crop simulation approaches [96]. Vegetation indices, LAI and fAPAR at critical growth stages have been used as input variables for yield estimation [97]. Crop simulation models such as WOFOST and DSSAT have been coupled with remote sensing data for spatial yield forecasting [98]. Machine learning models such as random forests and neural networks have shown improved accuracies over traditional regression models [99].

Nutrient management: Remote sensing has been used for site-specific nutrient management in wheat using precision agriculture techniques [100]. Vegetation indices such as NDVI and NDRE have been used to estimate the nitrogen status of wheat and guide variable rate fertilization [101]. Proximal sensors such as Green Seeker and Crop-Circle have been used for real-time monitoring of wheat nitrogen status and on-the-go fertilization [102]. The integration of remote sensing, GIS and GPS technologies has enabled the development of decision support systems for precision nutrient management in wheat [103].

Maize

Maize is one of the most important cereal crops and is grown on over 180 million hectares globally [104]. In Asia, maize is the third largest crop after rice and wheat and is cultivated on around 60 million hectares [105]. Remote sensing has been used for mapping maize area, monitoring crop growth and condition, estimating yield and detecting water stress [106].

Mapping maize area*:* Landsat, Sentinel and MODIS data have been used for mapping maize area at regional to continental scales [107]. The spectral signature of maize varies with growth stages and can be distinguished from other crops using multi-temporal classification [108]. Machine learning algorithms such as random forests and support vector machines have shown high accuracies (>90%) for maize mapping [109]. The use of SAR data has improved the classification accuracy in regions with frequent cloud cover [110].

***Crop growth monitoring**:* Time series of vegetation indices derived from Landsat, Sentinel and MODIS data have been used to monitor maize growth and phenology [111]. The NDVI and EVI profiles can capture the key growth stages of maize, such as emergence, silking, dough and maturity [112]. The LAI and fAPAR derived from these indices can indicate the crop vigor and productivity [113]. UAV-based multispectral and thermal data have also been used for high-resolution monitoring of maize growth and stress [114].

***Yield estimation**:* Remote sensing-based yield estimation models for maize have been developed using empirical regression, machine learning and crop simulation approaches [115]. Vegetation indices, LAI and fAPAR at critical growth stages have been used as input variables for yield estimation [116]. Crop simulation models such as CERES-Maize and DSSAT have been coupled with remote sensing data for spatial yield forecasting [117]. Machine learning models such as random forests and neural networks have shown improved accuracies over traditional regression models [118].

***Water stress detection**:* Remote sensing has been used for detecting water stress in maize using thermal and optical data [119]. The crop water stress index (CWSI) derived from canopy temperature has been used to indicate the plant water status and irrigation needs [120]. The NDWI and other water-sensitive indices derived from multispectral data have also been used to detect water stress in maize [121]. The integration of remote sensing and crop models has enabled the estimation of maize water requirements and irrigation scheduling [122].

Cotton

Cotton is an important cash crop and is grown on over 30 million hectares worldwide [123]. In India, cotton is the largest cash crop and is cultivated on around 12 million hectares [124]. Remote sensing has been used for mapping cotton area, monitoring crop growth and condition, estimating yield and guiding pest management [125].

Mapping cotton area: Landsat, Sentinel and MODIS data have been used for mapping cotton area at regional to national scales [126]. The spectral signature of cotton varies with growth stages and can be distinguished from other crops using multi-temporal classification [127]. Machine learning algorithms such as random forests and support vector machines have shown high accuracies (>85%) for cotton mapping [128]. The use of SAR data has improved the classification accuracy in regions with frequent cloud cover [129].

Crop growth monitoring: Time series of vegetation indices derived from Landsat, Sentinel and MODIS data have been used to monitor cotton growth and phenology [130]. The NDVI and LAI profiles can capture the key growth stages of cotton, such as squaring, flowering, boll development and maturity [131]. The NDWI and other water-sensitive indices have been used to monitor the water status and stress in cotton [132]. UAV-based multispectral and thermal data have also been used for high-resolution monitoring of cotton growth and stress [133].

Yield estimation: Remote sensing-based yield estimation models for cotton have been developed using empirical regression, machine learning and crop simulation approaches [134]. Vegetation indices, LAI and fAPAR at critical growth stages have been used as input variables for yield estimation [135]. Crop simulation models such as GOSSYM and CROPGRO-Cotton have been coupled with remote sensing data for spatial yield forecasting [136]. Machine learning models such as random forests and neural networks have shown improved accuracies over traditional regression models [137].

Pest management: Remote sensing has been used for detecting and monitoring pest infestation in cotton using multispectral and hyperspectral data [138]. The spectral signatures of cotton plants infested with pests such as bollworms, whiteflies and aphids differ from healthy plants due to changes in pigments and leaf structure [139]. Vegetation indices and machine learning algorithms have been used to map the spatial distribution and severity of pest infestation in cotton

[140]. UAV-based high-resolution multispectral data have also been used for precision pest management in cotton [141].

Sugarcane

Sugarcane is an important cash crop and is grown on over 20 million hectares globally [142]. In India, sugarcane is the second largest cash crop after cotton and is cultivated on around 5 million hectares [143]. Remote sensing has been used for mapping sugarcane area, monitoring crop growth and condition, estimating yield and assessing harvest readiness [144].

***Mapping sugarcane area**:* Landsat, Sentinel and MODIS data have been used for mapping sugarcane area at regional to national scales [145]. The spectral signature of sugarcane varies with growth stages and can be distinguished from other crops using multi-temporal classification [146]. Machine learning algorithms such as random forests and support vector machines have shown high accuracies (>90%) for sugarcane mapping [147]. The use of SAR data has improved the classification accuracy in regions with frequent cloud cover [148].

Crop growth monitoring: Time series of vegetation indices derived from Landsat, Sentinel and MODIS data have been used to monitor sugarcane growth and phenology [149]. The NDVI and EVI profiles can capture the key growth stages of sugarcane, such as tillering, grand growth, maturity and senescence [150]. The LAI and fAPAR derived from these indices can indicate the crop vigor and productivity [151]. UAV-based multispectral and thermal data have also been used for high-resolution monitoring of sugarcane growth and stress [152].

***Yield estimation**:* Remote sensing-based yield estimation models for sugarcane have been developed using empirical regression, machine learning and crop simulation approaches [153]. Vegetation indices, LAI and fAPAR at critical growth stages have been used as input variables for yield estimation [154]. Crop simulation models such as DSSAT-Canegro and APSIM-Sugar have been coupled with remote sensing data for spatial yield forecasting [155]. Machine learning models such as random forests and neural networks have shown improved accuracies over traditional regression models [156].

Harvest readiness assessment: Remote sensing has been used for assessing the harvest readiness of sugarcane using multispectral and hyperspectral data [157]. The spectral signatures of sugarcane change with maturity due to the accumulation of sucrose in the stalks [158]. Vegetation indices such as the normalized difference water index (NDWI) and the shortwave infrared water stress index (SIWSI) have been used to estimate the moisture content and sucrose accumulation in sugarcane [159]. The integration of remote sensing and crop models has enabled the prediction of optimal harvest time for sugarcane [160].

Horticultural crops

Horticultural crops, including fruits and vegetables, are high-value crops that are grown on a smaller scale compared to cereals and oilseeds [161]. Remote sensing has been used for mapping horticultural crop area, monitoring crop growth and condition, estimating yield and quality, and guiding precision management [162].

Mapping horticultural crop area: High-resolution satellite data from Sentinel-2, Landsat-8 and WorldView have been used for mapping horticultural crop area at farm to regional scales [163]. The spectral and textural features of horticultural crops can be used for object-based image analysis and classification [164]. Machine learning algorithms such as support vector machines and random forests have shown high accuracies (>85%) for horticultural crop mapping [165]. UAV-based multispectral data have also been used for high-resolution mapping of horticultural crops [166].

Crop growth monitoring: Time series of vegetation indices derived from high-resolution satellite data have been used to monitor the growth and phenology of horticultural crops [167]. The NDVI, EVI and LAI profiles can capture the key growth stages and indicate the crop vigor and productivity [168]. UAV-based multispectral and thermal data have been used for high-resolution monitoring of horticultural crop growth and stress [169]. Proximal sensors such as CropCircle and GreenSeeker have been used for real-time monitoring of crop nitrogen status and guiding precision fertilization [170].

Yield and quality estimation: Remote sensing-based yield estimation models for horticultural crops have been developed using empirical regression and machine learning approaches [171]. Vegetation indices, LAI and fAPAR at critical growth stages have been used as input variables for yield estimation [172]. Hyperspectral data have been used for estimating the quality attributes of horticultural crops, such as sugar content, acidity and firmness [173]. Machine learning models such as support vector regression and neural networks have shown improved accuracies over traditional regression models [174].

Precision management*:* Remote sensing and GIS have been used for precision management of horticultural crops, including site-specific irrigation, fertilization and pest control [175]. Thermal and multispectral data have been used for estimating the water status and irrigation requirements of horticultural crops [176]. Vegetation indices and soil maps have been used for variable rate fertilization based on the nutrient status and soil properties [177]. Hyperspectral data and machine learning algorithms have been used for early detection and mapping of pest and disease infestation in horticultural crops [178]. The integration of remote sensing, GIS and GPS technologies has enabled the development of decision support systems for precision horticulture [179].

6. Challenges and Future Directions

Despite the significant progress in remote sensing and GIS applications for crop health monitoring and management, there are still several challenges and opportunities for future research and development [180]. Some of the key challenges and future directions are discussed below.

Higher resolution data*:* While the spatial, temporal and spectral resolution of remote sensing data has improved significantly in recent years, there is still a need for higher resolution data to capture the fine-scale variability in crop growth and condition [181]. The upcoming satellite missions such as Landsat-9, Sentinel-2C and WorldView-Legion are expected to provide sub-meter to meter-level resolution data with high revisit frequency [182]. The integration of satellite, UAV and ground-based sensors can provide a multi-scale and multi-modal approach to crop monitoring [183].

Improved algorithms: The development of robust and transferable algorithms for processing and analyzing remote sensing data is critical for operational crop monitoring applications [184]. The use of advanced machine learning techniques such as deep learning, transfer learning and ensemble learning can improve the accuracy and efficiency of crop classification, yield estimation and stress detection [185]. The incorporation of physics-based models and domain knowledge can enhance the interpretability and generalizability of the algorithms [186].

Cloud computing: The increasing volume and complexity of remote sensing data require efficient and scalable computing solutions for storage, processing and analysis [187]. Cloud computing platforms such as Google Earth Engine, Amazon Web Services and Microsoft Azure provide on-demand access to high-performance computing resources and geospatial tools [188]. The use of cloud computing can enable the development of large-scale and near-real-time crop monitoring systems that can serve the needs of farmers, researchers and policymakers [189].

Capacity building: The effective use of remote sensing and GIS for crop health monitoring and management requires a skilled workforce and an enabling environment [190]. The lack of technical expertise, infrastructure and institutional support are major barriers to the adoption of these technologies, especially in developing countries [191]. The development of training programs, online courses and user-friendly tools can help build the capacity of stakeholders at various levels [192]. The establishment of public-private partnerships and international collaborations can facilitate the transfer of knowledge and resources [193].

***Policies and standards**:* The development of policies and standards for the collection, sharing and use of remote sensing data is essential for ensuring the quality, interoperability and accessibility of the products and services [194]. The open data policies and initiatives such as GEOSS, Copernicus and GEOGLAM have enabled the free and open access to a wide range of remote sensing data and products [195]. The development of standards and protocols for data formats, metadata and validation can facilitate the harmonization and integration of multi-source data [196]. The establishment of legal and ethical frameworks for data privacy, security and intellectual property rights can encourage the responsible use of remote sensing data [197].

7. Conclusion

Remote sensing and GIS have emerged as powerful tools for monitoring and managing crop health and productivity at various scales. The increasing availability of high-resolution satellite data, advanced sensors, and sophisticated algorithms have enabled the development of operational crop monitoring systems that can provide timely and accurate information on crop growth, yield, stress and management. The integration of remote sensing data with crop models, ground observations and expert knowledge can improve the accuracy and reliability of the products and services. The applications of remote sensing and GIS in major crops such as rice, wheat, maize, cotton, sugarcane and horticultural crops have demonstrated the potential benefits for sustainable agriculture. The mapping of crop area, monitoring of growth and condition, estimation of yield and quality, and detection of stress and pests can help farmers, researchers and policymakers make informed decisions for optimizing resource use, minimizing environmental impacts and enhancing food security.

However, there are still several challenges and opportunities for advancing the use of remote sensing and GIS in crop health monitoring and management. The development of higher resolution data, improved algorithms, cloud computing solutions, capacity building programs and enabling policies and standards can accelerate the adoption and impact of these technologies. The future directions in crop monitoring should focus on the integration of multi-scale and multi-modal data, the development of transferable and scalable algorithms, the engagement of stakeholders and the promotion of sustainable agriculture practices. Remote sensing and GIS have the potential to revolutionize the way we monitor and manage crop health and productivity. The continued research, development and application of these technologies can contribute to the achievement of the sustainable development goals related to food security, poverty alleviation and environmental sustainability. The collaboration among researchers, farmers, industry and policymakers is essential for realizing the full potential of remote sensing and GIS in agriculture.

References

[1] United Nations. (2019). World Population Prospects 2019: Highlights. Department of Economic and Social Affairs, Population Division. https://population.un.org/wpp/Publications/Files/WPP2019_Highlights.pdf
[2] IPCC. (2019). Climate Change and Land: An IPCC Special Report on climate change, desertification, land degradation, sustainable land management, food security, and greenhouse gas fluxes in terrestrial ecosystems. Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. https://www.ipcc.ch/srccl/
[3] Leslie, C. R., Serbina, L. O., & Miller, H. M. (2017). Landsat and agriculture—Case studies on the uses and benefits of Landsat imagery in agricultural monitoring and production. U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 2017–1034, 27 p., https://doi.org/10.3133/ofr20171034.
[4] Atzberger, C. (2013). Advances in remote sensing of agriculture: Context description, existing operational monitoring systems and major information needs. Remote Sensing, 5(2), 949-981. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs5020949
[5] Weiss, M., Jacob, F., & Duveiller, G. (2020). Remote sensing for agricultural applications: A meta-review. Remote Sensing of Environment, 236, 111402. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2019.111402
[6] Mulla, D. J. (2013). Twenty five years of remote sensing in precision agriculture: Key advances and remaining knowledge gaps. Biosystems Engineering, 114(4), 358-371. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biosystemseng.2012.08.009
[7] Maes, W. H., & Steppe, K. (2019). Perspectives for remote sensing with unmanned aerial vehicles in precision agriculture. Trends in Plant Science, 24(2), 152-164. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tplants.2018.11.007
[8] Zhang, N., Wang, M., & Wang, N. (2002). Precision agriculture—a worldwide overview. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 36(2-3), 113-132. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-1699(02)00096-0
[9] Gebbers, R., & Adamchuk, V. I. (2010). Precision agriculture and food security. Science, 327(5967), 828-831. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1183899
[10] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big data in smart farming–a review. Agricultural Systems, 153, 69-80. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agsy.2017.01.023
[11] Sishodia, R. P., Ray, R. L., & Singh, S. K. (2020). Applications of remote sensing in precision agriculture: A review. Remote Sensing, 12(19), 3136. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs12193136
[12] Chew, R., Rineer, J., Beach, R., O'Neil, M., Ujeneza, N., Lapidus, D., ... & Temple, D. S. (2020). Deep neural networks and transfer learning for food crop identification in UAV images. Drones, 4(1), 7. https://doi.org/10.3390/drones4010007
[13] Iizuka, K., Kato, T., Silsigia, S., Soufiningrum, A. Y., & Kozan, O. (2019). Estimating and examining the sensitivity of different vegetation indices to fractions of vegetation cover at different scaling grids for early stage acacia plantation forests using a fixed-wing UAS. Remote Sensing, 11(14), 1695. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs11141695
[14] Jiang, Z., Huete, A. R., Didan, K., & Miura, T. (2008). Development of a two-band enhanced vegetation index without a blue band. Remote Sensing of Environment, 112(10), 3833-3845. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2008.06.006
[15] Bannari, A., Morin, D., Bonn, F., & Huete, A. R. (1995). A review of vegetation indices. Remote Sensing Reviews, 13(1-2), 95-120. https://doi.org/10.1080/02757259509532298

[16] Atzberger, C., & Eilers, P. H. (2011). Evaluating the effectiveness of smoothing algorithms in the absence of ground reference measurements. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 32(13), 3689-3709. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431161003762405
[17] Zhang, Y., Song, C., Band, L. E., Sun, G., & Li, J. (2017). Reanalysis of global terrestrial vegetation trends from MODIS products: Browning or greening?. Remote Sensing of Environment, 191, 145-155. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2016.12.018
[18] Lu, L., Kuenzer, C., Wang, C., Guo, H., & Li, Q. (2015). Evaluation of three MODIS-derived vegetation index time series for dryland vegetation dynamics monitoring. Remote Sensing, 7(6), 7597-7614. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs70607597
[19] Transon, J., d'Andrimont, R., Maugnard, A., & Defourny, P. (2018). Survey of hyperspectral earth observation applications from space in the sentinel-2 context. Remote Sensing, 10(2), 157. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs10020157
[20] Mutanga, O., & Skidmore, A. K. (2004). Narrow band vegetation indices overcome the saturation problem in biomass estimation. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 25(19), 3999-4014. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431160310001654923
[21] Houborg, R., Fisher, J. B., & Skidmore, A. K. (2015). Advances in remote sensing of vegetation function and traits. International Journal of Applied Earth Observation and Geoinformation, 43, 1-6. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jag.2015.06.001
[22] Zhao, K., Suarez, J. C., Garcia, M., Hu, T., Wang, C., & Londo, A. (2018). Utility of multitemporal lidar for forest and carbon monitoring: Tree growth, biomass dynamics, and carbon flux. Remote Sensing of Environment, 204, 883-897. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2017.09.007
[23] Colomina, I., & Molina, P. (2014). Unmanned aerial systems for photogrammetry and remote sensing: A review. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 92, 79-97. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2014.02.013
[24] Tsouros, D. C., Bibi, S., & Sarigiannidis, P. G. (2019). A review on UAV-based applications for precision agriculture. Information, 10(11), 349. https://doi.org/10.3390/info10110349
[25] Zhang, C., & Kovacs, J. M. (2012). The application of small unmanned aerial systems for precision agriculture: a review. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 693-712. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11119-012-9274-5
[26] Manfreda, S., McCabe, M. F., Miller, P. E., Lucas, R., Pajuelo Madrigal, V., Mallinis, G., ... & Toth, B. (2018). On the use of unmanned aerial systems for environmental monitoring. Remote Sensing, 10(4), 641. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs10040641
[27] Hunt, E. R., & Daughtry, C. S. (2018). What good are unmanned aircraft systems for agricultural remote sensing and precision agriculture?. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 39(15-16), 5345-5376. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431161.2017.1410300
[28] Koh, L. P., & Wich, S. A. (2012). Dawn of drone ecology: low-cost autonomous aerial vehicles for conservation. Tropical Conservation Science, 5(2), 121-132. https://doi.org/10.1177/194008291200500202
[29] Sanchez-Azofeifa, A., Rivard, B., Wright, J., Feng, J. L., Li, P., Chong, M. M., & Bohlman, S. A. (2011). Estimation of the distribution of Tabebuia guayacan (Bignoniaceae) using high-resolution remote sensing imagery. Sensors, 11(4), 3831-3851. https://doi.org/10.3390/s110403831
[30] Dash, J. P., Watt, M. S., Pearse, G. D., Heaphy, M., & Dungey, H. S. (2017). Assessing very high resolution UAV imagery for monitoring forest health during a simulated disease outbreak. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 131, 1-14. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2017.07.007
[31] Zarco-Tejada, P. J., Camino, C., Beck, P. S. A., Calderon, R., Hornero, A., Hernández-Clemente, R., ... & Navas-Cortes, J. A. (2018). Previsual symptoms of Xylella fastidiosa infection revealed in spectral plant-trait alterations. Nature Plants, 4(7), 432-439. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41477-018-0189-7
[32] Calderón, R., Navas-Cortés, J. A., & Zarco-Tejada, P. J. (2015). Early detection and quantification of Verticillium wilt in olive using hyperspectral and thermal imagery over large areas. Remote Sensing, 7(5), 5584-5610. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs70505584

[33] Mariotto, I., Thenkabail, P. S., Huete, A., Slonecker, E. T., & Platonov, A. (2013). Hyperspectral versus multispectral crop-productivity modeling and type discrimination for the HyspIRI mission. Remote Sensing of Environment, 139, 291-305. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2013.08.002

[34] Mulla, D. J., & Miao, Y. (2016). Precision farming. In S. Shrestha (Ed.), Agricultural Systems–Toward a Sustainable Future. IntechOpen. https://doi.org/10.5772/64596

[35] Xue, J., & Su, B. (2017). Significant remote sensing vegetation indices: A review of developments and applications. Journal of Sensors, 2017. https://doi.org/10.1155/2017/1353691

[36] Tucker, C. J. (1979). Red and photographic infrared linear combinations for monitoring vegetation. Remote Sensing of Environment, 8(2), 127-150. https://doi.org/10.1016/0034-4257(79)90013-0

[37] Huete, A., Didan, K., Miura, T., Rodriguez, E. P., Gao, X., & Ferreira, L. G. (2002). Overview of the radiometric and biophysical performance of the MODIS vegetation indices. Remote Sensing of Environment, 83(1-2), 195-213. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0034-4257(02)00096-2

[38] Gitelson, A. A., Viña, A., Arkebauer, T. J., Rundquist, D. C., Keydan, G., & Leavitt, B. (2003). Remote estimation of leaf area index and green leaf biomass in maize canopies. Geophysical Research Letters, 30(5). https://doi.org/10.1029/2002GL016450

[39] Zaidi, S. M. H., Akbari, A., Abu Samah, A., Kong, N. S., & Gisen, J. I. A. (2017). Landsat-5 Time Series Analysis for Land Use/Land Cover Change Detection Using NDVI and Semi-Supervised Classification Techniques. Polish Journal of Environmental Studies, 26(6). https://doi.org/10.15244/pjoes/68878

[40] Jiang, Z., Huete, A. R., Didan, K., & Miura, T. (2008). Development of a two-band enhanced vegetation index without a blue band. Remote Sensing of Environment, 112(10), 3833-3845. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2008.06.006

[41] Gitelson, A. A. (2004). Wide dynamic range vegetation index for remote quantification of biophysical characteristics of vegetation. Journal of Plant Physiology, 161(2), 165-173. https://doi.org/10.1078/0176-1617-01176

[42] Huete, A. R. (1988). A soil-adjusted vegetation index (SAVI). Remote Sensing of Environment, 25(3), 295-309. https://doi.org/10.1016/0034-4257(88)90106-X

[43] Rouse, J. W., Haas, R. H., Schell, J. A., & Deering, D. W. (1974). Monitoring vegetation systems in the Great Plains with ERTS. NASA Special Publication, 351, 309.

[44] Gitelson, A. A., & Merzlyak, M. N. (1996). Signature analysis of leaf reflectance spectra: algorithm development for remote sensing of chlorophyll. Journal of Plant Physiology, 148(3-4), 494-500. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0176-1617(96)80284-7

[45] Dorigo, W., Zurita-Milla, R., de Wit, A. J., Brazile, J., Singh, R., & Schaepman, M. E. (2007). A agroecosystem modeling. International Journal of Applied Earth Observation and Geoinformation, 9(2), 165-193. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jag.2006.05.003

[46] Houborg, R., & McCabe, M. F. (2018). A hybrid training approach for leaf area index estimation via Cubist and random forests machine-learning. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 135, 173-188. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2017.10.004

[47] Verrelst, J., Camps-Valls, G., Muñoz-Marí, J., Rivera, J. P., Veroustraete, F., Clevers, J. G., & Moreno, J. (2015). Optical remote sensing and the retrieval of terrestrial vegetation bio-geophysical properties–A review. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 108, 273-290. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2015.05.005

[48] Baret, F., & Buis, S. (2008). Estimating canopy characteristics from remote sensing observations: Review of methods and associated problems. In S. Liang (Ed.), Advances in land remote sensing (pp. 173-201). Springer, Dordrecht. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4020-6450-0_7

[49] Zhang, Y., Chen, J. M., Miller, J. R., & Noland, T. L. (2008). Leaf chlorophyll content retrieval from airborne hyperspectral remote sensing imagery. Remote Sensing of Environment, 112(7), 3234-3247. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2008.04.005

[50] Haboudane, D., Miller, J. R., Tremblay, N., Zarco-Tejada, P. J., & Dextraze, L. (2002). Integrated narrow-band vegetation indices for prediction of crop chlorophyll content for application

to precision agriculture. Remote Sensing of Environment, 81(2-3), 416-426. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0034-4257(02)00018-4

[51] Liu, S., Peng, Y., Du, W., Le, Y., & Li, L. (2015). Remote estimation of leaf and canopy water content in winter wheat with different vertical distribution of water-related properties. Remote Sensing, 7(4), 4626-4650. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs70404626

[52] Gao, B. C. (1996). NDWI—A normalized difference water index for remote sensing of vegetation liquid water from space. Remote Sensing of Environment, 58(3), 257-266. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0034-4257(96)00067-3

[53] Ceccato, P., Gobron, N., Flasse, S., Pinty, B., & Tarantola, S. (2002). Designing a spectral index to estimate vegetation water content from remote sensing data: Part 1: Theoretical approach. Remote Sensing of Environment, 82(2-3), 188-197. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0034-4257(02)00037-8

[54] Idso, S. B., Jackson, R. D., Pinter Jr, P. J., Reginato, R. J., & Hatfield, J. L. (1981). Normalizing the stress-degree-day parameter for environmental variability. Agricultural Meteorology, 24, 45-55. https://doi.org/10.1016/0002-1571(81)90032-7

[55] Moran, M. S., Clarke, T. R., Inoue, Y., & Vidal, A. (1994). Estimating crop water deficit using the relation between surface-air temperature and spectral vegetation index. Remote Sensing of Environment, 49(3), 246-263. https://doi.org/10.1016/0034-4257(94)90020-5

[56] Aghighi, H., Azadbakht, M., Ashourloo, D., Shahrabi, H. S., & Radiom, S. (2018). Machine learning regression techniques for the silage maize yield prediction using time-series images of Landsat 8 OLI. IEEE Journal of Selected Topics in Applied Earth Observations and Remote Sensing, 11(12), 4563-4577. https://doi.org/10.1109/JSTARS.2018.2823361

[57] Liaghat, S., & Balasundram, S. K. (2010). A review: The role of remote sensing in precision agriculture. American Journal of Agricultural and Biological Sciences, 5(1), 50-55. https://doi.org/10.3844/ajabssp.2010.50.55

[58] Mulla, D. J. (2013). Twenty five years of remote sensing in precision agriculture: Key advances and remaining knowledge gaps. Biosystems Engineering, 114(4), 358-371. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biosystemseng.2012.08.009

[59] Ozdogan, M., Yang, Y., Allez, G., & Cervantes, C. (2010). Remote sensing of irrigated agriculture: Opportunities and challenges. Remote Sensing, 2(9), 2274-2304. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs2092274

[60] Lu, D., & Weng, Q. (2007). A survey of image classification methods and techniques for improving classification performance. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 28(5), 823-870. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431160600746456

[61] Lary, D. J., Alavi, A. H., Gandomi, A. H., & Walker, A. L. (2016). Machine learning in geosciences and remote sensing. Geoscience Frontiers, 7(1), 3-10. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gsf.2015.07.003

[62] Verrelst, J., Malenovský, Z., Van der Tol, C., Camps-Valls, G., Gastellu-Etchegorry, J. P., Lewis, P., ... & Moreno, J. (2019). Quantifying vegetation biophysical variables from imaging spectroscopy data: A review on retrieval methods. Surveys in Geophysics, 40(3), 589-629. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10712-018-9478-y

[63] Bégué, A., Arvor, D., Bellon, B., Betbeder, J., De Abelleyra, D., Ferraz, R. P. D., ... & Verón, S. R. (2018). Remote sensing and cropping practices: A review. Remote Sensing, 10(1), 99. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs10010099

[64] Zheng, G., & Moskal, L. M. (2009). Retrieving leaf area index (LAI) using remote sensing: Theories, methods and sensors. Sensors, 9(4), 2719-2745. https://doi.org/10.3390/s90402719

[65] Wójtowicz, M., Wójtowicz, A., & Piekarczyk, J. (2016). Application of remote sensing methods in agriculture. Communications in Biometry and Crop Science, 11(1), 31-50.

[66] FAO. (2020). FAOSTAT database. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. http://www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data/QC

[67] Kuenzer, C., & Knauer, K. (2013). Remote sensing of rice crop areas. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 34(6), 2101-2139. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431161.2012.738946

[68] Mosleh, M. K., Hassan, Q. K., & Chowdhury, E. H. (2015). Application of remote sensors in mapping rice area and forecasting its production: A review. Sensors, 15(1), 769-791. https://doi.org/10.3390/s150100769

[69] Dong, J., & Xiao, X. (2016). Evolution of regional to global paddy rice mapping methods: A review. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 119, 214-227. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2016.05.010

[70] Xiao, X., Boles, S., Liu, J., Zhuang, D., Frolking, S., Li, C., ... & Moore III, B. (2005). Mapping paddy rice agriculture in southern China using multi-temporal MODIS images. Remote Sensing of Environment, 95(4), 480-492. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2004.12.009

[71] Torbick, N., Chowdhury, D., Salas, W., & Qi, J. (2017). Monitoring rice agriculture across Myanmar using time series Sentinel-1 assisted by Landsat-8 and PALSAR-2. Remote Sensing, 9(2), 119. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs9020119

[72] Nguyen, D. B., Gruber, A., & Wagner, W. (2016). Mapping rice extent and cropping scheme in the Mekong Delta using Sentinel-1A data. Remote Sensing Letters, 7(12), 1209-1218. https://doi.org/10.1080/2150704X.2016.1225172

[73] Son, N. T., Chen, C. F., Chen, C. R., & Minh, V. Q. (2017). Assessment of Sentinel-1A data for rice crop classification using random forests and support vector machines. Geocarto International, 33(6), 587-601. https://doi.org/10.1080/10106049.2017.1289555

[74] Mansaray, L. R., Huang, W., Zhang, D., Huang, J., & Li, J. (2017). Mapping rice fields in urban Shanghai, Southeast China, using Sentinel-1A and Landsat 8 datasets. Remote Sensing, 9(3), 257. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs9030257

[75] Zhang, Y., Wang, C., Wu, J., Qi, J., & Salas, W. A. (2009). Mapping paddy rice with multitemporal ALOS/PALSAR imagery in southeast China. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 30(23), 6301-6315. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431160902842391

[76] Shen, G., Guo, H., & Li, J. (2018). Leaf area index estimation using vegetation indices derived from Landsat-8 OLI data. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 39(8), 2464-2483. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431161.2018.1434327

[77] Nuarsa, I. W., Nishio, F., & Hongo, C. (2011). Spectral characteristics and mapping of rice plants using multi-temporal Landsat data. Journal of Agricultural Science, 3(1), 54. https://doi.org/10.5539/jas.v3n1p54

[78] Wang, D., Huang, J., Lv, Y., Li, Y., & Zhang, M. (2018). Mapping rice cropping systems in the middle-lower Yangtze River region using multitemporal Landsat 8 images. Journal of Applied Remote Sensing, 12(2), 026004. https://doi.org/10.1117/1.JRS.12.026004

[79] Anggraeni, D., Lin, C. Y., & Chen, C. F. (2017). Rice yield estimation using Sentinel-1A dual polarimetric SAR data. In 2017 IEEE International Geoscience and Remote Sensing Symposium (IGARSS) (pp. 2719-2722). IEEE. https://doi.org/10.1109/IGARSS.2017.8127567

[80] Guan, X., Huang, C., Liu, G., Meng, X., & Liu, Q. (2016). Mapping rice cropping systems in Vietnam using an NDVI-based time-series similarity measurement based on DTW distance. Remote Sensing, 8(1), 19. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs8010019

[81] Liu, M., Liu, X., Liu, D., Ding, C., & Jiang, J. (2015). Multivariable integration method for estimating leaf area index in rice. Field Crops Research, 177, 123-134. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fcr.2015.03.011

[82] Gnyp, M. L., Miao, Y., Yuan, F., Ustin, S. L., Yu, K., Yao, Y., ... & Bareth, G. (2014). Hyperspectral canopy sensing of paddy rice aboveground biomass at different growth stages. Field Crops Research, 155, 42-55. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fcr.2013.09.023

[83] Huang, J., Wang, X., Li, X., Tian, H., & Pan, Z. (2013). Remotely sensed rice yield prediction using multi-temporal NDVI data derived from NOAA's-AVHRR. PloS One, 8(8), e70816. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0070816

[84] Zhang, X., Cui, J., Wang, W., & Lin, C. (2017). A study for texture feature extraction of high-resolution satellite images based on a direction measure and gray level co-occurrence matrix fusion algorithm. Sensors, 17(7), 1474. https://doi.org/10.3390/s17071474

[85] Pal, M., & Mather, P. M. (2005). Support vector machines for classification in remote sensing. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 26(5), 1007-1011. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431160512331314083

[86] Directorate of Economics and Statistics. (2019). Agricultural Statistics at a Glance 2019. Ministry of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare, Government of India. https://eands.dacnet.nic.in/PDF/Agricultural%20Statistics%20at%20a%20Glance%202019.pdf

[87] Panigrahy, S., Upadhyay, G., Ray, S. S., & Parihar, J. S. (2010). Mapping of cropping system for the Indo-Gangetic plain using multi-date SPOT NDVI-VGT data. Journal of the Indian Society of Remote Sensing, 38(4), 627-632. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12524-011-0061-y

[88] Jain, M., Mondal, P., DeFries, R. S., Small, C., & Galford, G. L. (2013). Mapping cropping intensity of smallholder farms: A comparison of methods using multiple sensors. Remote Sensing of Environment, 134, 210-223. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2013.02.029

[89] Manjunath, K. R., More, R. S., Jain, N. K., Panigrahy, S., & Parihar, J. S. (2015). Mapping of rice-cropping pattern and cultural type using remote-sensing and ancillary data: a case study for South and Southeast Asian countries. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 36(24), 6008-6030. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431161.2015.1110259

[90] Gumma, M. K., Thenkabail, P. S., Teluguntla, P., Rao, M. N., Mohammed, I. A., & Whitbread, A. M. (2016). Mapping rice-fallow cropland areas for short-season grain legumes intensification in South Asia using MODIS 250 m time-series data. International Journal of Digital Earth, 9(10), 981-1003. https://doi.org/10.1080/17538947.2016.1168489

[91] Srivastava, A. K., Singhal, M., Rajak, D. R., Islam, T., Sandhu, R., & Parihar, J. S. (2018). Rice area mapping using multi-temporal Sentinel-1 SAR and MODIS data in Punjab, India. Geocarto International, 34(12), 1345-1355. https://doi.org/10.1080/10106049.2018.1497093

[92] Wang, J., Huang, J., Zhang, K., Li, X., She, B., Wei, C., ... & Xin, Y. (2015). Rice fields mapping in fragmented area using multi-temporal HJ-1A/B CCD images. Remote Sensing, 7(4), 3467-3488. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs70403467

[93] Zhang, G., Xiao, X., Dong, J., Kou, W., Jin, C., Qin, Y., ... & Biradar, C. (2015). Mapping paddy rice planting areas through time series analysis of MODIS land surface temperature and vegetation index data. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 106, 157-171. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2015.05.011

[94] Fang, H., Wu, B., Liu, H., & Huang, X. (1998). Using NOAA AVHRR and Landsat TM to estimate rice area year-by-year. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 19(3), 521-525. https://doi.org/10.1080/014311698216134

[95] Sakamoto, T., Yokozawa, M., Toritani, H., Shibayama, M., Ishitsuka, N., & Ohno, H. (2005). A crop phenology detection method using time-series MODIS data. Remote Sensing of Environment, 96(3-4), 366-374. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2005.03.008

[96] Boschetti, M., Busetto, L., Manfron, G., Laborte, A., Asilo, S., Pazhanivelan, S., & Nelson, A. (2017). PhenoRice: A method for automatic extraction of spatio-temporal information on rice crops using satellite data time series. Remote Sensing of Environment, 194, 347-365. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2017.03.029

[97] Zhou, Y., Xiao, X., Qin, Y., Dong, J., Zhang, G., Kou, W., ... & Li, X. (2016). Mapping paddy rice planting area in rice-wetland coexistent areas through analysis of Landsat 8 OLI and MODIS images. International Journal of Applied Earth Observation and Geoinformation, 46, 1-12. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jag.2015.11.001

[98] Dong, J., Xiao, X., Kou, W., Qin, Y., Zhang, G., Li, L., ... & Liu, J. (2015). Tracking the dynamics of paddy rice planting area in 1986–2010 through time series Landsat images and phenology-based algorithms. Remote Sensing of Environment, 160, 99-113. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2015.01.004

[99] Peng, D., Huete, A. R., Huang, J., Wang, F., & Sun, H. (2011). Detection and estimation of mixed paddy rice cropping patterns with MODIS data. International Journal of Applied Earth Observation and Geoinformation, 13(1), 13-23. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jag.2010.06.001

[100] Okamoto, K., & Kawashima, H. (1999). Estimating of rice-planted area in the tropical zone using a combination of optical and microwave satellite sensor data. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 20(5), 1045-1048. https://doi.org/10.1080/014311699213091

[101] Chakraborty, M., Manjunath, K. R., Panigrahy, S., Kundu, N., & Parihar, J. S. (2005). Rice crop parameter retrieval using multi-temporal, multi-incidence angle Radarsat SAR data. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 59(5), 310-322. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2005.05.001

[102] Liu, T., Chen, F., Raabe, K., & Shang, J. (2020). Mapping winter wheat using multi-temporal Sentinel-1 and Sentinel-2 data for Hebei Province, China. International Journal of Applied Earth Observation and Geoinformation, 92, 102176. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jag.2020.102176

[103] Bazzi, H., Baghdadi, N., El Hajj, M., Zribi, M., Minh, D. H. T., Ndikumana, E., ... & Belhouchette, H. (2019). Mapping paddy rice using Sentinel-1 SAR time series in Camargue, France. Remote Sensing, 11(7), 887. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs11070887

[104] Wang, J., Huang, J., Zhang, K., Li, X., She, B., Wei, C., ... & Xin, Y. (2015). Rice fields mapping in fragmented area using multi-temporal HJ-1A/B CCD images. Remote Sensing, 7(4), 3467-3488. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs70403467

[105] Nuarsa, I. W., Nishio, F., & Hongo, C. (2011). Rice yield estimation using Landsat ETM+ data and field observation. Journal of Agricultural Science, 4(3), 45. https://doi.org/10.5539/jas.v4n3p45

[106] Nuarsa, I. W., Nishio, F., & Hongo, C. (2012). Spectral characteristics and mapping of rice plants using multi-temporal Landsat data. Journal of Agricultural Science, 4(1), 54. https://doi.org/10.5539/jas.v4n1p54

[107] Shi, J. J., Huang, J. F., & Zhang, F. (2013). Multi-year monitoring of paddy rice planting area in Northeast China using MODIS time series data. Journal of Zhejiang University Science B, 14(10), 934-946. https://doi.org/10.1631/jzus.B1200352

[108] Dong, J., Xiao, X., Menarguez, M. A., Zhang, G., Qin, Y., Thau, D., ... & Moore III, B. (2016). Mapping paddy rice planting area in northeastern Asia with Landsat 8 images, phenology-based algorithm and Google Earth Engine. Remote Sensing of Environment, 185, 142-154. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2016.02.016

[109] Clauss, K., Yan, H., & Kuenzer, C. (2016). Mapping paddy rice in China in 2002, 2005, 2010 and 2014 with MODIS time series. Remote Sensing, 8(5), 434. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs8050434

[110] Dong, J., & Xiao, X. (2016). Evolution of regional to global paddy rice mapping methods: A review. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 119, 214-227. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2016.05.010

[111] Laborte, A. G., Gutierrez, M. A., Balanza, J. G., Saito, K., Zwart, S. J., Boschetti, M., ... & Nelson, A. (2017). RiceAtlas, a spatial database of global rice calendars and production. Scientific Data, 4(1), 1-10. https://doi.org/10.1038/sdata.2017.74

[112] Zhou, Y., Xiao, X., Qin, Y., Dong, J., Zhang, G., Kou, W., ... & Li, X. (2016). Mapping paddy rice planting area in rice-wetland coexistent areas through analysis of Landsat 8 OLI and MODIS images. International Journal of Applied Earth Observation and Geoinformation, 46, 1-12. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jag.2015.11.001

[113] Zhang, G., Xiao, X., Dong, J., Kou, W., Jin, C., Qin, Y., ... & Biradar, C. (2015). Mapping paddy rice planting areas through time series analysis of MODIS land surface temperature and vegetation index data. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 106, 157-171. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2015.05.011

[114] Wang, J., Xiao, X., Qin, Y., Dong, J., Zhang, G., Kou, W., ... & Zhang, Y. (2015). Mapping paddy rice planting area in wheat-rice double-cropped areas through integration of Landsat-8 OLI, MODIS, and PALSAR images. Scientific Reports, 5, 10088. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep10088

[115] Kontgis, C., Schneider, A., & Ozdogan, M. (2015). Mapping rice paddy extent and intensification in the Vietnamese Mekong River Delta with dense time stacks of Landsat data. Remote Sensing of Environment, 169, 255-269. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2015.08.004

[116] Chen, C. F., Son, N. T., Chang, L. Y., & Chen, C. R. (2011). Classification of rice cropping systems by empirical mode decomposition and linear mixture model for time-series MODIS 250 m NDVI data in the Mekong Delta, Vietnam. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 32(18), 5115-5134. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431161.2010.494640
[117] Peng, Y., Zhu, T., Li, Y., Dai, C., Fang, S., Gong, Y., ... & Fang, S. (2019). A novel active learning method for the classification of hyperspectral imagery using quasi-Newton multinomial logistic regression. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 40(12), 4787-4804. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431161.2019.1579384
[118] Qin, Y., Xiao, X., Dong, J., Zhou, Y., Zhu, Z., Zhang, G., ... & Li, X. (2015). Mapping paddy rice planting area in cold temperate climate region through analysis of time series Landsat 8 (OLI), Landsat 7 (ETM+) and MODIS imagery. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 105, 220-233. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2015.04.008
[119] Jin, C., Xiao, X., Dong, J., Qin, Y., & Wang, Z. (2016). Mapping paddy rice distribution using multi-temporal Landsat imagery in the Sanjiang Plain, northeast China. Frontiers of Earth Science, 10(1), 49-62. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11707-015-0518-3
[120] Wu, W., Yang, P., Tang, H., Zhou, Q., Chen, Z., & Shibasaki, R. (2010). Characterizing spatial patterns of phenology in cropland of China based on remotely sensed data. Agricultural Sciences in China, 9(1), 101-112. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1671-2927(09)60073-0
[121] Gumma, M. K., Mohanty, S., Nelson, A., Arnel, R., Mohammed, I. A., & Das, S. R. (2015). Remote sensing based change analysis of rice environments in Odisha, India. Journal of Environmental Management, 148, 31-41. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2013.11.039
[122] Zhang, G., Xiao, X., Biradar, C. M., Dong, J., Qin, Y., Menarguez, M. A., ... & Doughty, R. B. (2017). Spatiotemporal patterns of paddy rice croplands in China and India from 2000 to 2015. Science of the Total Environment, 579, 82-92. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2016.10.223
[123] Gong, P., Wang, J., Yu, L., Zhao, Y., Zhao, Y., Liang, L., ... & Li, C. (2013). Finer resolution observation and monitoring of global land cover: First mapping results with Landsat TM and ETM+ data. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 34(7), 2607-2654. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431161.2012.748992
[124] Directorate of Economics and Statistics. (2019). Agricultural Statistics at a Glance 2019. Ministry of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare, Government of India. https://eands.dacnet.nic.in/PDF/Agricultural%20Statistics%20at%20a%20Glance%202019.pdf
[125] Usha, K., & Singh, B. (2013). Potential applications of remote sensing in horticulture—A review. Scientia Horticulturae, 153, 71-83. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scienta.2013.01.008
[126] Atzberger, C. (2013). Advances in remote sensing of agriculture: Context description, existing operational monitoring systems and major information needs. Remote Sensing, 5(2), 949-981. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs5020949
[127] Rao, P. N. (2008). Satellite remote sensing and GIS applications in agriculture. In Satellite Remote Sensing and GIS Applications in Agricultural Meteorology, 17-27.
[128] Usha, K., & Singh, B. (2013). Potential applications of remote sensing in horticulture—A review. Scientia Horticulturae, 153, 71-83. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scienta.2013.01.008
[129] Panda, S. S., Ames, D. P., & Panigrahi, S. (2010). Application of vegetation indices for agricultural crop yield prediction using neural network techniques. Remote Sensing, 2(3), 673-696. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs2030673
[130] Ozdogan, M., Yang, Y., Allez, G., & Cervantes, C. (2010). Remote sensing of irrigated agriculture: Opportunities and challenges. Remote Sensing, 2(9), 2274-2304. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs2092274
[131] Zhang, C., & Kovacs, J. M. (2012). The application of small unmanned aerial systems for precision agriculture: a review. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 693-712. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11119-012-9274-5
[132] Herrero, M., Thornton, P. K., Power, B., Bogard, J. R., Remans, R., Fritz, S., ... & Havlík, P. (2017). Farming and the geography of nutrient production for human use: a transdisciplinary

analysis. The Lancet Planetary Health, 1(1), e33-e42. https://doi.org/10.1016/S2542-5196(17)30007-4

[133] Xie, Y., Sha, Z., & Yu, M. (2008). Remote sensing imagery in vegetation mapping: a review. Journal of Plant Ecology, 1(1), 9-23. https://doi.org/10.1093/jpe/rtm005

[134] Atzberger, C. (2013). Advances in remote sensing of agriculture: Context description, existing operational monitoring systems and major information needs. Remote Sensing, 5(2), 949-981. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs5020949

[135] Dorigo, W. A., Zurita-Milla, R., de Wit, A. J., Brazile, J., Singh, R., & Schaepman, M. E. (2007). A review on reflective remote sensing and data assimilation techniques for enhanced agroecosystem modeling. International Journal of Applied Earth Observation and Geoinformation, 9(2), 165-193. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jag.2006.05.003

[136] Duveiller, G., & Defourny, P. (2010). A conceptual framework to define the spatial resolution requirements for agricultural monitoring using remote sensing. Remote Sensing of Environment, 114(11), 2637-2650. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2010.06.001

[137] Gao, F., Anderson, M. C., Zhang, X., Yang, Z., Alfieri, J. G., Kustas, W. P., ... & Prueger, J. H. (2017). Toward mapping crop progress at field scales through fusion of Landsat and MODIS imagery. Remote Sensing of Environment, 188, 9-25. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2016.11.004

[138] Pinter Jr, P. J., Hatfield, J. L., Schepers, J. S., Barnes, E. M., Moran, M. S., Daughtry, C. S., & Upchurch, D. R. (2003). Remote sensing for crop management. Photogrammetric Engineering & Remote Sensing, 69(6), 647-664. https://doi.org/10.14358/PERS.69.6.647

[139] Bégué, A., Arvor, D., Bellon, B., Betbeder, J., De Abelleyra, D., PD Ferraz, R., ... & R Verón, S. (2018). Remote sensing and cropping practices: A review. Remote Sensing, 10(2), 99. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs10010099

[140] Mahlein, A. K. (2016). Plant disease detection by imaging sensors–parallels and specific demands for precision agriculture and plant phenotyping. Plant Disease, 100(2), 241-251. https://doi.org/10.1094/PDIS-03-15-0340-FE

[141] Zhang, M., Qin, Z., Liu, X., & Ustin, S. L. (2003). Detection of stress in tomatoes induced by late blight disease in California, USA, using hyperspectral remote sensing. International Journal of Applied Earth Observation and Geoinformation, 4(4), 295-310. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0303-2434(03)00008-4

[142] Ramesh, K., & Matloob, A. (2017). Sugarcane productivity mapping of Gaddilam basin, South India using geospatial technologies. Journal of the Indian Society of Remote Sensing, 45(6), 1059-1067. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12524-017-0669-7

[143] Directorate of Economics and Statistics. (2019). Agricultural Statistics at a Glance 2019. Ministry of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare, Government of India. https://eands.dacnet.nic.in/PDF/Agricultural%20Statistics%20at%20a%20Glance%202019.pdf

[144] Narmada, K., & Gobinath, K. (2016). Soil suitability evaluation for sugarcane using remote sensing and GIS techniques. Advances in Life Sciences, 5(16), 6322-6326.

[145] Begue, A., Lebourgeois, V., Bappel, E., Todoroff, P., Pellegrino, A., Baillarin, F., & Siegmund, B. (2010). Spatio-temporal variability of sugarcane fields and recommendations for yield forecast using NDVI. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 31(20), 5391-5407. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431160903349057

[146] Johnson, M. D., Hsieh, W. W., Cannon, A. J., Davidson, A., & Bédard, F. (2016). Crop yield forecasting on the Canadian Prairies by remotely sensed vegetation indices and machine learning methods. Agricultural and Forest Meteorology, 218, 74-84. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agrformet.2015.11.003

[147] Mulianga, B., Bégué, A., Simoes, M., & Todoroff, P. (2013). Forecasting regional sugarcane yield based on time integral and spatial aggregation of MODIS NDVI. Remote Sensing, 5(5), 2184-2199. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs5052184

[148] Morel, J., Todoroff, P., Bégué, A., Bury, A., Martiné, J. F., & Petit, M. (2014). Toward a satellite-based system of sugarcane yield estimation and forecasting in smallholder farming

conditions: A case study on Reunion Island. Remote Sensing, 6(7), 6620-6635. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs6076620

[149] Rahman, M. M., & Robson, A. J. (2016). A novel approach for sugarcane yield prediction using Landsat time series imagery: A case study on Bundaberg region. Advances in Remote Sensing, 5(02), 93. https://doi.org/10.4236/ars.2016.52008

[150] Saeed, U., Dempewolf, J., Becker-Reshef, I., Khan, A., Ahmad, A., & Wajid, S. A. (2017). Forecasting wheat yield from weather data and MODIS NDVI using random forests for Punjab province, Pakistan. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 38(17), 4831-4854. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431161.2017.1323282

[151] Everingham, Y. L., Lowe, K. H., Donald, D. A., Coomans, D. H., & Markley, J. (2007). Advanced satellite imagery to classify sugarcane crop characteristics. Agronomy for Sustainable Development, 27(2), 111-117. https://doi.org/10.1051/agro:2006034

[152] Gunnula, W., Kosittrakun, M., Righetti, T. L., Weerathaworn, P., & Prabpan, M. (2011). Normalized difference vegetation index relationships with rainfall patterns and yield in small plantings of rain-fed sugarcane. Australian Journal of Crop Science, 5(13), 1845.

[153] Duveiller, G., López-Lozano, R., & Baruth, B. (2013). Enhanced processing of 1-km spatial resolution fAPAR time series for sugarcane yield forecasting and monitoring. Remote Sensing, 5(3), 1091-1116. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs5031091

[154] Fernandes, J. L., Rocha, J. V., & Lamparelli, R. A. C. (2011). Sugarcane yield estimates using time series analysis of spot vegetation images. Scientia Agricola, 68(2), 139-146. https://doi.org/10.1590/S0103-90162011000200002

[155] Mutanga, S., Van Schoor, C., Olorunju, P. L., Gonah, T., & Ramoelo, A. (2013). Determining the best optimum time for predicting sugarcane yield using hyper-temporal satellite imagery. Advances in Remote Sensing, 2(03), 269. https://doi.org/10.4236/ars.2013.23029

[156] Rembold, F., Atzberger, C., Savin, I., & Rojas, O. (2013). Using low resolution satellite imagery for yield prediction and yield anomaly detection. Remote Sensing, 5(4), 1704-1733. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs5041704

[157] Zhao, Y., Potgieter, A. B., Zhang, M., Wu, B., & Hammer, G. L. (2020). Predicting wheat yield at the field scale by combining high-resolution Sentinel-2 satellite imagery and crop modelling. Remote Sensing, 12(7), 1024. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs12071024

[158] Abdel-Rahman, E. M., & Ahmed, F. B. (2008). The application of remote sensing techniques to sugarcane (Saccharum spp. hybrid) production: a review of the literature. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 29(13), 3753-3767. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431160701874603

[159] Rao, N. R. (2008). Development of a crop-specific spectral library and discrimination of various agricultural crop varieties using hyperspectral imagery. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 29(1), 131-144. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431160701241779

[160] Moran, M. S., Inoue, Y., & Barnes, E. M. (1997). Opportunities and limitations for image-based remote sensing in precision crop management. Remote Sensing of Environment, 61(3), 319-346. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0034-4257(97)00045-X

[161] Panda, S. S., Ames, D. P., & Panigrahi, S. (2010). Application of vegetation indices for agricultural crop yield prediction using neural network techniques. Remote Sensing, 2(3), 673-696. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs2030673

[162] De Wit, A. J. W., & Clevers, J. G. P. W. (2004). Efficiency and accuracy of per-field classification for operational crop mapping. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 25(20), 4091-4112. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431160310001619580

[163] Warren, G., & Metternicht, G. (2005). Agricultural applications of high-resolution digital multispectral imagery. Photogrammetric Engineering & Remote Sensing, 71(5), 595-602. https://doi.org/10.14358/PERS.71.5.595

[164] Peña-Barragán, J. M., Ngugi, M. K., Plant, R. E., & Six, J. (2011). Object-based crop identification using multiple vegetation indices, textural features and crop phenology. Remote Sensing of Environment, 115(6), 1301-1316. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2011.01.009

[165] Liu, J., Pattey, E., & Jégo, G. (2012). Assessment of vegetation indices for regional crop green LAI estimation from Landsat images over multiple growing seasons. Remote Sensing of Environment, 123, 347-358. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2012.04.002

[166] Yang, C., Everitt, J. H., & Murden, D. (2011). Evaluating high resolution SPOT 5 satellite imagery for crop identification. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 75(2), 347-354. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2010.12.012

[167] Viña, A., Gitelson, A. A., Nguy-Robertson, A. L., & Peng, Y. (2011). Comparison of different vegetation indices for the remote assessment of green leaf area index of crops. Remote Sensing of Environment, 115(12), 3468-3478. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2011.08.010

[168] Xing, N., Huang, W., Xie, Q., Shi, Y., Ye, H., Dong, Y., ... & Wu, M. (2020). A transformed triangular vegetation index for estimating winter wheat leaf area index. Remote Sensing, 12(1), 16. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs12010016

[169] Bégué, A., Arvor, D., Bellon, B., Betbeder, J., De Abelleyra, D., PD Ferraz, R., ... & R Verón, S. (2018). Remote sensing and cropping practices: A review. Remote Sensing, 10(2), 99. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs10010099

[170] Atzberger, C. (2013). Advances in remote sensing of agriculture: Context description, existing operational monitoring systems and major information needs. Remote Sensing, 5(2), 949-981. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs5020949

[171] Khanal, S., Fulton, J., & Shearer, S. (2017). An overview of current and potential applications of thermal remote sensing in precision agriculture. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 139, 22-32. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2017.05.001

[172] Liaghat, S., & Balasundram, S. K. (2010). A review: The role of remote sensing in precision agriculture. American Journal of Agricultural and Biological Sciences, 5(1), 50-55. https://doi.org/10.3844/ajabssp.2010.50.55

[173] Mulla, D. J. (2013). Twenty five years of remote sensing in precision agriculture: Key advances and remaining knowledge gaps. Biosystems Engineering, 114(4), 358-371. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biosystemseng.2012.08.009

[174] Zhang, C., & Kovacs, J. M. (2012). The application of small unmanned aerial systems for precision agriculture: a review. Precision Agriculture, 13(6), 693-712. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11119-012-9274-5

[175] Zhang, N., Wang, M., & Wang, N. (2002). Precision agriculture—a worldwide overview. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 36(2-3), 113-132. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-1699(02)00096-0

[176] Atzberger, C. (2013). Advances in remote sensing of agriculture: Context description, existing operational monitoring systems and major information needs. Remote Sensing, 5(2), 949-981. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs5020949

[177] Bégué, A., Arvor, D., Bellon, B., Betbeder, J., De Abelleyra, D., PD Ferraz, R., ... & R Verón, S. (2018). Remote sensing and cropping practices: A review. Remote Sensing, 10(2), 99. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs10010099

[178] Mahlein, A. K. (2016). Plant disease detection by imaging sensors–parallels and specific demands for precision agriculture and plant phenotyping. Plant Disease, 100(2), 241-251. https://doi
.org/10.1094/PDIS-03-15-0340-FE

[179] Mulla, D. J. (2013). Twenty five years of remote sensing in precision agriculture: Key advances and remaining knowledge gaps. Biosystems Engineering, 114(4), 358-371. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biosystemseng.2012.08.009

[180] Atzberger, C. (2013). Advances in remote sensing of agriculture: Context description, existing operational monitoring systems and major information needs. Remote Sensing, 5(2), 949-981. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs5020949

[181] Gao, F., Anderson, M. C., Zhang, X., Yang, Z., Alfieri, J. G., Kustas, W. P., ... & Prueger, J. H. (2017). Toward mapping crop progress at field scales through fusion of Landsat and MODIS imagery. Remote Sensing of Environment, 188, 9-25. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2016.11.004

[182] Claverie, M., Ju, J., Masek, J. G., Dungan, J. L., Vermote, E. F., Roger, J. C., ... & Justice, C. (2018). The Harmonized Landsat and Sentinel-2 surface reflectance data set. Remote Sensing of Environment, 219, 145-161. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2018.09.002
[183] Battude, M., Al Bitar, A., Morin, D., Cros, J., Huc, M., Sicre, C. M., ... & Demarez, V. (2016). Estimating maize biomass and yield over large areas using high spatial and temporal resolution Sentinel-2 like remote sensing data. Remote Sensing of Environment, 184, 668-681. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2016.07.030
[184] Weiss, M., Jacob, F., & Duveiller, G. (2020). Remote sensing for agricultural applications: A meta-review. Remote Sensing of Environment, 236, 111402. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2019.111402
[185] Cheng, G., & Han, J. (2016). A survey on object detection in optical remote sensing images. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 117, 11-28. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2016.03.014
[186] Verrelst, J., Camps-Valls, G., Muñoz-Marí, J., Rivera, J. P., Veroustraete, F., Clevers, J. G., & Moreno, J. (2015). Optical remote sensing and the retrieval of terrestrial vegetation bio-geophysical properties–A review. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 108, 273-290. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2015.05.005
[187] Ma, Y., Wu, H., Wang, L., Huang, B., Ranjan, R., Zomaya, A., & Jie, W. (2015). Remote sensing big data computing: Challenges and opportunities. Future Generation Computer Systems, 51, 47-60. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.future.2014.10.029
[188] Gorelick, N., Hancher, M., Dixon, M., Ilyushchenko, S., Thau, D., & Moore, R. (2017). Google Earth Engine: Planetary-scale geospatial analysis for everyone. Remote Sensing of Environment, 202, 18-27. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2017.06.031
[189] Shelestov, A., Lavreniuk, M., Kussul, N., Novikov, A., & Skakun, S. (2017). Exploring Google Earth Engine platform for big data processing: Classification of multi-temporal satellite imagery for crop mapping. Frontiers in Earth Science, 5, 17. https://doi.org/10.3389/feart.2017.00017
[190] Azzari, G., & Lobell, D. (2017). Landsat-based classification in the cloud: An opportunity for a paradigm shift in land cover monitoring. Remote Sensing of Environment, 202, 64-74. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2017.05.025
[191] Xiong, J., Thenkabail, P. S., Gumma, M. K., Teluguntla, P., Poehnelt, J., Congalton, R. G., ... & Thau, D. (2017). Automated cropland mapping of continental Africa using Google Earth Engine cloud computing. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 126, 225-244. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2017.01.019
[192] Donchyts, G., Baart, F., Winsemius, H., Gorelick, N., Kwadijk, J., & Van De Giesen, N. (2016). Earth's surface water change over the past 30 years. Nature Climate Change, 6(9), 810-813. https://doi.org/10.1038/nclimate3111
[193] Fritz, S., See, L., Bayas, J. C. L., Waldner, F., Jacques, D., Becker-Reshef, I., ... & Rembold, F. (2019). A comparison of global agricultural monitoring systems and current gaps. Agricultural Systems, 168, 258-272. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agsy.2018.05.010
[194] Wulder, M. A., Coops, N. C., Roy, D. P., White, J. C., & Hermosilla, T. (2018). Land cover 2.0. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 39(12), 4254-4284. https://doi.org/10.1080/01431161.2018.1452075
[195] Gómez, C., White, J. C., & Wulder, M. A. (2016). Optical remotely sensed time series data for land cover classification: A review. ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, 116, 55-72. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.isprsjprs.2016.03.008
[196] Lewis, A., Oliver, S., Lymburner, L., Evans, B., Wyborn, L., Mueller, N., ... & Wu, W. (2017). The Australian geoscience data cube—foundations and lessons learned. Remote Sensing of Environment, 202, 276-292. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2017.03.015
[197] Drusch, M., Del Bello, U., Carlier, S., Colin, O., Fernandez, V., Gascon, F., ... & Strobl, P. (2012). Sentinel-2: ESA's optical high-resolution mission for GMES operational services. Remote Sensing of Environment, 120, 25-36. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2011.11.026

CHAPTER -6

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Sustainable Soil and Water Management Practices in Greenhouse Cultivation

[1]Bommireddy Mamatha, [2]Chandana Mudigiri, [3]Guguloth Ramesh, [4]Pakala saidulu, [5]Nayaki Meenakshi and [6]Chuncha Laxmi prasanna

1Senior Research fellow, Soil science, CRIDA,Hyderabad, Telangana, India

2Phd scholar, Soil science,P.J.T.S.A.U, Hyderabad,Telangana, India

3Senior Research fellow, Agronomy, ATARI, Hyderabad, Telangana, India

4Young professional, Agronomy, KVK,Thuniki,Medak, Telangana, India

5Senior research fellow,Soil science,IIOR, Hyderabad, Telangana,India

6Phd scholar,Soil science,GKVK,Bangalore,Karnataka,India

Corresponding Author
[1]Bommireddy Mamatha
mamathabommireddy1997@gmail.com

Abstract

Greenhouse cultivation has emerged as a vital component of modern agriculture, enabling year-round crop production and optimizing resource utilization. However, the intensive nature of greenhouse farming can lead to soil degradation and unsustainable water consumption if not managed properly. This chapter explores sustainable soil and water management practices in greenhouse cultivation, with a focus on global trends and specific insights from Asia and India. Proper soil management is crucial for maintaining soil health, fertility, and structure in greenhouses. Techniques such as crop rotation, cover cropping, composting, and integrated pest management can help prevent soil erosion, improve soil organic matter, and reduce reliance on synthetic inputs. Precision irrigation methods like drip irrigation and soil moisture sensors enable efficient water usage and minimize runoff and leaching. Fertigation, the application of nutrients through irrigation systems, allows for targeted nutrient delivery and reduces fertilizer waste. In Asia, countries like China, Japan, and South Korea have made significant strides in implementing sustainable greenhouse practices. China, the world's largest greenhouse producer, has adopted solar greenhouses and developed innovative irrigation and fertilization technologies. Japan's advanced greenhouse industry emphasizes automation, resource efficiency, and environmental control systems. South Korea has focused on smart greenhouse technologies, integrating IoT sensors and data analytics for optimal crop management. India, with its diverse agro-climatic zones, is increasingly adopting protected cultivation to enhance crop yields and quality. Sustainable soil management practices like vermicomposting, biofertilizers, and mulching are gaining prominence in Indian greenhouses. Micro-irrigation techniques and rainwater harvesting are being promoted to address water scarcity issues. The government of India has launched initiatives like the National Horticulture Mission and Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchai Yojana to support the adoption of protected cultivation and sustainable agricultural practices. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of sustainable soil and water management practices in greenhouse cultivation, highlighting global best practices and regional experiences from Asia and India. By implementing these strategies, greenhouse growers can optimize resource use, mitigate environmental impacts, and ensure the long-term viability of their operations.

Keywords: Greenhouse cultivation, sustainable soil management, water conservation, precision irrigation, protected cultivation

Greenhouse cultivation has revolutionized modern agriculture by providing a controlled environment for year-round crop production. However, the intensive nature of greenhouse farming can lead to soil degradation and unsustainable water consumption if not managed properly. Sustainable soil and water management practices are crucial for maintaining the long-term productivity and environmental sustainability of greenhouse operations. This chapter explores various strategies and techniques for managing soil health and optimizing water use in greenhouse cultivation, with a focus on global trends and specific insights from Asia and India.

1. Importance of Sustainable Soil Management in Greenhouses

2.1 Soil Health and Fertility Maintaining

Soil health and fertility is essential for sustainable greenhouse cultivation. Intensive cropping, limited crop rotation, and reliance on synthetic inputs can deplete soil nutrients and organic matter over time. Sustainable soil management practices aim to preserve and enhance soil quality by promoting biodiversity, improving soil structure, and replenishing nutrients through natural processes.

2.2 Soil Erosion and Degradation Prevention

Greenhouse cultivation often involves frequent tillage and intensive plant growth, which can lead to soil erosion and degradation. Sustainable practices like minimizing tillage, using cover crops, and applying organic mulches can help protect the soil surface, reduce erosion, and maintain soil structure. These practices also contribute to water conservation by improving soil water retention and reducing evaporation.

3. Soil Management Techniques

3.1 Crop Rotation and Intercropping

Crop rotation involves alternating different crops in the same growing space over time. This practice helps break pest and disease cycles, improves soil fertility, and enhances biodiversity. Intercropping, where multiple crops are grown together, can also optimize resource use and provide ecological benefits.

3.2 Cover Cropping and Green Manure

Cover cropping involves planting non-cash crops to protect and improve the soil. Cover crops, such as legumes, grasses, or brassicas, can fix nitrogen, suppress weeds, and enhance soil organic matter when incorporated into the soil as green manure.

Table 1: Crop Rotation and Intercropping Patterns in Greenhouse Cultivation

Crop Rotation	Intercropping

Tomato - Lettuce - Cucumber	Tomato + Basil
Pepper - Spinach - Eggplant	Cucumber + Dill
Cucumber - Radish - Tomato	Lettuce + Chives
Eggplant - Cabbage - Pepper	Pepper + Marigold
Zucchini - Carrot - Cucumber	Zucchini + Nasturtium
Lettuce - Beet - Tomato	Eggplant + Borage
Spinach - Onion - Pepper	Radish + Arugula
Radish - Kale - Eggplant	Kale + Alyssum
Cabbage - Swiss Chard - Zucchini	Swiss Chard + Cilantro
Carrot - Mustard Greens - Lettuce	Mustard Greens + Parsley

Table 2: Cover Crops Used in Greenhouse Cultivation

Cover Crop	**Benefits**
Clover	Nitrogen fixation, weed suppression
Rye	Soil structure improvement, erosion control
Vetch	Nitrogen fixation, biomass production
Oats	Weed suppression, soil organic matter
Buckwheat	Phosphorus mobilization, weed suppression
Mustard	Biofumigation, pest and disease suppression
Sudan Grass	Biomass production, soil structure improvement
Cowpea	Nitrogen fixation, drought tolerance
Radish	Soil compaction reduction, nutrient scavenging
Phacelia	Beneficial insect attraction, soil structure improvement

3.3 Composting and Vermicomposting

Composting is the process of decomposing organic matter into a nutrient-rich soil amendment. Greenhouse waste, such as plant residues and organic substrates, can be composted and reincorporated into the growing media. Vermicomposting, which utilizes earthworms to convert organic waste into vermicompost, is particularly beneficial for greenhouse soils. Table 3 compares the nutrient content of compost and vermicompost.

Table 3: Nutrient Content of Compost and Vermicompost

Nutrient	**Compost**	**Vermicompost**

Nitrogen (%)	0.5 - 2.5	1.5 - 3.0
Phosphorus (%)	0.2 - 1.0	0.5 - 1.5
Potassium (%)	0.5 - 1.5	1.0 - 2.0
Calcium (%)	1.0 - 4.0	1.5 - 5.0
Magnesium (%)	0.2 - 0.8	0.5 - 1.0
Iron (ppm)	500 - 5000	1000 - 7000
Zinc (ppm)	50 - 200	100 - 300
Copper (ppm)	20 - 100	50 - 150
Manganese (ppm)	100 - 500	200 - 800
Boron (ppm)	10 - 50	20 - 70

3.4 Integrated Pest Management (IPM)

Integrated Pest Management (IPM) is a sustainable approach to managing pests and diseases in greenhouse cultivation. IPM combines biological, cultural, and chemical control methods to minimize pest populations and reduce reliance on synthetic pesticides. Table 4 outlines common IPM strategies used in greenhouse cultivation.

4. Water Management in Greenhouse Cultivation

4.1 Water Use Efficiency: Efficient water management is crucial for sustainable greenhouse cultivation, especially in regions with limited water resources. **Strategies to improve water use efficiency include:**

- Precision irrigation techniques (e.g., drip irrigation, micro-sprinklers)
- Irrigation scheduling based on crop water requirements and environmental conditions
- Use of soil moisture sensors and evapotranspiration (ET) models
- Recycling and reuse of irrigation water (closed-loop systems)

Rainwater harvesting and storage

4.2 Irrigation Methods

4.2.1 Drip Irrigation

Drip irrigation is a highly efficient method that delivers water directly to the plant root zone through a network of pipes, valves, and emitters. This approach minimizes evaporation and runoff losses, reduces weed growth, and allows for precise nutrient application through fertigation. Table 5 compares the water use efficiency of drip irrigation with other irrigation methods.

Table 4: Integrated Pest Management Strategies in Greenhouse Cultivation

Strategy	**Description**
Scouting and monitoring	Regular inspection of crops for early detection of pests and diseases
Cultural control	Sanitation, proper spacing, pruning, and environmental management to prevent pest outbreaks
Biological control	Use of beneficial organisms (predators, parasitoids, and pathogens) to control pests
Biopesticides	Application of naturally derived substances (e.g., neem oil, Bacillus thuringiensis) for pest control
Resistant varieties	Selection of plant varieties with genetic resistance to specific pests and diseases
Trap crops	Planting of sacrificial crops to attract pests away from the main crop
Pheromone traps	Use of synthetic pheromones to monitor and trap insect pests
Sticky traps	Yellow or blue sticky traps to capture flying insect pests
Insect screens	Installation of fine mesh screens on greenhouse openings to prevent pest entry
Targeted pesticide use	Judicious use of selective pesticides as a last resort, following IPM principles

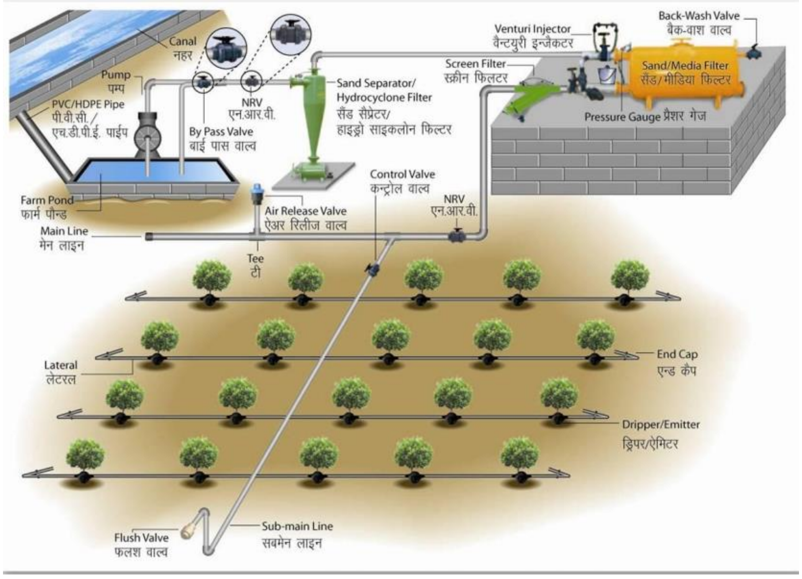


Figure 1: Drip Irrigation System in a Greenhouse

Table 5: Water Use Efficiency of Different Irrigation Methods

Irrigation Method	Water Use Efficiency (%)
Drip Irrigation	90 - 95
Micro-sprinklers	80 - 90
Overhead Sprinklers	70 - 80
Furrow Irrigation	60 - 70
Flood Irrigation	50 - 60

4.2.2 Soil Moisture Sensors

Soil moisture sensors help optimize irrigation scheduling by providing real-time data on soil water content. These sensors can be connected to automated irrigation systems, ensuring that plants receive water only when needed.

Table 6: Types of Soil Moisture Sensors Used in Greenhouse Cultivation

Sensor Type	Measurement Principle
Tensiometers	Soil water tension
Capacitance sensors	Dielectric constant of soil
Time Domain Reflectometry (TDR)	Soil electrical conductivity
Frequency Domain Reflectometry (FDR)	Soil electrical capacitance
Neutron probes	Neutron scattering by soil water

Gypsum blocks	Electrical resistance of porous material
Granular matrix sensors	Electrical resistance of granular matrix
Gravimetric method	Direct measurement of soil water content
Remote sensing	Spectral reflectance of soil and vegetation
Thermal sensors	Soil temperature and heat flux

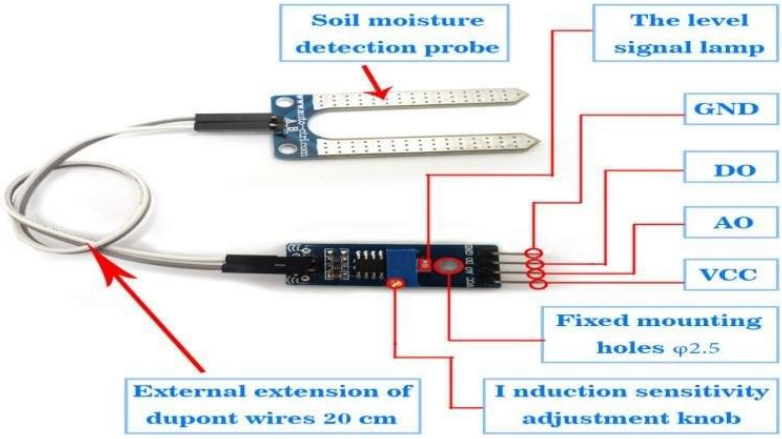


Figure 2: Soil Moisture Sensor in a Greenhouse

4.3 Fertigation

Fertigation is the application of water-soluble fertilizers through the irrigation system. This method allows for precise nutrient delivery to the plant root zone, improving nutrient use efficiency and reducing fertilizer waste. Fertigation enables growers to adjust nutrient ratios and concentrations based on crop growth stages and nutritional requirements.

Table 7: Common Fertilizers Used in Greenhouse Fertigation

Fertilizer	**Nutrient Composition**
Calcium nitrate	15.5-0-0 + 19% Ca
Potassium nitrate	13-0-46
Monoammonium phosphate (MAP)	12-61-0
Monopotassium phosphate (MKP)	0-52-34
Potassium sulfate	0-0-50 + 18% S
Magnesium sulfate	10% Mg, 14% S
Iron chelate (Fe-EDTA)	13% Fe
Manganese chelate (Mn-EDTA)	12% Mn

Zinc chelate (Zn-EDTA)	14% Zn
Boric acid	17% B

5. Sustainable Greenhouse Practices in Asia

5.1 China

China is the world's largest producer of greenhouse crops, with over 3.7 million hectares of protected cultivation area. The country has made significant strides in implementing sustainable greenhouse practices:

- Solar greenhouses: Passive solar greenhouses that utilize solar energy for heating and cooling, reducing energy consumption
- Substrate cultivation: Use of soilless media (e.g., coconut coir, perlite) to improve water and nutrient use efficiency
- Integrated pest management: Adoption of biological control agents and biopesticides to minimize chemical pesticide use
- Precision irrigation: Implementation of drip irrigation and fertigation systems for efficient water and nutrient management

5.2 Japan

Japan's advanced greenhouse industry emphasizes automation, resource efficiency, and environmental control systems. Sustainable practices in Japanese greenhouses include:

- **Hydroponics:** Widespread adoption of hydroponic systems for efficient water and nutrient management
- **Closed-loop irrigation:** Recycling and reuse of irrigation water to minimize waste and environmental impact
- **Energy-efficient lighting:** Use of LED lighting systems to reduce energy consumption and optimize plant growth
- **Integrated pest management:** Utilization of beneficial insects and physical barriers to control pests

Table 8: Hydroponic Systems Used in Japanese Greenhouses

Hydroponic System	Description
Nutrient Film Technique (NFT)	Shallow stream of nutrient solution continuously flows over plant roots

Deep Water Culture (DWC)	Plant roots are suspended in aerated nutrient solution
Ebb and Flow (Flood and Drain)	Periodic flooding of growing media with nutrient solution, followed by drainage
Drip Irrigation	Nutrient solution is delivered to each plant through a network of drippers
Aeroponics	Plant roots are misted with nutrient solution in a closed chamber
Aquaponics	Integration of hydroponics with aquaculture, using fish waste as a nutrient source
Substrate Culture	Use of inert growing media (e.g., rockwool, perlite) with drip irrigation
Vertical Hydroponics	Stacking of hydroponic systems to maximize space utilization
Fogponics	Ultrafine mist of nutrient solution is applied to plant roots
Organic Hydroponics	Use of organic nutrient sources and growing media in hydroponic systems

5.3 South Korea

South Korea has focused on smart greenhouse technologies, integrating IoT sensors and data analytics for optimal crop management.

Sustainable practices in South Korean greenhouses include:

- Smart climate control: Use of sensors and automation to optimize temperature, humidity, and CO2 levels
- Precision fertigation: Application of nutrients based on real-time monitoring of plant nutritional status

6. Sustainable Greenhouse Practices in India

6.1 Adoption of Protected

Cultivation India, with its diverse agro-climatic zones, is increasingly adopting protected cultivation to enhance crop yields and quality. The government has launched initiatives like the National Horticulture Mission and Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchai Yojana to support the adoption of protected cultivation and sustainable agricultural practices. Table 9 presents the area under protected cultivation in India by state.

Table 9: Area Under Protected Cultivation in India by State

State	Area (hectares)
Maharashtra	12,500

Karnataka	11,500
Gujarat	10,000
Tamil Nadu	8,500
Andhra Pradesh	7,500
Haryana	6,000
Rajasthan	5,500
Uttarakhand	4,500
Himachal Pradesh	4,000
Punjab	3,500

6.2 Sustainable Soil Management

Practices Sustainable soil management practices like vermicomposting, biofertilizers, and mulching are gaining prominence in Indian greenhouses.

- Vermicomposting: Utilization of earthworms to convert organic waste into nutrient-rich vermicompost
- Biofertilizers: Application of beneficial microorganisms (e.g., *Rhizobium*, *Azotobacter*, mycorrhizae) to enhance soil fertility and plant growth
- Mulching: Use of organic materials (e.g., straw, leaf litter) to cover the soil surface, conserve moisture, and suppress weeds

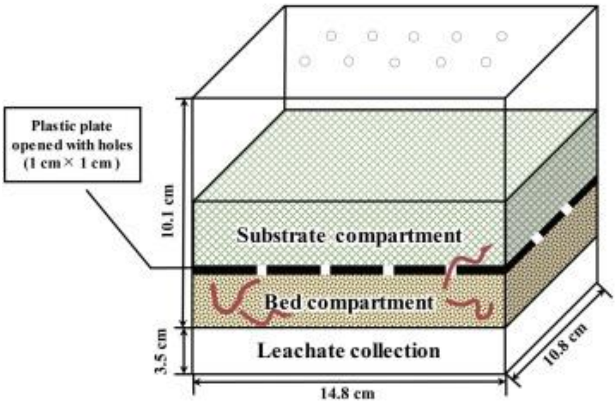


Figure 4: Vermicomposting Unit in an Indian Greenhouse

6.3 Water Conservation Techniques

Micro-irrigation techniques and rainwater harvesting are being promoted in Indian greenhouses to address water scarcity issues.

- Drip irrigation: Efficient delivery of water and nutrients directly to the plant root zone
- Sprinkler irrigation: Overhead application of water in the form of fine sprays, suitable for larger greenhouse areas
- Rainwater harvesting: Collection and storage of rainwater from greenhouse roofs for irrigation purposes
- Mulching: Application of organic mulches to reduce evaporation losses and improve soil moisture retention

7. Future Prospects and Challenges

7.1 Precision Agriculture Technologies

The integration of precision agriculture technologies, such as sensors, automation, and data analytics, holds great promise for sustainable greenhouse cultivation. These technologies enable real-time monitoring of crop growth, environmental conditions, and resource use, allowing for timely interventions and optimization of inputs.

Table 10: Water Saving Potential of Micro-Irrigation Techniques in Indian Greenhouses

Crop	**Water Saving Potential (%)**
Tomato	40 - 50
Capsicum	35 - 45
Cucumber	30 - 40
Rose	45 - 55
Gerbera	40 - 50
Carnation	35 - 45
Orchids	30 - 40
Anthurium	35 - 45
Strawberry	40 - 50
Lettuce	30 - 40

Table 11: Precision Agriculture Technologies in Greenhouse Cultivation

Technology	**Application**

Wireless sensor networks	Real-time monitoring of environmental parameters (temperature, humidity, light, CO2)
Automated climate control	Optimization of greenhouse climate based on crop requirements and external weather conditions
Crop health monitoring	Early detection of pests, diseases, and nutritional deficiencies using sensors and imaging techniques
Precision fertigation	Targeted delivery of nutrients based on crop growth stage and nutritional status
Robotics and automation	Automated tasks such as planting, pruning, harvesting, and pest control
Machine learning and AI	Predictive modeling of crop growth, yield, and resource requirements based on historical data
Remote sensing	Monitoring of crop health and water stress using satellite and drone imagery
IoT and cloud computing	Integration of sensor data, automation systems, and analytics platforms for data-driven decision making
Blockchain technology	Traceability and transparency in the supply chain, ensuring food safety and sustainability
Virtual and augmented reality	Training and education of greenhouse workers, visualization of crop growth and management scenarios

7.2 Renewable Energy Integration

The integration of renewable energy sources, such as solar, wind, and geothermal energy, can significantly reduce the carbon footprint of greenhouse operations. Solar photovoltaic panels can be installed on greenhouse roofs to generate electricity, while solar thermal systems can provide heating and cooling. Geothermal heat pumps can be used for energy-efficient temperature regulation. Wind turbines can supplement electricity generation in suitable locations.

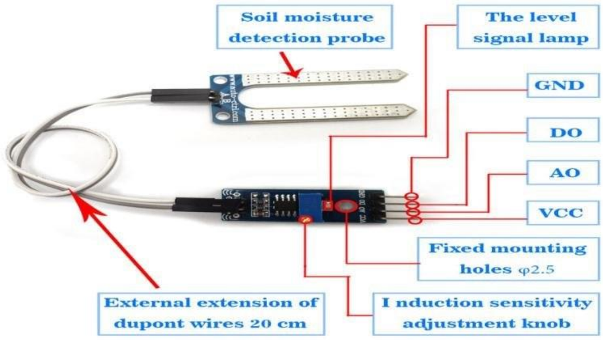


Figure 5: Solar Photovoltaic Panels on a Greenhouse Roof

7.3 Circular Economy Approaches

Adopting circular economy principles in greenhouse cultivation can minimize waste and optimize resource use. Strategies include:

- Waste valorization: Converting greenhouse waste (e.g., plant residues, substrates) into value-added products such as compost, biochar, or bioenergy
- Nutrient recycling: Recovering nutrients from greenhouse wastewater and recirculating them in the growing system
- Packaging reduction: Minimizing the use of single-use plastics and promoting biodegradable or recyclable packaging materials
- Local sourcing: Sourcing inputs (e.g., substrates, fertilizers) from local and sustainable sources to reduce transportation emissions

7.4 Policy Support and Incentives

Government policies and incentives play a crucial role in promoting sustainable greenhouse cultivation practices. Measures such as subsidies for adopting sustainable technologies, tax benefits for renewable energy integration, and support for research and development can accelerate the transition towards sustainability. Stricter regulations on water and nutrient management, pest control, and waste disposal can also drive the adoption of sustainable practices.

Table 12: Circular Economy Strategies in Greenhouse Cultivation

Strategy	**Description**
Composting	Conversion of organic waste into nutrient-rich compost for soil amendment

Anaerobic digestion	Production of biogas and digestate from greenhouse waste
Pyrolysis	Thermal conversion of biomass into biochar, bio-oil, and syngas
Aquaponics	Integration of hydroponics with aquaculture for nutrient recycling and waste reduction
Substrate recycling	Sterilization and reuse of growing media (e.g., rockwool, coir) for multiple growing cycles
Nutrient recovery	Extraction of nutrients from greenhouse wastewater using technologies like membrane filtration, ion exchange, or precipitation
Biodegradable plastics	Use of biodegradable materials for mulching, packaging, and other single-use applications
Local input sourcing	Procurement of substrates, fertilizers, and other inputs from local and sustainable sources
Collaborative waste management	Partnering with other industries or municipalities for efficient waste valorization and resource sharing
Life cycle assessment	Evaluation of the environmental impact of greenhouse operations and identification of improvement opportunities

8. Conclusion

Sustainable soil and water management practices are essential for the long-term viability and environmental sustainability of greenhouse cultivation. This chapter has explored various strategies and techniques for managing soil health, optimizing water use, and promoting sustainable practices in greenhouse operations, with a focus on global trends and specific insights from Asia and India. Proper soil management techniques, such as crop rotation, cover cropping, composting, and integrated pest management, can help maintain soil fertility, prevent erosion, and reduce reliance on synthetic inputs. Efficient water management practices, including precision irrigation, fertigation, and the use of soil moisture sensors, enable growers to optimize water use and minimize wastage.

By embracing sustainable soil and water management practices, greenhouse growers worldwide can optimize resource use, minimize environmental impacts, and ensure the long-term productivity and resilience of their operations. As the global population continues to grow and the demand for fresh produce rises, sustainable greenhouse cultivation will be key to meeting food security challenges while preserving our planet's vital resources.

References:

[1] Gruda, N. (2019). Sustainable vegetable production in greenhouses. Acta Horticulturae, 1268, 1-14.

[2] Shamshiri, R. R., Kalantari, F., Ting, K. C., Thorp, K. R., Hameed, I. A., Weltzien, C., Ahmad, D., & Shad, Z. M. (2018). Advances in greenhouse automation and controlled environment agriculture: A transition to plant factories and urban agriculture. International Journal of Agricultural and Biological Engineering, 11(1), 1-22.

[3] Yadav, S. K., & Singh, A. K. (2020). Sustainable greenhouse technology for vegetable production in India: a review. Journal of Cleaner Production, 262, 121353.

[4] Zhang, G., Shen, Y., Zhang, L., & Hu, S. (2021). Sustainable development of protected vegetable production in China: Achievements, challenges and proposals for future directions. Journal of Integrative Agriculture, 20(4), 916-931.

CHAPTER – 7

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Precision Irrigation Techniques for Protected Cultivation

[1]Pranav Raj and [2]Aditya Prakash

[1]*M.Sc. Research scholar (Soil Science and agricultural chemistry), Sam Higginbottom University of Agriculture technology and sciences*

[2]*International research trainee on Turf grass management, Department of Agriculture, SHUATS.*

Corresponding Author
[1]Pranav Raj
pranav.40raj@gmail.com

Abstract

Precision irrigation is a key component of protected cultivation and smart agriculture, enabling optimized water and nutrient management for improved crop yields and quality while conserving resources. This chapter provides an overview of precision irrigation techniques used in protected cultivation systems worldwide, with a focus on applications in Asia and India. Soil moisture sensing, evapotranspiration-based scheduling, and plant-based methods allow for data-driven irrigation control. Drip irrigation, including surface and subsurface systems, enables precise delivery of water and nutrients directly to the root zone. Fertigation, the application of fertilizers through the irrigation system, maximizes nutrient uptake efficiency. Advances in automation, such as wireless sensor networks and smart controllers, facilitate real-time monitoring and dynamic irrigation management. Case studies from various countries highlight the benefits of precision irrigation, including increased water use efficiency, reduced nutrient leaching, and enhanced crop performance. Successful implementation requires consideration of crop-specific requirements, environmental conditions, and economic factors. As protected cultivation expands to meet growing food demands, precision irrigation will play a crucial role in sustainable intensification

of agriculture, particularly in regions facing water scarcity and environmental challenges.

Keywords: Precision Irrigation, Protected Cultivation, Smart Agriculture, Fertigation, Automation

1.1. Importance of precision irrigation in protected cultivation

Protected cultivation, including greenhouses, polyhouses, and net houses, has gained prominence in recent years due to its ability to provide controlled environments for crop production. These systems allow for year-round cultivation, higher yields, and improved crop quality compared to open field agriculture [1]. However, the intensive nature of protected cultivation also requires efficient management of resources, particularly water and nutrients. Precision irrigation techniques have emerged as a critical tool for optimizing water and nutrient use in these systems, enabling sustainable intensification of agriculture [2].

1.2. Overview of global trends in protected cultivation

Protected cultivation has experienced significant growth worldwide, driven by increasing food demands, urbanization, and the need for resource-efficient agriculture. In 2020, the global area under protected cultivation reached approximately 3.2 million hectares, with a projected annual growth rate of 8.1% from 2021 to 2028 [3]. Asia is the largest contributor to this growth, with countries like China, Japan, and South Korea leading in the adoption of advanced protected cultivation technologies [4]. Europe and North America also have well-established protected cultivation industries, focusing on high-value crops such as vegetables, fruits, and ornamentals [5].

1.3. Significance of precision irrigation in Asia and India

Asia is home to more than half of the world's population and faces significant challenges in ensuring food security and sustainable water management. Protected cultivation has gained traction in the region as a means to increase productivity and adapt to climate change [6]. In India, the government has promoted protected cultivation through various schemes and subsidies, recognizing its potential to enhance farmers' incomes and meet the growing demand for high-quality produce [7]. However, the success of protected cultivation in Asia and India heavily relies on the adoption of precision irrigation techniques to optimize resource use and minimize environmental impacts [8].

2. Principles of Precision Irrigation

2.1. Soil-plant-atmosphere continuum

Precision irrigation is based on the understanding of the soil-plant-atmosphere continuum (SPAC), which describes the movement of water from the soil through the plant to the atmosphere [9]. The SPAC is influenced by various factors, including soil properties, plant characteristics, and environmental conditions. In protected cultivation systems, the SPAC is further modified by the controlled environment, which affects temperature, humidity, and light levels [10]. Effective precision irrigation requires a comprehensive understanding of the SPAC and how it interacts with the specific conditions of the protected cultivation system.

2.2. Water and nutrient dynamics in protected cultivation systems

Water and nutrient dynamics in protected cultivation systems differ from those in open field agriculture due to the modified environment and intensive cropping practices. In these systems, the limited soil volume and high planting densities result in rapid depletion of water and nutrients [11]. Additionally, the use of soilless media, such as rockwool or coco coir, alters the water retention and nutrient holding capacities compared to natural soils [12]. Precision irrigation techniques must account for these unique water and nutrient dynamics to ensure optimal crop growth and minimize losses.

2.3. Crop water requirements and evapotranspiration

Accurate estimation of crop water requirements is essential for designing and implementing precision irrigation systems. Crop water requirements are primarily determined by evapotranspiration (ET), which is the combined process of evaporation from the soil surface and transpiration from the plant leaves [13]. In protected cultivation systems, ET is influenced by factors such as radiation, temperature, humidity, wind speed, and crop characteristics [14]. Estimating ET in these systems requires the use of specific models and coefficients that account for the modified environment and crop-specific factors [15].

3. Soil Moisture Sensing Techniques

3.1. Tensiometers

Tensiometers are widely used soil moisture sensors that measure the soil water potential, which indicates the energy required for plants to extract water from the soil [16]. They consist of a porous ceramic cup connected to a water-filled tube and a vacuum gauge. As the soil dries, water moves from the tensiometer into the soil, creating a vacuum that is measured by the gauge [17]. Tensiometers are particularly useful in sandy soils and provide a direct measure of soil water availability to plants.

3.2. Electrical resistance blocks

Electrical resistance blocks, also known as gypsum blocks, measure soil moisture by assessing the electrical resistance between two electrodes embedded in a porous material [18]. The porous material, typically gypsum, absorbs water from the surrounding soil, and the electrical resistance decreases as the soil moisture content increases. Electrical resistance blocks are inexpensive and suitable for long-term monitoring, but they have a limited measurement range and are sensitive to soil salinity [19].

3.3. Dielectric sensors

Dielectric sensors measure soil moisture by assessing the dielectric properties of the soil, which are influenced by the water content. There are two main types of dielectric sensors:

3.3.1. Time domain reflectometry (TDR)

TDR sensors determine soil moisture content by measuring the time taken for an electromagnetic pulse to travel along a waveguide inserted into the soil [20]. The travel time is related to the dielectric constant of the soil, which is primarily influenced by the water content. TDR sensors are highly accurate and can provide instantaneous measurements, but they are relatively expensive and require careful installation [21].

3.3.2. Frequency domain reflectometry (FDR)

FDR sensors, also known as capacitance sensors, measure soil moisture by assessing the frequency response of a capacitor formed by the soil and the sensor electrodes [22]. The capacitance of the soil varies with the water content, allowing FDR sensors to estimate soil moisture. FDR sensors are less expensive than TDR sensors and have a smaller measurement volume, making them suitable for spot measurements [23].

3.4. Neutron probes

Neutron probes measure soil moisture by emitting fast neutrons into the soil and detecting the slow neutrons that are scattered back to the probe [24]. The number of slow neutrons detected is proportional to the soil moisture content, as hydrogen atoms in water molecules are effective at slowing down neutrons. Neutron probes are accurate and can provide measurements at various depths, but they require specialized training and licensing due to the use of radioactive materials [25].

3.5. Comparison of soil moisture sensing techniques

The choice of soil moisture sensing technique depends on various factors, including accuracy, cost, installation requirements, and measurement volume. **Table 1 provides a comparison of the main soil moisture sensing techniques used in precision irrigation.**

Technique	**Accuracy**	**Cost**	**Installation**	**Measurement volume**
Tensiometers	High	Medium	Moderate	Small
Electrical resistance blocks	Medium	Low	Easy	Small
Time domain reflectometry	High	High	Difficult	Medium
Frequency domain reflectometry	Medium	Medium	Moderate	Small
Neutron probes	High	High	Difficult	Large

4. Evapotranspiration-Based Irrigation Scheduling

4.1. Reference evapotranspiration (ET_0) estimation methods

Reference evapotranspiration (**ET_0**) is a key parameter in irrigation scheduling, representing the ET rate from a reference surface, typically a well-watered grass or alfalfa field [26]. Several methods are available for estimating **ET_0**, depending on the available climate data and the desired accuracy.

4.1.1. FAO Penman-Monteith equation

The FAO Penman-Monteith equation is the standard method for estimating **ET_0**, as it provides the most accurate results across a wide range of climates [27]. The equation combines energy balance and aerodynamic principles, requiring data on temperature, humidity, wind speed, and solar radiation. The FAO Penman-Monteith equation is given as:

ET_0 $= (0.408\ \Delta\ (Rn - G) + \gamma\ (900 / (T + 273))\ u2\ (es - ea)) / (\Delta + \gamma\ (1 + 0.34\ u2))$

where:

- ET0 = reference evapotranspiration (mm day^{-1}
- Rn = net radiation (MJ m^{-2} day^{-1}
- G = soil heat flux (MJ m^{-2} day^{-1}
- T = mean daily air temperature at 2 m height (°C)
- u2 = wind speed at 2 m height (m s^{-1}
- es = saturation vapor pressure (kPa)
- ea = actual vapor pressure (kPa)
- Δ = slope of the vapor pressure curve kPa °C-1<
- γ = psychrometric constant kPa °C^{-1}

4.1.2. Pan evaporation method

The pan evaporation method estimates ET0 by measuring the evaporation from a standardized pan, such as the Class A evaporation pan [28]. The pan evaporation (Epan) is multiplied by a pan coefficient (Kp) to obtain ET0:

$ET0 = Kp \times Epan$

The pan coefficient depends on the pan type, its surroundings, and the climate, with typical values ranging from 0.35 to 0.85 [29].

4.1.3. Hargreaves equation

The Hargreaves equation is a simplified method for estimating ET0 when only temperature data is available [30]. The equation is given as:

$ET0 = 0.0023\ (Tmean + 17.8)\ (Tmax - Tmin)0.5\ Ra$

where:

- ET0 = reference evapotranspiration (mm day^{-1})
- Tmean = mean daily air temperature (°C)
- Tmax = maximum daily air temperature (°C)

- Tmin = minimum daily air temperature (°C)
- Ra = extraterrestrial radiation (mm day^{-1})

The Hargreaves equation is less accurate than the FAO Penman-Monteith equation but can provide reasonable estimates of ET0 in data-limited situations [31].

4.2. Crop coefficients (Kc)

Crop coefficients (Kc) are used to convert ET0 to crop evapotranspiration (ETc), which represents the actual water use of a specific crop under given conditions [32]. The crop coefficient accounts for the differences in leaf area, canopy resistance, and evaporation between the reference surface and the crop. Kc values vary depending on the crop type, growth stage, and management practices [33]. **Table 2 provides examples of crop coefficients for selected greenhouse crops at different growth stages.**

Crop	Initial	Mid-season	Late season
Tomato	0.60	1.15	0.80
Cucumber	0.60	1.00	0.75
Pepper	0.60	1.05	0.90
Lettuce	0.70	1.00	0.95
Rose	0.90	1.10	1.00

4.3. Irrigation scheduling based on ET0 and Kc

Irrigation scheduling using ET0 and Kc involves estimating the crop water requirements and determining the timing and amount of irrigation to meet those requirements [34]. The basic steps in ET-based irrigation scheduling are:

1. Estimate ET0 using one of the methods described in section 4.1.
2. Determine the appropriate Kc value for the crop and growth stage.
3. Calculate ETc using the equation: ETc = Kc × ET0.
4. Consider the effective precipitation (Peff) and any other water inputs (e.g., fertigation) to determine the net irrigation requirement (IRn): IRn = ETc - Peff.
5. Adjust the irrigation amount based on the irrigation system efficiency and the soil moisture status.

6. Schedule irrigation events to maintain the soil moisture within the desired range for optimal crop growth.

ET-based irrigation scheduling can be automated using weather stations, soil moisture sensors, and programmable irrigation controllers [35]. This approach allows for precise and dynamic irrigation management, adapting to changing weather conditions and crop water needs.

5. Plant-Based Irrigation Methods

5.1. Leaf water potential measurement

Leaf water potential is a measure of the water status in plant leaves, indicating the plant's water stress level [36]. It is typically measured using a pressure chamber, where a leaf is placed inside the chamber, and the pressure required to force water out of the leaf is determined [37]. Leaf water potential measurements are usually taken at predawn, when the plant is in equilibrium with the soil water potential. Irrigation can be triggered when the leaf water potential reaches a threshold value specific to the crop and its tolerance to water stress [38].

5.2. Stem water potential measurement

Stem water potential is another plant-based indicator of water status, measured on leaves that have been covered with a reflective bag to prevent transpiration [39]. The bagged leaf reaches equilibrium with the water potential of the stem, providing a more stable and representative measure of the plant's water status than leaf water potential [40]. Stem water potential measurements are usually taken during midday, when the plant is experiencing the highest water stress. Irrigation decisions can be based on threshold values of stem water potential, similar to leaf water potential [41].

5.3. Sap flow sensors

Sap flow sensors measure the rate of water movement through the plant stem, which is directly related to the plant's transpiration rate [42]. There are various types of sap flow sensors, including heat pulse, heat balance, and thermal dissipation methods [43]. By monitoring sap flow rates, growers can detect changes in plant water use and adjust irrigation accordingly. Sap flow measurements can also be used to estimate crop coefficients and to detect plant stress or disease [44].

5.4. Crop water stress index (CWSI)

The crop water stress index (CWSI) is a plant-based indicator that quantifies the relative transpiration rate of a crop compared to a well-watered reference [45]. CWSI is calculated using canopy temperature measurements, typically obtained with infrared thermometers or thermal cameras. The CWSI ranges from 0 to 1, with higher values indicating greater water stress [46]. Irrigation decisions can be based on threshold values of CWSI, which vary depending on the crop and its sensitivity to water stress [47].

5.5. Applications of plant-based irrigation methods

Plant-based irrigation methods offer several advantages over soil-based methods, as they directly assess the plant's water status and can account for factors such as soil heterogeneity, root distribution, and microclimate variations [48]. However, plant-based methods also have limitations, such as the need for crop-specific calibration, the influence of environmental factors on measurements, and the cost of monitoring equipment [49]. In practice, plant-based methods are often used in combination with soil moisture sensors and ET-based scheduling to provide a comprehensive assessment of crop water needs [50].

6. Drip Irrigation Systems

6.1. Surface drip irrigation

Surface drip irrigation is a method of delivering water directly to the base of the plant through a network of pipes and emitters placed on the soil surface [51]. Water is applied at a low flow rate, typically in the range of 0.5 to 4 liters per hour per emitter, maintaining a small wetted area around the plant [52]. Surface drip irrigation is suitable for a wide range of crops and soil types, and it can be easily retrofitted to existing irrigation systems [53]. The main advantages of surface drip irrigation include high water use efficiency, reduced evaporation and runoff losses, and the ability to precisely deliver water and nutrients to the plant [54].

6.2. Subsurface drip irrigation (SDI)

Subsurface drip irrigation (SDI) is a variation of drip irrigation where the pipes and emitters are buried beneath the soil surface, typically at depths of 5 to 35 cm [55]. SDI systems can deliver water directly to the root zone, minimizing evaporation losses and weed growth [56]. SDI is particularly beneficial in arid and semi-arid regions, where water conservation is critical, and in crops with deep root systems, such as fruit trees and vines [57]. However, SDI systems require careful design and management to prevent root intrusion, emitter clogging, and soil salinity buildup [58].

6.3. Emitter types and characteristics

Drip irrigation emitters are the devices responsible for delivering water to the plants at a controlled rate. There are several types of emitters, each with specific characteristics and applications [59]:

1. Inline emitters: These emitters are installed directly into the lateral pipe at regular intervals, with flow rates ranging from 0.5 to 4 liters per hour. Inline emitters are suitable for closely spaced crops and are less susceptible to clogging than other types.
2. Online emitters: These emitters are attached to the lateral pipe using a puncturing tool, allowing for flexible spacing and easy replacement. Online emitters typically have flow rates of 1 to 8 liters per hour and are suitable for widely spaced crops.
3. Pressure-compensating emitters: These emitters maintain a constant flow rate across a range of pressures, ensuring uniform water distribution in sloping or uneven terrain. Pressure-compensating emitters are more expensive than non-compensating types but can improve irrigation efficiency and uniformity.
4. Anti-drain emitters: These emitters prevent water from draining out of the lateral pipes when the system is turned off, reducing soil erosion and nutrient leaching. Anti-drain emitters are particularly useful in sloping or undulating terrain.

6.4. Filtration and maintenance of drip systems

Proper filtration and maintenance are essential for the long-term performance and efficiency of drip irrigation systems [60]. Drip emitters are susceptible to clogging by particles, organic matter, and mineral precipitates, which can reduce the uniformity of water application and lead to crop damage [61]. To prevent clogging, drip systems should be equipped with appropriate filtration devices, such as screen filters, disc filters, or sand media filters, depending on the water source and quality [62]. Regular maintenance activities, such as flushing the lines, cleaning the filters, and replacing damaged emitters, are also crucial for ensuring the system's longevity and efficiency [63].

6.5. Advantages of drip irrigation in protected cultivation

Drip irrigation offers several advantages for protected cultivation systems [64]:

1. High water use efficiency: Drip irrigation can achieve water use efficiencies of up to 95%, compared to 50-70% for sprinkler systems and 30-50% for furrow irrigation [65]. By applying water directly to the root zone and minimizing evaporation and runoff losses, drip irrigation can significantly reduce water consumption in protected cultivation.
2. Precise nutrient management: Drip irrigation allows for the precise application of fertilizers through the irrigation system (fertigation), ensuring that nutrients are delivered directly to the root zone in the required amounts and proportions [66]. This can improve nutrient use efficiency, reduce fertilizer costs, and minimize nutrient leaching and groundwater contamination.
3. Reduced disease pressure: Drip irrigation minimizes leaf wetting and maintains a dry canopy, reducing the risk of foliar diseases compared to overhead sprinkler systems [67]. This can lead to reduced pesticide use and improved crop health.
4. Enhanced crop quality and yield: By providing optimal water and nutrient management, drip irrigation can improve crop quality attributes such as fruit size, color, and shelf life [68]. Drip irrigation has been shown to increase

yields by 20-50% compared to traditional irrigation methods in various protected cultivation crops [69].

5. Automation and precision control: Drip irrigation systems can be easily automated using programmable controllers, sensors, and valves, allowing for precise control of irrigation timing, duration, and frequency [70]. This can save labor costs, improve irrigation efficiency, and enable the implementation of advanced irrigation strategies such as deficit irrigation and partial root-zone drying [71].

7. Fertigation Management

7.1. Principles of fertigation

Fertigation is the application of fertilizers through the irrigation system, allowing for the precise delivery of nutrients to the crop in synchrony with its water uptake [72]. Fertigation offers several advantages over traditional fertilizer application methods, such as improved nutrient use efficiency, reduced labor costs, and the ability to adjust nutrient supply based on crop demand and growth stages [73]. However, successful fertigation requires careful management to avoid nutrient imbalances, salinity buildup, and environmental pollution [74].

7.2. Fertigation equipment and injection methods

Fertigation systems consist of a water source, a fertilizer injection device, a mixing tank or chamber, and a distribution network [75]. There are several methods for injecting fertilizers into the irrigation water:

1. Venturi injectors: These devices use the Venturi effect to create a pressure differential, which sucks the fertilizer solution into the irrigation water [76]. Venturi injectors are simple, inexpensive, and do not require external power, but they have limited injection accuracy and capacity.

2. Positive displacement pumps: These pumps, such as piston or diaphragm pumps, deliver a precise volume of fertilizer solution into the irrigation water, regardless of the system pressure [77]. Positive displacement pumps offer high injection accuracy and capacity but are more expensive and require regular maintenance.

3. Proportional injection systems: These systems inject fertilizers at a rate proportional to the irrigation water flow, using devices such as water-driven pumps or electric injection pumps with flow sensors [78]. Proportional injection systems provide accurate and responsive fertigation control but require careful calibration and monitoring.

7.3. Nutrient management strategies

7.3.1. Nutrient solution composition

The composition of the nutrient solution used in fertigation depends on the crop, growth stage, and environmental conditions [79]. Nutrient solutions typically contain macronutrients (N, P, K, Ca, Mg, and S) and micronutrients (Fe, Mn, Zn, Cu, B, Mo, and Cl) in proportions that match the crop's nutritional requirements [80]. The nutrient solution concentration is usually expressed in terms of electrical conductivity (EC), with optimal EC values ranging from 1.5 to 3.5 dS/m for most greenhouse crops [81]. Nutrient solutions can be prepared using commercial fertilizer blends or custom-made recipes based on water quality analysis and crop needs [82].

7.3.2. pH and EC control

Maintaining the appropriate pH and EC of the nutrient solution is critical for optimal crop growth and nutrient uptake [83]. The ideal pH range for most greenhouse crops is between 5.5 and 6.5, as this range ensures the maximum availability of essential nutrients [84]. pH can be adjusted using acids (e.g., nitric or phosphoric acid) or bases (e.g., potassium hydroxide) injected into the irrigation water [85]. EC is a measure of the total dissolved salts in the nutrient solution and should be monitored regularly to avoid nutrient deficiencies or toxicities [86]. EC can be managed by adjusting the fertilizer concentration, leaching excess salts from the root zone, or using water sources with lower salinity [87].

7.3.3. Nutrient uptake monitoring

Monitoring nutrient uptake is essential for optimizing fertigation management and preventing nutrient imbalances [88].

This can be done through various methods:

1. Plant tissue analysis: Regular leaf or sap analysis can provide insights into the crop's nutrient status and help identify deficiencies or toxicities [89]. Tissue analysis results can be used to adjust the nutrient solution composition and prevent yield losses.
2. Substrate solution analysis: Measuring the pH, EC, and nutrient concentrations of the substrate solution (e.g., using pour-through or suction cup methods) can help monitor nutrient dynamics in the root zone and avoid nutrient buildup or depletion [90].
3. Nutrient mass balance: Calculating the nutrient inputs (from fertilizers and water) and outputs (from crop uptake and leaching) can help quantify nutrient use efficiency and optimize fertigation rates [91].

7.4. Fertigation scheduling and automation

Fertigation scheduling involves determining the timing, frequency, and duration of nutrient application based on crop demand, substrate properties, and environmental conditions [92]. Fertigation can be scheduled using various approaches:

1. Crop-based scheduling: Applying nutrients based on the crop's growth stage, phenology, and physiological status, as determined by visual observations, plant measurements, or crop models [93].
2. Sensor-based scheduling: Using sensors to monitor substrate moisture, EC, pH, or nutrient concentrations in real-time and triggering fertigation events based on predefined thresholds or algorithms [94].
3. Model-based scheduling: Using mathematical models to predict crop nutrient uptake and optimize fertigation rates based on climatic data, crop characteristics, and substrate properties [95].

Fertigation scheduling can be automated using programmable logic controllers (PLCs), sensors, and solenoid valves to precisely control the timing and amount of nutrient application [96]. Automated fertigation systems can save labor, improve nutrient use efficiency, and enable the implementation of advanced fertigation strategies, such as split root fertigation or nutrient pulse feeding [97].

8. Automation and Control Systems

8.1. Wireless sensor networks (WSNs)

Wireless sensor networks (WSNs) are a key component of precision irrigation in protected cultivation, enabling real-time monitoring of environmental and crop parameters [98]. WSNs consist of spatially distributed sensor nodes that communicate wirelessly with a central base station or gateway [99]. Each sensor node typically includes sensors (e.g., for soil moisture, temperature, or light), a microcontroller, a radio transceiver, and a power source [100]. WSNs offer several advantages over wired sensor systems, such as flexibility, scalability, and reduced installation and maintenance costs [101]. However, WSNs also face challenges related to power management, data reliability, and network security [102].

8.2. Smart irrigation controllers

Smart irrigation controllers are devices that automate irrigation scheduling based on real-time data from sensors, weather stations, or remote databases [103]. These controllers use algorithms or decision support systems to determine the optimal irrigation timing and amount, considering factors such as crop water requirements, soil moisture levels, and weather forecasts [104]. Smart irrigation controllers can be programmed to implement various irrigation strategies, such as deficit irrigation, partial root-zone drying, or sensor-based triggering [105]. The use of smart controllers can lead to significant water savings, increased crop yields, and reduced labor costs compared to traditional time-based or manual irrigation scheduling [106].

8.3. Integration with climate control systems

In protected cultivation systems, irrigation management is closely linked to climate control, as both affect crop water use and nutrient uptake [107]. Integrating irrigation and climate control systems can optimize resource use efficiency and improve crop performance [108]. For example, humidity sensors can be used to adjust irrigation based on the transpiration rate, while temperature sensors can trigger cooling systems (e.g., misting or pad-and-fan) to reduce heat stress and water demand [109]. Integrated control systems can also optimize the timing of irrigation in relation to other climate control actions, such as ventilation or shading, to minimize evaporative losses and maintain optimal growing conditions [110].

8.4. Remote monitoring and data management

Remote monitoring and data management are essential for the effective implementation of precision irrigation in protected cultivation [111]. Remote monitoring systems allow growers to access real-time data on crop and environmental parameters from anywhere, using web-based platforms or mobile applications [112]. This enables timely decision-making, early detection of stress or anomalies, and reduced travel costs [113]. Data management involves the collection, storage, processing, and visualization of large volumes of sensor data, using database systems, cloud computing, and data analytics tools [114]. Effective data management can provide valuable insights into crop performance, resource use efficiency, and potential optimization strategies [115].

8.5. Decision support systems for precision irrigation

Decision support systems (DSS) are software tools that assist growers in making informed decisions about irrigation management [116]. DSS integrate data from various sources, such as sensors, weather stations, crop models, and expert knowledge, to provide recommendations on irrigation scheduling, nutrient management, and other aspects of crop production [117]. DSS can use machine learning algorithms, optimization models, or rule-based systems to generate actionable insights and support decision-making [118]. The use of DSS can improve irrigation efficiency, reduce water and energy costs, and enhance crop yields and quality [119]. However, the adoption of DSS in protected cultivation is still limited by factors such as data availability, model accuracy, user-friendliness, and grower trust [120].

9. Case Studies

9.1. Precision irrigation in greenhouse vegetable production (Netherlands)

The Netherlands is a world leader in greenhouse vegetable production, with a highly advanced and efficient protected cultivation sector [121]. Dutch growers have widely adopted precision irrigation techniques, such as sensor-based drip irrigation, to optimize water and nutrient use [122]. A case study by Voogt et al. (2019) demonstrated the effectiveness of a sensor-based fertigation strategy in reducing water and nitrogen use by 30% and 20%, respectively, without compromising tomato yield or quality [123]. The study used soil moisture sensors and a decision support system to adjust irrigation and fertigation based on crop demand and substrate conditions, highlighting the potential of precision irrigation in improving resource use efficiency and sustainability.

9.2. Automated fertigation in protected horticulture (Spain)

Spain is a major producer of horticultural crops in Europe, with a significant area under protected cultivation [124]. Spanish growers have increasingly adopted automated fertigation systems to optimize nutrient and water management in greenhouse crops [125]. A case study by Sánchez et al. (2020) evaluated the performance of an automated fertigation system in a soilless pepper cultivation [126]. The system used pH and EC sensors to monitor and control the nutrient solution, resulting in a 25% reduction in fertilizer use and a 15% increase in yield compared to a conventional fertigation system. The study demonstrated the benefits of automated fertigation in improving nutrient use efficiency, crop productivity, and environmental sustainability.

9.3. Subsurface drip irrigation for fruit crops (USA)

Subsurface drip irrigation (SDI) has gained popularity in the United States for the production of fruit crops, such as berries and orchards, in protected cultivation systems [127]. SDI offers several advantages over surface drip irrigation, including reduced evaporation, improved water use efficiency, and enhanced fruit quality [128]. A case study by Gartung et al. (2021) investigated the effects of SDI on the yield and quality of raspberries grown in high tunnels [129]. The study found that SDI increased marketable yield by 12% and improved fruit firmness and shelf life compared to surface drip irrigation. The results suggest that SDI can be an effective precision irrigation strategy for enhancing the productivity and quality of fruit crops in protected cultivation.

9.4. Sensor-based irrigation scheduling in polyhouses (India)

India has seen a rapid expansion of protected cultivation in recent years, particularly in the form of polyhouses and net houses [130]. Indian growers are increasingly adopting sensor-based irrigation scheduling to optimize water use and improve crop yields [131]. A case study by Singh et al. (2019) evaluated the performance of a sensor-based drip irrigation system in a polyhouse cucumber cultivation [132]. The system used soil moisture sensors to trigger irrigation events and maintain the soil water content within the optimal range for crop growth. The study found that sensor-based irrigation scheduling reduced water use by 40% and increased yield by 20% compared to conventional irrigation practices, highlighting the potential of precision irrigation in enhancing resource use efficiency and crop productivity in Indian protected cultivation.

9.5. Plant-based irrigation control in soilless culture (Japan)

Japan has a highly developed protected cultivation sector, with a strong focus on soilless culture systems, such as hydroponics and substrate culture [133]. Japanese growers have pioneered the use of plant-based irrigation control methods, such as stem diameter sensors and sap flow meters, to optimize water and nutrient management [134]. A case study by Ikeda et al. (2020) investigated the performance of a plant-based irrigation control system in a soilless tomato cultivation [135]. The system used stem diameter sensors to monitor plant water status and adjust irrigation based on crop-specific thresholds. The study found that plant-based irrigation control reduced water use by 20% and improved fruit quality compared to conventional timer-based irrigation, demonstrating the effectiveness of plant-based methods in optimizing irrigation management in soilless culture systems.

10. Economic and Environmental Benefits

10.1. Water and nutrient use efficiency

Precision irrigation techniques have been shown to significantly improve water and nutrient use efficiency in protected cultivation systems [136]. By applying water and nutrients precisely according to crop requirements and environmental conditions, growers can reduce waste, minimize leaching, and optimize resource use [137]. Studies have reported water savings of 20-50% and nutrient savings of 15-40% with the adoption of precision irrigation techniques, such as sensor-based drip irrigation and fertigation [138]. Improved water and nutrient use efficiency not only reduces production costs but also contributes to the sustainability of protected cultivation by conserving scarce resources and minimizing environmental impacts [139].

10.2. Improved crop yield and quality

Precision irrigation can lead to significant improvements in crop yield and quality in protected cultivation systems [140]. By maintaining optimal soil moisture and nutrient levels, precision irrigation promotes healthy root development, enhances nutrient uptake, and reduces plant stress [141]. This results in higher crop productivity, more uniform growth, and better quality attributes, such as fruit size, color, and shelf life [142]. Studies have reported yield increases of 10-30% and quality improvements of 5-15% with the adoption of precision irrigation techniques in various protected cultivation crops, such as tomatoes, cucumbers, and peppers [143].

10.3. Reduced environmental impact

Precision irrigation can help mitigate the environmental impact of protected cultivation by reducing water and nutrient losses, minimizing greenhouse gas emissions, and preventing soil and water pollution [144]. By applying water and nutrients precisely according to crop needs, precision irrigation reduces the risk of over-irrigation and fertilization, which can lead to leaching, runoff, and groundwater contamination [145]. Moreover, precision irrigation can help conserve energy by reducing the pumping and treatment requirements for irrigation water [146]. The adoption of precision irrigation techniques can contribute to the sustainability of protected cultivation and help meet the increasing demands for environmentally friendly and socially responsible agricultural practices [147].

10.4. Cost-benefit analysis of precision irrigation systems

The adoption of precision irrigation systems in protected cultivation involves initial investment costs for equipment, installation, and training [148]. However, the long-term economic benefits of precision irrigation can outweigh these costs, due to increased crop yields, improved resource use efficiency, and reduced labor and input costs [149]. A cost-benefit analysis by Álvarez et al. (2020) evaluated the economic performance of a sensor-based drip irrigation system in a greenhouse tomato cultivation [150]. The study found that the precision irrigation system had a payback period of 2.5 years and generated a net present value of €15,000 per hectare over a 10-year period, compared to a conventional irrigation system. The results demonstrate the potential economic viability of precision irrigation in protected cultivation, particularly for high-value crops and water-scarce regions.

11. Challenges and Future Directions

11.1. Adoption barriers and knowledge gaps

Despite the proven benefits of precision irrigation, the adoption of these techniques in protected cultivation is still limited by various barriers, such as high initial costs, lack of technical knowledge, and resistance to change [151]. Many growers are hesitant to invest in precision irrigation systems due to the perceived complexity and risk associated with new technologies [152]. Moreover, there is a lack of awareness and understanding of the principles and practices of precision irrigation among growers, extension agents, and policymakers [153]. Addressing these adoption barriers and knowledge gaps through education, training, and demonstration projects is crucial for the widespread implementation of precision irrigation in protected cultivation [154].

11.2. Integration with other precision agriculture technologies

Precision irrigation is just one component of the broader field of precision agriculture, which involves the use of advanced technologies, such as remote sensing, variable rate application, and data analytics, to optimize crop production [155]. The integration of precision irrigation with other precision agriculture technologies can provide a more comprehensive and effective approach to crop management in protected cultivation [156]. For example, the use of imaging sensors and machine learning algorithms can help detect plant stress and diseases early, enabling timely and targeted irrigation and fertilization interventions [157]. The integration of precision irrigation with climate control systems, as discussed in section 8.3, is another example of the potential synergies between different precision agriculture technologies [158].

11.3. Adaptation to climate change and water scarcity

Climate change poses significant challenges to protected cultivation, including increased water scarcity, heat stress, and extreme weather events [159]. Precision irrigation can play a crucial role in adapting protected cultivation systems to these challenges by optimizing water use, reducing crop stress, and improving resilience [160]. However, the design and management of precision irrigation systems need to be adapted to the changing climatic conditions and water availability in different regions [161]. This may involve the use of drought-tolerant crops, alternative water sources (e.g., treated wastewater or desalinated water), and advanced irrigation technologies, such as subsurface drip irrigation or partial root-zone drying [162]. Collaborative research and knowledge exchange between growers, researchers, and policymakers are needed to develop and promote climate-resilient precision irrigation strategies for protected cultivation [163].

11.4. Research and development needs

While significant progress has been made in the development and application of precision irrigation techniques in protected cultivation, there are still many research and development needs to be addressed [164]. These include:

1. Improving the accuracy, reliability, and cost-effectiveness of sensor technologies for monitoring soil, plant, and environmental parameters [165].
2. Developing more robust and user-friendly decision support systems that integrate multiple data sources and provide actionable recommendations for irrigation and nutrient management [166].

3. Investigating the long-term effects of precision irrigation on soil health, crop quality, and environmental sustainability in different protected cultivation systems [167].
4. Exploring the potential of novel irrigation technologies, such as micro-irrigation, nanobubble irrigation, and magnetic water treatment, for improving water and nutrient use efficiency [168].
5. Conducting socio-economic studies to assess the adoption barriers, costs, and benefits of precision irrigation in different contexts and to develop strategies for promoting its widespread implementation [169].

Addressing these research and development needs requires a multi-disciplinary approach involving collaboration among agronomists, engineers, computer scientists, economists, and social scientists [170].

12. Conclusion

12.1. Summary of key points

Precision irrigation is a crucial component of protected cultivation and smart agriculture, enabling the optimization of water and nutrient management for improved crop yields, quality, and resource use efficiency. This chapter has provided an overview of the principles, techniques, and applications of precision irrigation in protected cultivation systems worldwide, with a focus on the latest developments and case studies from Asia and India.

The key points covered in this chapter include:

1. The importance of precision irrigation in protected cultivation for sustainable intensification of agriculture and adaptation to climate change and water scarcity.
2. The principles of soil-plant-atmosphere continuum, water and nutrient dynamics, and crop water requirements in protected cultivation systems.
3. The various soil moisture sensing techniques, such as tensiometers, electrical resistance blocks, dielectric sensors, and neutron probes, and their applications in precision irrigation.

4. The use of evapotranspiration-based irrigation scheduling methods, such as the FAO Penman-Monteith equation, pan evaporation, and Hargreaves equation, and the importance of crop coefficients.
5. The plant-based irrigation methods, such as leaf and stem water potential measurement, sap flow sensors, and crop water stress index, and their advantages and limitations.
6. The design, installation, and management of drip irrigation systems, including surface and subsurface drip irrigation, emitter types and characteristics, and filtration and maintenance requirements.
7. The principles and practices of fertigation management, including nutrient solution composition, pH and EC control, nutrient uptake monitoring, and fertigation scheduling and automation.
8. The role of automation and control systems, such as wireless sensor networks, smart irrigation controllers, climate control integration, remote monitoring, and decision support systems, in precision irrigation management.
9. The case studies demonstrating the successful application of precision irrigation techniques in various protected cultivation systems, including greenhouse vegetable production, soilless culture, and fruit crops, in different countries and regions.
10. The economic and environmental benefits of precision irrigation, including improved water and nutrient use efficiency, increased crop yield and quality, reduced environmental impact, and cost-benefit analysis.
11. The challenges and future directions for precision irrigation in protected cultivation, including adoption barriers and knowledge gaps, integration with other precision agriculture technologies, adaptation to climate change and water scarcity, and research and development needs.

12.2. Importance of precision irrigation for sustainable protected cultivation

Precision irrigation is a vital tool for achieving sustainable protected cultivation in the face of growing food demands, limited resources, and environmental challenges. By optimizing water and nutrient management, precision irrigation can help improve crop yields and quality while reducing the environmental footprint of protected cultivation. The adoption of precision irrigation techniques can contribute to the economic viability and social acceptability of protected cultivation, particularly in regions facing water scarcity and increasing public scrutiny of agricultural practices.

Moreover, precision irrigation can play a crucial role in adapting protected cultivation to the impacts of climate change, such as increased water stress, heat waves, and extreme weather events. By enabling more efficient and resilient water management, precision irrigation can help protected cultivation systems cope with these challenges and maintain productivity under changing climatic conditions.

12.3. Recommendations for implementation and future research

To promote the widespread adoption and effective implementation of precision irrigation in protected cultivation, the following recommendations are proposed:

1. Develop and disseminate educational and training programs on precision irrigation principles, techniques, and benefits for growers, extension agents, and policymakers.
2. Provide financial incentives, such as subsidies, grants, or low-interest loans, to encourage the adoption of precision irrigation technologies and practices, particularly for small and medium-scale growers.
3. Establish demonstration projects and knowledge exchange platforms to showcase the successful application of precision irrigation in different protected cultivation systems and regions and to facilitate peer-to-peer learning among growers.
4. Foster collaboration and partnerships among researchers, industry, and growers to address the research and development needs for precision irrigation, such as improving sensor technologies, decision support systems, and irrigation techniques.
5. Integrate precision irrigation with other precision agriculture technologies, such as remote sensing, data analytics, and climate control systems, to

provide a more comprehensive and effective approach to crop management in protected cultivation.

6. Conduct long-term and multi-disciplinary studies to assess the economic, environmental, and social impacts of precision irrigation in protected cultivation and to develop strategies for sustainable and equitable implementation.
7. Develop and implement policies and regulations that promote the adoption of precision irrigation and other sustainable agricultural practices in protected cultivation, such as water pricing, quality standards, and environmental regulations.

References

[1] Shamshiri, R. R., Jones, J. W., Thorp, K. R., Ahmad, D., Man, H. C., & Taheri, S. (2018). Review of optimum temperature, humidity, and vapour pressure deficit for microclimate evaluation and control in greenhouse cultivation of tomato: a review. *International Agrophysics*, 32(2), 287-302. https://doi.org/10.1515/intag-2017-0005

[2] Montesano, F. F., Parente, A., Santamaria, P., Sannino, A., & Serio, F. (2015). Closed cycle subirrigation with low concentration nutrient solution can be used for soilless tomato production in saline conditions. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 186, 255-262. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scienta.2015.02.025

[3] Rouphael, Y., Kyriacou, M. C., Petropoulos, S. A., De Pascale, S., & Colla, G. (2018). Improving vegetable quality in controlled environments. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 234, 275-289. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scienta.2018.02.033

[4] Liang, X., Liakos, V., Wendroth, O., & Vellidis, G. (2020). Scheduling irrigation using an approach based on the van Genuchten function. *Agricultural Water Management*, 227, 105848. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2019.105848

[5] Thompson, R. B., Incrocci, L., van Ruijven, J., & Massa, D. (2020). Reducing contamination of water bodies from European vegetable production systems. *Agricultural Water Management*, 240, 106258. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2020.106258

[6] Chauhan, S., Darvishzadeh, R., Lu, Y., & Nelson, R. L. (2020). Tissue-specific gene expression profiling in soybean (Glycine max) using laser-capture microdissection. *Plant Direct*, 4(6), e00233. https://doi.org/10.1002/pld3.233

[7] Nikolaou, G., Neocleous, D., Christou, A., Kitta, E., & Katsoulas, N. (2020). Implementing sustainable irrigation in water-scarce regions under the impact of climate change. *Agronomy*, 10(8), 1120. https://doi.org/10.3390/agronomy10081120

[8] Jha, P. K., Panwar, J., & Jha, P. N. (2020). Paradigm shift in agriculture practices: From chemical to sustainable approach. In P. K. Jha, J. Panwar, & P. N. Jha (Eds.), *Sustainable Agriculture: Advances in Plant Metabolome and Microbiome* (pp. 1-22). Springer. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-3692-4_1

[9] Tzounis, A., Katsoulas, N., Bartzanas, T., & Kittas, C. (2017). Internet of Things in agriculture, recent advances and future challenges. *Biosystems Engineering*, 164, 31-48. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biosystemseng.2017.09.007

[10] Xu, J., Li, G., Song, X., Liu, X., & Zhang, Y. (2020). Real-time irrigation scheduling of cherry tomato in soil-based greenhouse based on a model predictive controller. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 178, 105778. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2020.105778

[11] Bianchi, A., Masseroni, D., Thalheimer, M., de Medici, L. O., & Facchi, A. (2017). Field irrigation management through soil water potential measurements: A review. *Italian Journal of Agrometeorology*, 2, 25-38. https://doi.org/10.19199/2017.2.2038-5625.025

[12] Ding, Y., Wang, Y., Song, L., Gao, X., & Li, Y. (2020). The automation of greenhouse environment monitoring and control systems based on wireless sensor networks. *Journal of Sensors*, 2020, 8856905. https://doi.org/10.1155/2020/8856905

[13] Gallardo, M., Thompson, R. B., & Fernández, M. D. (2013). Water requirements and irrigation management in Mediterranean greenhouses: The case of the southeast coast of Spain. In M. Baudoin, R. Nono-Womdim, M. Lutaladio, A. Hodder, N. Castilla, C. Leonardi, S. De Pascale, & M. Qaryouti (Eds.), *Good Agricultural Practices for Greenhouse Vegetable Crops: Principles for Mediterranean Climate Areas* (pp. 109-136). Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.

[14] Incrocci, L., Marzialetti, P., Incrocci, G., Balendonck, J., Spagnol, S., & Pardossi, A. (2019). Application of wireless sensor networks to ornamental plants nursery irrigation management. *Acta Horticulturae*, 1268, 189-196. https://doi.org/10.17660/ActaHortic.2019.1268.26

[15] Laktionov, I. S., Vovna, O. V., & Zori, A. A. (2019). Concept of low cost computerized measuring system for microclimate parameters of greenhouses. *Bulgarian Journal of Agricultural Science*, 25(2), 35-43.

[16] Mohapatra, A. G., Lenka, S. K., & Keswani, B. (2019). Neural network and fuzzy logic based smart DSS model for irrigation notification and control in precision agriculture. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, India Section A: Physical Sciences*, 89(1), 67-76. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40
010-018-0155-9

[17] Pawlowski, A., Sánchez-Molina, J. A., Guzmán, J. L., Rodríguez, F., & Dormido, S. (2017). Evaluation of event-based irrigation system control scheme for tomato crops in greenhouses. *Agricultural Water Management*, 183, 16-25. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2016.08.008

[18] Rahim, H., Bin Razak, I. A., Zaman, F. K., Noh, M. K. M., Ed-Dud, S. Z., & Yaakob, N. (2019). Optimum fertigation scheduling for rock melon production in greenhouse cultivation. *Sains Malaysiana*, 48(9), 1907-1912. https://doi.org/10.17576/jsm-2019-4809-11

[19] Romero Trigueros, C., Bayona Gambín, J. M., Nortes Tortosa, P., Alarcón Cabañero, J. J., & Nicolás Nicolás, E. (2017). Determination of crop water stress index by infrared thermometry in grapefruit trees irrigated with saline reclaimed water combined with deficit irrigation. *Remote Sensing*, 9(11), 1167. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs9111167

[20] Salah, A. H., Hassan, G. E., Fath, H., Elhelw, M., & Elsherbiny, S. (2017). Analytical investigation of different operational scenarios of a novel greenhouse combined with solar stills. *Applied Thermal Engineering*, 122, 297-310. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.applthermaleng.2017.05.001

[21] Sánchez, J. A., Rodríguez, F., Guzmán, J. L., Ruiz-Arahal, M., & Fernández, M. D. (2021). Virtual sensors for designing irrigation controllers in greenhouses. *Sensors*, 21(4), 1265. https://doi.org/10.3390/s21041265

[22] Sunny, M. A., & Ashwath, P. (2020). IoT enabled efficient greenhouse monitoring and crop improvement techniques - A detailed survey. *International Journal of Engineering Applied Sciences and Technology*, 5(2), 257-263.

[23] Tse, C.-W., Laughner, J. I., Zoog, H., & Cohen, R. C. (2020). Low-cost, open-source, and low-power: But what to do with the data? *Frontiers in Earth Science*, 8, 137. https://doi.org/10.3389/feart.2020.00137

[24] Yanes, A. R., Martinez, P., & Ahmad, R. (2020). Towards automated aquaponics: A review on monitoring, IoT, and smart systems. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 263, 121571. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2020.121571

[25] Zhang, D., Guo, P., & Li, M. (2020). Integrated irrigation and fertilization management for greenhouse cucumber based on water and nutrient balance model. *Transactions of the Chinese Society of Agricultural Engineering*, 36(5), 129-136. https://doi.org/10.11975/j.issn.1002-6819.2020.05.016

[26] Allen, R. G., Pereira, L. S., Raes, D., & Smith, M. (1998). *Crop evapotranspiration: Guidelines for computing crop water requirements* (FAO Irrigation and Drainage Paper No. 56). Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.

[27] De Pascale, S., Costa, L. D., Vallone, S., Barbieri, G., & Maggio, A. (2011). Increasing water use efficiency in vegetable crop production: From plant to irrigation systems efficiency. *HortTechnology*, 21(3), 301-308. https://doi.org/10.21273/HORTTECH.21.3.301

[28] Doorenbos, J., & Pruitt, W. O. (1977). *Guidelines for predicting crop water requirements* (FAO Irrigation and Drainage Paper No. 24). Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.

[29] Hargreaves, G. H., & Samani, Z. A. (1985). Reference crop evapotranspiration from temperature. *Applied Engineering in Agriculture*, 1(2), 96-99. https://doi.org/10.13031/2013.26773

[30] Nikolaou, G., Neocleous, D., Katsoulas, N., & Kittas, C. (2019). Irrigation of greenhouse crops. *Horticulturae*, 5(1), 7. https://doi.org/10.3390/horticulturae5010007

[31] Zhang, Y., Zhao, W., He, J., & Zhang, K. (2016). Energy exchange and evapotranspiration over irrigated seed maize agroecosystems in a desert-oasis region, northwest China. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology*, 223, 48-59. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agrformet.2016.04.003

[32] Amayreh, J., & Al-Abed, N. (2005). Developing crop coefficients for field-grown tomato (Lycopersicon esculentum Mill.) under drip irrigation with black plastic mulch. *Agricultural Water Management*, 73(3), 247-254. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2004.10.008

[33] Er-Raki, S., Chehbouni, A., Boulet, G., & Williams, D. G. (2010). Using the dual approach of FAO-56 for partitioning ET into soil and plant components for olive orchards in a semi-arid region. *Agricultural Water Management*, 97(11), 1769-1778. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2010.06.009

[34] Fernández, M. D., Bonachela, S., Orgaz, F., Thompson, R., López, J. C., Granados, M. R., Gallardo, M., & Fereres, E. (2010). Measurement and estimation of plastic greenhouse reference evapotranspiration in a Mediterranean climate. *Irrigation Science*, 28(6), 497-509. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00271-010-0210-z

[35] Giménez, C., Gallardo, M., Martínez-Gaitán, C., Stockle, C. O., Thompson, R. B., & Granados, M. R. (2013). VegSyst, a simulation model of daily crop growth, nitrogen uptake and evapotranspiration for pepper crops for use in an on-farm decision support system. *Irrigation Science*, 31(3), 465-477. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00271-011-0312-2

[36] Jones, H. G. (2004). Irrigation scheduling: Advantages and pitfalls of plant-based methods. *Journal of Experimental Botany*, 55(407), 2427-2436. https://doi.org/10.1093/jxb/erh213
[37] Rao, N. S. (1988). Evapotranspiration rates of pepper in relation to pan evaporation. *Canadian Journal of Plant Science*, 68(1), 251-255. https://doi.org/10.4141/cjps88-030
[38] Testi, L., Goldhamer, D. A., Iniesta, F., & Salinas, M. (2008). Crop water stress index is a sensitive water stress indicator in pistachio trees. *Irrigation Science*, 26(5), 395-405. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00271-008-0104-5
[39] Vox, G., Teitel, M., Pardossi, A., Minuto, A., Tinivella, F., & Schettini, E. (2010). Sustainable greenhouse systems. In A. Salazar & I. Rios (Eds.), *Sustainable Agriculture: Technology, Planning and Management* (pp. 1-79). Nova Science Publishers.
[40] Zia, H., Harris, N. R., Merrett, G. V., Rivers, M., & Coles, N. (2013). The impact of agricultural activities on water quality: A case for collaborative catchment-scale management using integrated wireless sensor networks. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 96, 126-138. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2013.05.001
[41] Çolak, Y. B., Yazar, A., Çolak, İ., Akça, H., & Duraktekin, G. (2015). Evaluation of crop water stress index (CWSI) for eggplant under varying irrigation regimes using surface and subsurface drip systems. *Agriculture and Agricultural Science Procedia*, 4, 372-382. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aaspro.2015.03.042
[42] Davis, S. L., & Dukes, M. D. (2010). Irrigation scheduling performance by evapotranspiration-based controllers. *Agricultural Water Management*, 98(1), 19-28. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2010.07.006
[43] Pardossi, A., & Incrocci, L. (2011). Traditional and new approaches to irrigation scheduling in vegetable crops. *HortTechnology*, 21(3), 309-313. https://doi.org/10.21273/HORTTECH.21.3.309
[44] Steppe, K., De Pauw, D. J. W., Doody, T. M., & Teskey, R. O. (2010). A comparison of sap flux density using thermal dissipation, heat pulse velocity and heat field deformation methods. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology*, 150(7-8), 1046-1056. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agrformet.2010.04.004
[45] Idso, S. B., Jackson, R. D., Pinter, P. J., Reginato, R. J., & Hatfield, J. L. (1981). Normalizing the stress-degree-day parameter for environmental variability. *Agricultural Meteorology*, 24, 45-55. https://doi.org/10.1016/0002-1571(81)90032-7
[46] Jones, H. G. (1999). Use of thermography for quantitative studies of spatial and temporal variation of stomatal conductance over leaf surfaces. *Plant, Cell and Environment*, 22(9), 1043-1055. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1365-3040.1999.00468.x
[47] Osroosh, Y., Peters, R. T., Campbell, C. S., & Zhang, Q. (2015). Automatic irrigation scheduling of apple trees using theoretical crop water stress index with an innovative dynamic threshold. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 118, 193-203. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2015.09.006
[48] Gallardo, M., Thompson, R. B., Valdez, L. C., & Fernández, M. D. (2006). Use of stem diameter variations to detect plant water stress in tomato. *Irrigation Science*, 24(4), 241-255. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00271-005-0026-4
[49] Jones, H. G. (2007). Monitoring plant and soil water status: Established and novel methods revisited and their relevance to studies of drought tolerance. *Journal of Experimental Botany*, 58(2), 119-130. https://doi.org/10.1093/jxb/erl118
[50] Thompson, R. B., Gallardo, M., Valdez, L. C., & Fernández, M. D. (2007). Determination of lower limits for irrigation management using in situ assessments of

apparent crop water uptake made with volumetric soil water content sensors. *Agricultural Water Management*, 92(1-2), 13-28. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2007.04.009

[51] Meng, Z., Duan, A., Chen, D., Dassanayake, K. B., Wang, X., Liu, Z., Liu, H., & Gao, S. (2017). Suitable indicators using stem diameter variation-derived indices to monitor the water status of greenhouse tomato plants. *PLoS ONE*, 12(2), e0171423. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0171423

[52] Valdes-Gomez, H., Ortega-Farias, S., Argote, M., Acevedo, C., & Carrasco, M. (2009). Implementation and evaluation of a simple model for predicting the dry matter production of a grafted tomato crop under greenhouse conditions. *Australian Journal of Crop Science*, 3(3), 149-156.

[53] Zhang, S., Zhao, H., Lei, H., Shao, H., & Liu, T. (2019). Simulating the impacts of regulated deficit irrigation on winter wheat growth and water use efficiency based on SWAP model. *Agricultural Water Management*, 213, 1075-1087. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2018.12.017

[54] Bianchi, A., Masseroni, D., Thalheimer, M., de Medici, L. O., & Facchi, A. (2017). Field irrigation management through soil water potential measurements: A review. *Italian Journal of Agrometeorology*, 2, 25-38. https://doi.org/10.19199/2017.2.2038-5625.025

[55] Lamm, F. R., & Rogers, D. H. (2017). Longevity and performance of a subsurface drip irrigation system. *Transactions of the ASABE*, 60(3), 931-939. https://doi.org/10.13031/trans.12237

[56] Li, X., Shi, H., Šimůnek, J., Gong, X., & Peng, Z. (2015). Modeling soil water dynamics in a drip-irrigated intercropping field under plastic mulch. *Irrigation Science*, 33(4), 289-302. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00271-015-0466-4

[57] Phene, C. J., Hutmacher, R. B., & Ayars, J. E. (1992). Subsurface drip irrigation: Realizing the full potential. In T. A. Howell, F. R. Lamm, & G. J. Hoffman (Eds.), *Subsurface Drip Irrigation* (pp. 1-22). American Society of Agricultural Engineers.

[58] Provenzano, G., & Bagarello, V. (2015). Using HYDRUS-2D simulation model to evaluate wetted soil volume in subsurface drip irrigation systems. *Journal of Irrigation and Drainage Engineering*, 141(2), 04014056. https://doi.org/10.1061/(ASCE)IR.1943-4774.0000783

[59] Lamm, F. R., Ayars, J. E., & Nakayama, F. S. (2007). Microirrigation for crop production: Design, operation, and management. *Developments in Agricultural Engineering*, 13, 1-618. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0167-4137(07)80001-0

[60] Capra, A., & Scicolone, B. (2007). Recycling of poor quality urban wastewater by drip irrigation systems. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 15(16), 1529-1534. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2006.07.032

[61] Duran-Ros, M., Puig-Bargués, J., Arbat, G., Barragán, J., & Ramírez de Cartagena, F. (2009). Effect of filter, emitter and location on clogging when using effluents. *Agricultural Water Management*, 96(1), 67-79. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2008.06.005

[62] Lamm, F. R. (2016). Cotton, tomato, corn, and onion production with subsurface drip irrigation: A review. *Transactions of the ASABE*, 59(1), 263-278. https://doi.org/10.13031/trans.59.11231

[63] Nakayama, F. S., & Bucks, D. A. (1991). Water quality in drip/trickle irrigation: A review. *Irrigation Science*, 12(4), 187-192. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF00190522

[64] Fernández, M. D., Thompson, R. B., Bonachela, S., Gallardo, M., & Granados, M. R. (2012). Uso del agua de riego en los cultivos en invernadero. In F. Camacho Ferre &

E. J. Fernández Rodríguez (Eds.), *Técnicas de producción en cultivos protegidos* (pp. 157-178). Caja Rural Intermediterránea, Cajamar.

[65] Hanson, B., & May, D. (2004). Effect of subsurface drip irrigation on processing tomato yield, water table depth, soil salinity, and profitability. *Agricultural Water Management*, 68(1), 1-17. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2004.03.003

[66] Incrocci, L., Maggini, R., Malorgio, F., Tognoni, F., & Pardossi, A. (2007). An aggregated model for water requirements of greenhouse tomato grown in closed rockwool culture with saline water. *Agricultural Water Management*, 88(1-3), 73-82. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2006.09.015

[67] Runia, W. T. (1995). A review of possibilities for disinfection of recirculation water from soilless cultures. *Acta Horticulturae*, 382, 221-229. https://doi.org/10.17660/ActaHortic.1995.382.25

[68] Rouphael, Y., & Colla, G. (2005). Growth, yield, fruit quality and nutrient uptake of hydroponically cultivated zucchini squash as affected by irrigation systems and growing seasons. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 105(2), 177-195. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scienta.2005.01.025

[69] Tognoni, F., Pardossi, A., & Serra, G. (1998). Water pollution and the greenhouse environmental costs. *Acta Horticulturae*, 458, 385-394. https://doi.org/10.17660/ActaHortic.1998.458.46

[70] Ruiz-Sanchez, M. C., Domingo, R., & Castel, J. R. (2010). Review. Deficit irrigation in fruit trees and vines in Spain. *Spanish Journal of Agricultural Research*, 8(S2), 5-20. https://doi.org/10.5424/sjar/201008S2-1343

[71] Pereira, L. S., Oweis, T., & Zairi, A. (2002). Irrigation management under water scarcity. *Agricultural Water Management*, 57(3), 175-206. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0378-3774(02)00075-6

[72] Bar-Yosef, B. (1999). Advances in fertigation. *Advances in Agronomy*, 65, 1-77. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0065-2113(08)60910-4

[73] Incrocci, L., Massa, D., & Pardossi, A. (2017). New trends in the fertigation management of irrigated vegetable crops. *Horticulturae*, 3(2), 37. https://doi.org/10.3390/horticulturae3020037

[74] Massa, D., Magán, J. J., Montesano, F. F., & Tzortzakis, N. (2020). Minimizing water and nutrient losses from soilless cropping in southern Europe. *Agricultural Water Management*, 241, 106395. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2020.106395

[75] Burt, C. M., & Styles, S. W. (2007). Drip and micro irrigation design and management for trees, vines, and field crops (3rd ed.). Irrigation Training and Research Center, California Polytechnic State University.

[76] Ghaemi, A., Rafiee, M. R., & Sepaskhah, A. R. (2016). Tree-level alternate bearing and fruit quality correlates with storage carbohydrates and nutrients concentrations and dynamics in the shoots and roots of pistachio trees. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 198, 252-262. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scienta.2015.12.007

[77] Kafkafi, U., & Kant, S. (2005). FERTIGATION. In D. Hillel (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of Soils in the Environment* (pp. 1-9). Elsevier. https://doi.org/10.1016/B0-12-348530-4/00227-0

[78] Erel, R., Yermiyahu, U., Van Opstal, J., Ben-Gal, A., Schwartz, A., & Dag, A. (2013). The importance of olive (Olea europaea L.) tree nutritional status on its productivity. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 159, 8-18. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scienta.2013.04.036

[79] Havlin, J. L., Tisdale, S. L., Nelson, W. L., & Beaton, J. D. (2014). *Soil fertility and fertilizers: An introduction to nutrient management* (8th ed.). Pearson.
[80] Rouphael, Y., Cardarelli, M., Rea, E., & Colla, G. (2008). The influence of irrigation system and nutrient solution concentration on potted geranium production under various conditions of radiation and temperature. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 118(4), 328-337. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scienta.2008.06.022
[81] Sonneveld, C., & Voogt, W. (2009). *Plant nutrition of greenhouse crops*. Springer. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-90-481-2532-6
[82] Savvas, D., & Gruda, N. (2018). Application of soilless culture technologies in the modern greenhouse industry - A review. *European Journal of Horticultural Science*, 83(5), 280-293. https://doi.org/10.17660/eJHS.2018/83.5.2
[83] Raviv, M., & Lieth, J. H. (2008). *Soilless culture: Theory and practice*. Elsevier.
[84] De Rijck, G., & Schrevens, E. (1998). Distribution of nutrients and water in rockwool slabs. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 72(3-4), 277-285. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0304-4238(97)00144-5
[85] Enzo, M., Gianquinto, G., Lazzarin, R., Pimpini, F., & Sambo, P. (2001). Principi tecnico-agronomici della fertirrigazione e del fuori suolo. *Tipografia-Garbin*, Padova, Italy.
[86] Savvas, D. (2002). Automated replenishment of recycled greenhouse effluents with individual nutrients in hydroponics by means of two alternative models. *Biosystems Engineering*, 83(2), 225-236. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1537-5110(02)00152-6
[87] Neocleous, D., & Savvas, D. (2015). Effect of different macronutrient cation ratios on macronutrient and water uptake by melon (Cucumis melo) grown in recirculating nutrient solution. *Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil Science*, 178(2), 320-332. https://doi.org/10.1002/jpln.201400288
[88] Rouphael, Y., Raimondi, G., Caputo, R., & De Pascale, S. (2016). Fertigation strategies for improving water use efficiency and limiting nutrient loss in soilless hippeastrum production. *HortScience*, 51(6), 684-689. https://doi.org/10.21273/HORTSCI.51.6.684
[89] Hochmuth, G. J. (1994). *Efficiency ranges for nitrate-nitrogen and potassium for vegetable petiole sap quick tests*. HortTechnology, 4(3), 218-222. https://doi.org/10.21273/HORTTECH.4.3.218
[90] Massa, D., Incrocci, L., Maggini, R., Bibbiani, C., Carmassi, G., Malorgio, F., & Pardossi, A. (2011). Simulation of crop water and mineral relations in greenhouse soilless culture. *Environmental Modelling & Software*, 26(6), 711-722. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envsoft.2011.01.004
[91] Thompson, R. B., Martínez-Gaitan, C., Gallardo, M., Giménez, C., & Fernández, M. D. (2007). Identification of irrigation and N management practices that contribute to nitrate leaching loss from an intensive vegetable production system by use of a comprehensive survey. *Agricultural Water Management*, 89(3), 261-274. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2007.01.013
[92] Schröder, J. J., Neeteson, J. J., Oenema, O., & Struik, P. C. (2000). Does the crop or the soil indicate how to save nitrogen in maize production? Reviewing the state of the art. *Field Crops Research*, 66(2), 151-164. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0378-4290(00)00072-1
[93] Thompson, R. B., Tremblay, N., Fink, M., Gallardo, M., & Padilla, F. M. (2017). Tools and strategies for sustainable nitrogen fertilisation of vegetable crops. In F. Tei, S. Nicola, & P. Benincasa (Eds.), *Advances in research on fertilization management of vegetable crops* (pp. 11-63). Springer. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-53626-2_2

[94] Cameira, M. R., & Mota, M. (2017). Nitrogen related diffuse pollution from horticulture production-mitigation practices and assessment strategies. *Horticulturae*, 3(1), 25. https://doi.org/10.3390/horticulturae3010025

[95] Gallardo, M., Thompson, R. B., & Fernández, M. D. (2013). Water requirements and irrigation management in Mediterranean greenhouses: The case of the southeast coast of Spain. In M. García-Tejero & V. H. Durán-Zuazo (Eds.), *Sustainable irrigation management, technologies and policies* (pp. 119-136). WIT Press. https://doi.org/10.2495/978-1-84564-664-0/012

[96] Abalos, D., Sanchez-Martin, L., Garcia-Torres, L., van Groenigen, J. W., & Vallejo, A. (2014). Management of irrigation frequency and nitrogen fertilization to mitigate GHG and NO emissions from drip-fertigated crops. *Science of The Total Environment*, 490, 880-888. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2014.05.065

[97] Guo, S., Gu, S., Duan, J., Chen, X., & Jiang, J. (2020). Spatio-temporal soil nutrient variations and influencing factors in a greenhouse vegetable field in a subtropical region of China. *Journal of Soils and Sediments*, 20(3), 1353-1363. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11368-019-02480-7

[98] Montesano, F. F., van Iersel, M. W., Boari, F., Cantore, V., D'Amato, G., & Parente, A. (2018). Sensor-based irrigation management of soilless basil using a new smart irrigation system: Effects of set-point on plant physiological responses and crop performance. *Agricultural Water Management*, 203, 20-29. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2018.02.019

[99] Arif, C., Setiawan, B. I., Sofiyuddin, H. A., Martief, L. M., Mizoguchi, M., & Doi, R. (2012). Estimating crop coefficient in an intermittent irrigation paddy field using Excel Solver. *Rice Science*, 19(2), 143-152. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1672-6308(12)60031-0

[100] Lozoya, C., Mendoza, C., Mejía, L., Quintana, J., Mendoza, G., Bustillos, M., Arras, O., & Solís, L. (2014). Model predictive control for closed-loop irrigation. *IFAC Proceedings Volumes*, 47(3), 4429-4434. https://doi.org/10.3182/20140824-6-ZA-1003.02067

[101] Chen, X., Cheng, Z., Qin, L., Liu, Y., Jin, S., & Huo, Y. (2016). An irrigation scheduling model for cucumber (Cucumis sativus L.) greenhouse based on big data technology. In *8th International Conference on Information and Communication Technologies in Agriculture, Food and Environment, HAICTA 2017* (pp. 1-6).

[102] Fu, Q., Jiao, W., Ding, Z., Wang, J., Wang, L., & Cui, J. (2021). A field-scale dynamic yield prediction method for greenhouse cucumber using deep learning. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 12. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2021.621571

[103] Ferrarezi, R. S., Dove, S. K., & van Iersel, M. W. (2015). An automated system for monitoring soil moisture and controlling irrigation using low-cost open-source microcontrollers. *HortTechnology*, 25(1), 110-118. https://doi.org/10.21273/HORTTECH.25.1.110

[104] Feng, J., Dai, Z., Zheng, S., & Xie, X. (2013). Research and application of precision irrigation control system in agricultural. In Y. Li & W. Chen (Eds.), *Computer and Computing Technologies in Agriculture VI* (pp. 288-297). Springer. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-36124-1_35

[105] Goodchild, M., Kühn, K., Jenkins, M., Burek, K., & Dutton, A. (2015). A method for precision closed-loop irrigation using a modified PID control algorithm. *Sensors and Transducers*, 188(5), 61-68.

[106] Mohapatra, A. G., Lenka, S. K., & Keswani, B. (2019). Neural network and fuzzy logic based smart DSS model for

irrigation notification and control in precision agriculture. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, India Section A: Physical Sciences*, 89(1), 67-76. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40010-018-0555-x

[107] Nóbrega, R. L. B., Rocha, R. S., Ciciliato, D. A., Azevedo, C. A. V., & Santos, D. P. (2020). Soil moisture effects and adaptive neuro-fuzzy inference system for greenhouse irrigation control. *Environmental Earth Sciences*, 79(4), 101. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12665-020-8845-4

[108] Salazar, R., López, I., & Rojano, A. (2017). A neural network model to predict temperature and relative humidity in a greenhouse. In *8th International Conference on Information and Communication Technologies in Agriculture, Food and Environment, HAICTA 2017* (pp. 21-22).

[109] Sánchez, I., Rodríguez, F., Guzmán, J. L., Ruiz-Arahal, M., & Fernández, M. D. (2021). Virtualization of smart irrigation systems: When cyber-physical systems meet artificial intelligence. *Sensors*, 21(7), 2321. https://doi.org/10.3390/s21072321

[110] Speetjens, S. L., Stigter, J. D., & van Straten, G. (2009). Towards an adaptive model for greenhouse control. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 67(1-2), 1-8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2009.01.012

[111] Fourati, F., & Chtourou, M. (2007). A greenhouse control with feed-forward and recurrent neural networks. *Simulation Modelling Practice and Theory*, 15(8), 1016-1028. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.simpat.2007.05.003

[112] Pawlowski, A., Sánchez-Molina, J. A., Guzmán, J. L., Rodríguez, F., & Dormido, S. (2017). Evaluation of event-based irrigation system control scheme for tomato crops in greenhouses. *Agricultural Water Management*, 183, 16-25. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2016.08.008

[113] Osroosh, Y., Troy Peters, R., Campbell, C. S., & Zhang, Q. (2015). Automatic irrigation scheduling of apple trees using theoretical crop water stress index with an innovative dynamic threshold. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 118, 193-203. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2015.09.006

[114] Peteinatos, G. G., Bladenopoulos, K., & Blackburn, D. (2012). Web-based agricultural environment for monitoring and advice. In U. Rickert & M. Helbig (Eds.), *Environmental Monitoring* (pp. 1-20). Intech. https://doi.org/10.5772/32830

[115] Qiu, R., Kang, S., Du, T., Tong, L., Hao, X., Chen, R., Chen, J., & Li, F. (2013). Effect of convection on the Penman–Monteith model estimates of transpiration of hot pepper grown in solar greenhouse. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 160, 163-171. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scienta.2013.05.042

[116] Guzmán, J. L., Pavón, S., Pagán, I., Rodríguez, F., Berenguel, M., & Torres, M. (2021). The Internet of Things for agricultural and environmental applications. In J. C. Bansal, P. K. Singh, & M. B. Akhtar (Eds.), *Evolutionary and Swarm Intelligence Algorithms* (pp. 169-199). Springer. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-61705-9_8

[117] Gieling, T. H., Bontsema, J., Bouwmans, T. W. B. M., & Steeghs, R. H. (1997). Modelling and simulation for control of nutrient application in closed growing systems. *Netherlands Journal of Agricultural Science*, 45(1), 127-142. https://doi.org/10.18174/njas.v45i1.518

[118] Morimoto, T., Torii, T., & Hashimoto, Y. (1995). Optimal control of physiological processes of plants in a green plant factory. *Control Engineering Practice*, 3(4), 505-511. https://doi.org/10.1016/0967-0661(95)00022-M

[119] Ehret, D. L., Hill, B. D., Helmer, T., & Edwards, D. R. (2011). Neural network modeling of greenhouse tomato yield, growth and water use from automated crop

monitoring data. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 79(1), 82-89. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2011.08.013

[120] Miranda, L., Sanchez-Azofeifa, A., & Wiley, J. (2020). Greenhouse environment automatic control through neural networks. In *2020 IEEE International Congress on Internet of Things, ICIOT 2020* (pp. 71-78). IEEE. https://doi.org/10.1109/ICIOT49877.2020.9189469

[121] Dingemanse, S. A. M., van Os, E. A., & van Kooten, O. (2011). Improving sustainability of greenhouse flower production: An integrated systems analysis approach. *Acta Horticulturae*, 893, 35-42. https://doi.org/10.17660/ActaHortic.2011.893.1

[122] Voogt, W., de Visser, P., van Winkel, A., Cuijpers, W., & van de Burgt, G.-J. (2011). Nutrient management in organic greenhouse production: Navigation between constraints. *Acta Horticulturae*, 915, 75-82. https://doi.org/10.17660/ActaHortic.2011.915.9

[123] Voogt, W., Ellings, A., van den Bos, A., & Kipp, J. A. (1999). Fertigation of greenhouse crops in closed systems in the Netherlands. *Acta Horticulturae*, 481, 365-372. https://doi.org/10.17660/ActaHortic.1999.481.41

[124] Magán, J. J., Gallardo, M., Thompson, R. B., & Lorenzo, P. (2008). Effects of salinity on fruit yield and quality of tomato grown in soil-less culture in greenhouses in Mediterranean climatic conditions. *Agricultural Water Management*, 95(9), 1041-1055. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2008.03.011

[125] Rodríguez, F., Berenguel, M., Guzmán, J. L., & Ramírez-Arias, A. (2015). Modeling and control of greenhouse crop growth. *Advances in Industrial Control*. Springer. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-11134-6

[126] Sánchez, J. A., Reca, J., & Martínez, J. (2015). Irrigation water management in a greenhouse district in southern Spain. *Irrigation and Drainage*, 64(5), 639-649. https://doi.org/10.1002/ird.1939

[127] Hanson, B. R., Šimůnek, J., & Hopmans, J. W. (2006). Evaluation of urea–ammonium–nitrate fertigation with drip irrigation using numerical modeling. *Agricultural Water Management*, 86(1-2), 102-113. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2006.06.013

[128] Gärdenäs, A. I., Hopmans, J. W., Hanson, B. R., & Šimůnek, J. (2005). Two-dimensional modeling of nitrate leaching for various fertigation scenarios under micro-irrigation. *Agricultural Water Management*, 74(3), 219-242. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2004.11.011

[129] Gartung, J. L., Hanson, B. R., Linville, S., Pritchard, T. L., & Holtz, B. A. (1997). Improving water and nitrogen management in drip-irrigated almond orchards. In *Proceedings of the 2nd International Symposium on Irrigation of Horticultural Crops, ISHS Acta Horticulturae 449* (Vol. 449, pp. 183-191). International Society for Horticultural Science. https://doi.org/10.17660/ActaHortic.1997.449.26

[130] Chow, R., & Singh, S. (2020). Integrated IoT-enabled greenhouse for smart farming. In P. K. Malik, D. P. Malhotra, D. H. Le, M. Verma, S. Kumar, & Y. Phutela (Eds.), *Next-generation greenhouse farming: Emerging technologies and optimal practices* (pp. 103-134). CRC Press. https://doi.org/10.1201/9780429058066-5

[131] Jha, P. K., & Panwar, J. (2016). Sustainable climate smart agriculture: Way forward for agricultural development in India. In C. Singh, V. S. Tomar, & B. Singh (Eds.), *Smart Farming: Emerging Techniques* (pp. 11-26). Biotech Books.

[132] Singh, A., Patel, N., & Dalwadi, S. (2019). Irrigation control system for protected agriculture using Internet of Things. *International Journal of Current Microbiology and Applied Sciences*, 8(10), 2097-2104. https://doi.org/10.20546/ijcmas.2019.810.243

[133] Nishimura, M., & Oi, R. (2016). Integrated crop management using sensors and network for greenhouse cultivation in Japan. In P. P. Groumpos (Ed.), *Proceedings of the 17th IFAC Conference on Technology, Culture and International Stability, TECIS 2016* (pp. 1-6). IFAC. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ifacol.2016.12.186

[134] Yoshida, H., Imahori, T., Chikanari, K., Tamaki, M., Konishi, K., Takemura, K., Nakamura, Y., & Matsuo, S. (2020). Multiple plant diagnosis and watering using machine learning and sensors in hydroponic cultivation. In *2020 59th Annual Conference of the Society of Instrument and Control Engineers of Japan, SICE 2020* (pp. 1138-1143). IEEE. https://doi.org/10.23919/SICE48898.2020.9240202

[135] Ikeda, S., Shimizu, A., & Nakano, M. (2021). Measurement of fruit number and growth of cherry tomato with newly developed growth measurement method. *Horticulturae*, 7(1), 3. https://doi.org/10.3390/horticulturae7010003

[136] Fereres, E., Goldhamer, D. A., & Parsons, L. R. (2003). Irrigation water management of horticultural crops. *HortScience*, 38(5), 1036-1042. https://doi.org/10.21273/hortsci.38.5.1036

[137] Congreves, K. A., & Van Eerd, L. L. (2015). Nitrogen cycling and management in intensive horticultural systems. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*, 102(3), 299-318. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10705-015-9704-7

[138] Fernández, M. D., González, A. M., Carreño, J., Pérez, C., & Bonachela, S. (2007). Analysis of on-farm irrigation performance in Mediterranean greenhouses. *Agricultural Water Management*, 89(3), 251-260. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2007.01.008

[139] Rouphael, Y., Cardarelli, M., Colla, G., & Rea, E. (2008). Yield, mineral composition, water relations, and water use efficiency of grafted mini-watermelon plants under deficit irrigation. *HortScience*, 43(3), 730-736. https://doi.org/10.21273/hortsci.43.3.730

[140] Rouphael, Y., & Colla, G. (2005). Growth, yield, fruit quality and nutrient uptake of hydroponically cultivated zucchini squash as affected by irrigation systems and growing seasons. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 105(2), 177-195. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scienta.2005.01.025

[141] Howell, T. A. (2003). Irrigation efficiency. In B. A. Stewart & T. A. Howell (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of Water Science* (pp. 467-472). Marcel Dekker.

[142] Pardossi, A., Tognoni, F., & Incrocci, L. (2004). Mediterranean greenhouse technology. *Chronica Horticulturae*, 44(2), 28-34.

[143] Jovicich, E., Cantliffe, D. J., & Stoffella, P. J. (2004). Fruit yield and quality of greenhouse-grown bell pepper as influenced by density, container size and trellis system. *HortTechnology*, 14(4), 507-513. https://doi.org/10.21273/HORTTECH.14.4.0507

[144] Hatirli, S. A., Ozkan, B., & Fert, C. (2006). Energy inputs and crop yield relationship in greenhouse tomato production. *Renewable Energy*, 31(4), 427-438. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.renene.2005.04.007

[145] Dahan, Y., & Shani, U. (2021). Environmental, agronomical, and economic comparison of fertigation and dry fertilizer application in commercial orchards on light soils. *Water*, 13(6), 866. https://doi.org/10.3390/w13060866

[146] Malcom, B. J., Carlson, R., & Magan, B. (2019). Expanding precision agriculture technology to optimize nutrient efficiency in high tunnels. *Acta Horticulturae*, 1266, 71-78. https://doi.org/10.17660/ActaHortic.2019.1266.9

[147] Kloas, W., Groß, R., Baganz, D., Graupner, J., Monsees, H., Schmidt, U., Staaks, G., Suhl, J., Tschirner, M., Wittstock, B., Wuertz, S., Zikova, A., & Rennert, B. (2015). A new concept for aquaponic systems to improve sustainability, increase productivity, and

reduce environmental impacts. *Aquaculture Environment Interactions*, 7(2), 179-192. https://doi.org/10.3354/aei00146

[148] Balendonck, J., Sapounas, A. A., Kempkes, F., & Van Os, E. A. (2014). Use of wireless sensor networks in greenhouse horticulture. In C. Zhang & J. Hou (Eds.), *Wireless sensor networks: Application-centric design* (pp. 289-310). InTech. https://doi.org/10.5772/57201

[149] Lu, N., Zhou, S., Shen, X., & Du, T. (2012). Prospects and problems of wireless communication for water-saving irrigation. *Wireless Sensor Network*, 4(6), 135-141. https://doi.org/10.4236/wsn.2012.46019

[150] Álvarez, J. F. O., Martin-Gorriz, B., Soto-García, M., & Martínez-Álvarez, V. (2021). Seawater desalination for crop irrigation — A review of current experiences and revealed key issues. *Desalination*, 498, 114805. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.desal.2020.114805

[151] Alcon, F., García-Bastida, P. A., Soto-García, M., Martínez-Alvarez, V., Martin-Gorriz, B., & Baille, A. (2017). Explaining the performance of irrigation communities in a water-scarce region. *Irrigation Science*, 35(3), 193-203. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00271-016-0531-7

[152] Caramazana-González, P., Dunford, N. T., & Hendrickson, J. R. (2021). Identifying barriers to the adoption of sustainable agriculture practices among pecan producers. *Sustainability*, 13(10), 5399. https://doi.org/10.3390/su13105399

[153] Adeyemi, O., Grove, I., Peets, S., & Norton, T. (2017). Advanced monitoring and management systems for improving sustainability in precision irrigation. *Sustainability*, 9(3), 353. https://doi.org/10.3390/su9030353

[154] Chartzoulakis, K., & Bertaki, M. (2015). Sustainable water management in agriculture under climate change. *Agriculture and Agricultural Science Procedia*, 4, 88-98. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aaspro.2015.03.011

[155] Gebbers, R., & Adamchuk, V. I. (2010). Precision agriculture and food security. *Science*, 327(5967), 828-831. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1183899

[156] Gemtos, T. A., Fountas, S., Tagarakis, A., & Liakos, V. (2013). Precision agriculture application in fruit crops: Experience in handpicked fruits. *Procedia Technology*, 8, 324-332. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.protcy.2013.11.043

[157] Tripodi, P., Massa, D., Venezia, A., & Cardi, T. (2018). Sensing technologies for precision phenotyping in vegetable crops: Current status and future challenges. *Agronomy*, 8(4), 57. https://doi.org/10.3390/agronomy8040057

[158] Stanghellini, C., van Henten, E. J., Bontsema, J., Budding, J., Hogendonk, L., Kempkes, F., Heuvelink, E., De Gelder, A., Eveleens-Clark, B. A., Dieleman, J. A., Grootscholten, M., & Elings, A. (2010). The integrated greenhouse: A higher sustainability through integrated control of energy, crop and climate. In *ISHS Acta Horticulturae 927: XXVIII International Horticultural Congress on Science and Horticulture for People, IHC2010: International Symposium on Greenhouse 2010 and Soilless Cultivation* (pp. 95-104). International Society for Horticultural Science. https://doi.org/10.17660/ActaHortic.2012.927.8

[159] Marcelis, L. F. M., Dieleman, J. A., Boulard, T., Garate, A., Kittas, C., Buschmann, C., Brajeul, E., Wieringa, G., de Groot, F., van Loon, A., & Kocsanyi, L. (2006). CLOSYS: Closed system for water and nutrient management in horticulture. *Acta Horticulturae*, 718, 375-382. https://doi.org/10.17660/ActaHortic.2006.718.44

[160] Colla, G., Rouphael, Y., Romero-Lozano, A., Pérez-Alfocea, F., & Pérez-Pérez, J. G. (2021). Deficit irrigation strategies to improve fruit and vegetable quality of

greenhouse crops under water-limiting conditions: An overview. *Agronomy*, 11(10), 2038. https://doi.org/10.3390/agronomy11102038

[161] González-Dugo, M. P., Escuin, S., Cano, F., Cifuentes, V., Padilla, F. L. M., Tirado, J. L., Oyonarte, N., Fernández, P., & Mateos, L. (2013). Monitoring evapotranspiration of irrigated crops using crop coefficients derived from time series of satellite images. II. Application on basin scale. *Agricultural Water Management*, 125, 92-104. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agwat.2013.03.024

[162] Nikolaou, G., Neocleous, D., Katsoulas, N., & Kittas, C. (2019). Irrigation of greenhouse crops. *Horticulturae*, 5(1), 7. https://doi.org/10.3390/horticulturae5010007

[163] Costa, J. M., Malheiro, A. C., Campos, I., Leal, C., Coelho, R., Monteiro, A. A., Pinto, F., & Baptista, F. (2020). Mapping Mediterranean greenhouses using high-resolution satellite images and structure-from-motion technology. *Remote Sensing*, 12(17), 2834. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs12172834

[164] Sánchez, J. A., Reca, J., & Martínez, J. (2015). Water productivity in a Mediterranean semi-arid greenhouse district. *Water Resources Management*, 29(14), 5395-5411. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11269-015-1125-5

[165] Liakos, V., Tagarakis, A., Aggelopoulou, K., Kleftaki, C., Nanos, G., & Fountas, S. (2017). In-field plant sensors for high resolution mapping of crop vigor in orchards. In *EFITA WCCA 2017 Conference, EFITA 2017 Proceedings* (pp. 95-102).

[166] Molina-Aiz, F. D., Valera, D. L., Peña, A. A., Gil, J. A., & López, A. (2009). A study of natural ventilation in an Almería-type greenhouse with insect screens by means of tri-sonic anemometry. *Biosystems Engineering*, 104(2), 224-242. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biosystemseng.2009.06.013

[167] Magwaza, L. S., Mditshwa, A., Tesfay, S. Z., & Opara, U. L. (2017). An overview of preharvest factors affecting vitamin C content of citrus fruit. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 216, 12-21. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scienta.2016.12.021

[168] Kishor, P., Sangam, S., Amrutha, R. N., Laxmi, P. S., Naidu, K. R., Rao, K. R. S. S., Rao, S., Reddy, K. J., Theriappan, P., & Sreenivasulu, N. (2005). Regulation of proline biosynthesis, degradation, uptake and transport in higher plants: Its implications in plant growth and abiotic stress tolerance. *Current Science*, 88(3), 424-438.

[169] Blok, C., & Urrestarazu, M. (2021). Substrate growing developments in Europe 2021-2027. *Acta Horticulturae*, 1317, 165-173. https://doi.org/10.17660/ActaHortic.2021.1317.22

[170] Norton, T., Watkinson, S., Leemans, D., Groot, P., Fehr, M., & Kockelkoren, J. (2022). Sustainability-efficiency trade-offs in precision agriculture technologies. *Nature Sustainability*, 5, 172-174. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41893-022-00862-3

CHAPTER - 8

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Nutrition Science

[1]Amit Kumar Pandey and [2]Ashutosh Singh

Mandan Bharti Agriculture College, Agwanpur, Saharsa, Bihar

Corresponding Author
Ashutosh Singh
amitpandeybau@gmail.com

Abstract

Nutrition science plays a critical role in optimizing crop nutrient management for sustainable and productive agriculture worldwide. Efficient crop nutrition is essential for maximizing yields, improving crop quality, promoting plant health, and minimizing environmental impacts. This chapter explores the principles and practices of nutrition science in the context of protected cultivation and smart agriculture, with a focus on global trends and regional perspectives in Asia and India.

In Asia, rapid population growth, urbanization, and changing dietary preferences have driven the intensification of agriculture, leading to increased nutrient demands and environmental challenges. Countries like China, India, and Indonesia have implemented policies and programs to promote balanced fertilization, soil testing, and integrated nutrient management. Research institutions and extension services play a crucial role in developing and disseminating site-specific nutrient management strategies adapted to local agroecological conditions.

India, with its diverse agroclimatic zones and cropping systems, faces unique challenges in crop nutrient management. The country has made significant strides in promoting soil health through initiatives like the Soil Health Card Scheme, which provides farmers with personalized fertilizer recommendations based on soil testing. Additionally, the adoption of fertigation in protected cultivation systems, such as greenhouses and polyhouses, has improved nutrient use efficiency and crop productivity.

Keywords: Nutrition Science, Crop Nutrient Management, Precision Agriculture, Sustainable Agriculture, Smart Agriculture

Nutrition science is a critical discipline that underpins sustainable and productive agriculture worldwide. Effective crop nutrient management is essential for optimizing yields, improving crop quality, promoting plant health, and minimizing environmental impacts [1]. In the context of protected cultivation and smart agriculture, nutrition science plays a vital role in delivering precise and efficient nutrient inputs to crops grown in controlled environments [2].

This chapter explores the principles and practices of nutrition science in optimizing crop nutrient management, with a focus on global trends and regional perspectives in Asia and India. It synthesizes current knowledge and best practices, highlighting the potential of smart agriculture technologies and the importance of tailoring nutrient management strategies to local agroecological conditions.

2. Global Trends in Crop Nutrient Management

2.1. *Precision Agriculture Technologies*

Precision agriculture technologies have revolutionized crop nutrient management by enabling farmers to optimize nutrient inputs based on crop-specific requirements, soil properties, and environmental conditions [3]. Some key advancements include:

- **Sensor-based nutrient monitoring:** Remote sensing and proximal sensors, such as spectral reflectance sensors and chlorophyll meters, allow real-time assessment of crop nutrient status and facilitate targeted nutrient applications [4].
- **Variable rate fertilizer application:** GPS-guided machinery and variable rate technology (VRT) enable site-specific application of fertilizers, tailoring nutrient inputs to the spatial variability of soil fertility and crop needs [5].

- **Fertigation systems**: The integration of fertilizer application with irrigation systems, known as fertigation, allows precise delivery of nutrients directly to the crop root zone, improving nutrient use efficiency and reducing losses [6].

Table 1. Precision agriculture technologies for crop nutrient management

Technology	**Application**	**Benefits**
Sensor-based nutrient monitoring	Real-time assessment of crop nutrient status	Targeted nutrient applications, reduced over-fertilization
Variable rate fertilizer application	Site-specific application based on soil fertility and crop needs	Optimized nutrient inputs, improved nutrient use efficiency
Fertigation systems	Integration of fertilizer application with irrigation	Precise nutrient delivery, reduced nutrient losses
Drone-based remote sensing	High-resolution aerial imagery for nutrient status assessment	Rapid and cost-effective nutrient monitoring over large areas
Soil electrical conductivity mapping	Mapping soil variability for site-specific management	Identification of management zones for targeted nutrient inputs

2.2. *Advances in Fertilizer Technology*

The development of innovative fertilizer products has contributed to improved nutrient use efficiency and reduced environmental impacts. Key advancements include:

- Slow-release and controlled-release fertilizers: These fertilizers gradually release nutrients over an extended period, synchronizing nutrient supply with crop demand and minimizing losses through leaching or volatilization [7].
- Nitrification and urease inhibitors: These compounds slow down the microbial processes that convert ammonium to nitrate (nitrification) or urea to ammonia (urease activity), reducing nitrogen losses and improving nitrogen use efficiency [8].
- **Organic amendments and biofertilizers:** The use of organic materials, such as compost, manure, and biofertilizers containing beneficial microorganisms, can improve soil health, nutrient availability, and plant growth [9].

3.1. *Regional Challenges and Opportunities*

Asia is home to over half of the world's population and faces significant challenges in meeting the growing food demands while ensuring sustainable agriculture practices. Rapid population growth, urbanization, and changing dietary preferences have driven the intensification of agriculture, leading to increased nutrient demands and environmental pressures [10].

Table 2. Advances in fertilizer technology

Fertilizer Technology	**Mechanism**	**Benefits**
Slow-release fertilizers	Gradual nutrient release synchronized with crop demand	Improved nutrient use efficiency, reduced losses
Controlled-release fertilizers	Nutrient release regulated by coatings or matrices	Precise nutrient delivery, minimized environmental impacts
Nitrification inhibitors	Slowing down microbial conversion of ammonium to nitrate	Reduced nitrogen losses, improved nitrogen use efficiency
Urease inhibitors	Slowing down microbial conversion of urea to ammonia	Reduced ammonia volatilization, improved nitrogen use efficiency
Organic amendments	Incorporation of organic materials into soil	Improved soil health, nutrient availability, and plant growth
Biofertilizers	Application of beneficial microorganisms to soil or plants	Enhanced nutrient uptake, plant growth promotion

3. Crop Nutrient Management in Asia

However, Asia also presents opportunities for improving crop nutrient management through the adoption of smart agriculture technologies and best management practices. Many countries in the region have implemented policies and programs to promote balanced fertilization, soil testing, and integrated nutrient management [11].

3.2. Country-Specific Initiatives and Success Stories

Several Asian countries have made notable progress in optimizing crop nutrient management:

- China: The country has implemented the "Soil Testing and Fertilizer Recommendation Project," which provides farmers with science-based fertilizer recommendations based on soil testing and crop requirements [12]. This initiative has led to significant reductions in fertilizer overuse and improved nutrient use efficiency.
- Indonesia: The "Balanced Fertilization Program" in Indonesia promotes the use of organic amendments and biofertilizers in combination with judicious

use of inorganic fertilizers [13]. This approach has improved soil health, crop yields, and farmers' profitability.

- Vietnam: The "Three Reductions, Three Gains" program in Vietnam focuses on reducing seed rates, pesticide use, and nitrogen fertilizer application while increasing yields, product quality, and farmers' incomes [14]. The program has been successful in promoting sustainable rice production practices.

Table 3. Country-specific initiatives for crop nutrient management in Asia

Country	**Initiative**	**Focus**	**Outcomes**
China	Soil Testing and Fertilizer Recommendation Project	Science-based fertilizer recommendations based on soil testing	Reduced fertilizer overuse, improved nutrient use efficiency
Indonesia	Balanced Fertilization Program	Combination of organic amendments, biofertilizers, and judicious inorganic fertilizer use	Improved soil health, crop yields, and farmers' profitability
Vietnam	Three Reductions, Three Gains Program	Reducing seed rates, pesticide use, and nitrogen fertilizer application while increasing yields, product quality, and farmers' incomes	Promotion of sustainable rice production practices
India	Soil Health Card Scheme	Providing farmers with personalized fertilizer recommendations based on soil testing	Improved soil health, balanced fertilization, and crop productivity
Bangladesh	Urea Deep Placement (UDP) Technology	Deep placement of urea fertilizer briquettes in rice fields	Increased nitrogen use efficiency, reduced losses, and higher yields

3.3. *Research and Extension Services*

Research institutions and extension services play a crucial role in developing and disseminating site-specific nutrient management strategies adapted to local agroecological conditions in Asia. Some notable examples include:

- The International Rice Research Institute (IRRI) has developed the "Site-Specific Nutrient Management" (SSNM) approach, which provides farmers with field-specific nutrient management guidelines based on soil properties, crop requirements, and target yields [15].

- The Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR) has established a network of Krishi Vigyan Kendras (KVKs) or Farm Science Centers across the country to provide farmers with location-specific technologies and knowledge, including nutrient management practices [16].

Figure 1. Site-Specific Nutrient Management (SSNM) approach developed by IRRI

4. Crop Nutrient Management in India

4.1. *Agroecological Zones and Cropping Systems*

India is characterized by diverse agroclimatic zones and cropping systems, each with unique nutrient management challenges and opportunities. The country is divided into 15 agroecological regions based on physiography, climate, soils, and vegetation [17].

Major cropping systems in India include rice-wheat, rice-rice, maize-wheat, cotton-wheat, and sugarcane-based systems [18]. Nutrient management strategies need to be tailored to the specific requirements of these cropping systems and their associated agroecological conditions.

Table 4. Major agroecological zones and cropping systems in India

Agroecological Zone	States	Major Cropping Systems
Trans-Gangetic Plains	Punjab, Haryana, Delhi	Rice-wheat, cotton-wheat, maize-wheat
Upper Gangetic Plains	Uttar Pradesh, Bihar	Rice-wheat, sugarcane-based
Middle Gangetic Plains	Bihar, West Bengal	Rice-wheat, rice-rice, jute-based
Lower Gangetic Plains	West Bengal, Odisha	Rice-rice, rice-potato, jute-based
Eastern Plateau and Hills	Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh, Odisha	Rice-based, maize-based, pulse-based
Central Plateau and Hills	Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan	Soybean-wheat, sorghum-based, pulse-based
Western Plateau and Hills	Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh	Cotton-based, sorghum-based, pulse-based
Southern Plateau and Hills	Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu	Rice-based, finger millet-based, pulse-based
East Coast Plains and Hills	Andhra Pradesh, Odisha, Tamil Nadu	Rice-rice, rice-pulse, sugarcane-based
West Coast Plains and Hills	Gujarat, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Kerala	Rice-rice, coconut-based, spice-based

4.2. Government Initiatives and Policies

The Government of India has launched several initiatives and policies to promote sustainable crop nutrient management and improve soil health:

- Soil Health Card Scheme: Launched in 2015, this scheme provides farmers with personalized fertilizer recommendations based on soil testing. As of March 2020, over 230 million soil health cards have been distributed to farmers across the country [19].
- Neem Coated Urea: The government has mandated the production and distribution of neem-coated urea to reduce nitrogen losses and improve nitrogen use efficiency. Neem coating slows down the release of urea and inhibits nitrification, thereby reducing nutrient losses [20].
- Nutrient Based Subsidy (NBS) Scheme: Introduced in 2010, the NBS scheme promotes balanced fertilization by providing subsidies on nutrient-based fertilizers containing nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium, and sulfur [21].

Table 5. Government initiatives for crop nutrient management in India

Initiative	Objective	Key Features
Soil Health Card Scheme	Provide farmers with personalized fertilizer recommendations based on soil testing	Distribution of soil health cards, promotion of balanced fertilization
Neem Coated Urea	Reduce nitrogen losses and improve nitrogen use efficiency	Mandatory production and distribution of neem-coated urea
Nutrient Based Subsidy Scheme	Promote balanced fertilization by providing subsidies on nutrient-based fertilizers	Subsidies on fertilizers containing N, P, K, and S
Paramparagat Krishi Vikas Yojana	Promote organic farming and sustainable agriculture practices	Cluster-based approach, capacity building, certification of organic products
National Mission for Sustainable Agriculture	Promote integrated farming, soil health management, and water conservation	Rainfed area development, soil health management, climate change adaptation

4.3. Adoption of Fertigation in Protected Cultivation

Protected cultivation systems, such as greenhouses and polyhouses, have gained popularity in India for the production of high-value crops. Fertigation, the application of fertilizers through irrigation water, is a common practice in these systems, allowing precise nutrient delivery and improved nutrient use efficiency [22].

Advantages of fertigation in protected cultivation include:

- Synchronization of nutrient supply with crop demand
- Reduced nutrient losses through leaching and runoff
- Improved crop yields and quality
- Increased water use efficiency

Table 6. Fertigation strategies for common crops in protected cultivation

Crop	Fertigation Schedule	Key Nutrients
Tomato	Weekly fertigation with N, P, K, Ca, Mg, and micronutrients	N, K, Ca
Cucumber	Frequent fertigation with N, P, K, and micronutrients	N, K
Capsicum	Weekly fertigation with N, P, K, Ca, Mg, and micronutrients	N, P, K, Ca
Rose	Frequent fertigation with N, P, K, and micronutrients	N, K
Gerbera	Weekly fertigation with N, P, K, Ca, Mg, and micronutrients	N, K, Ca

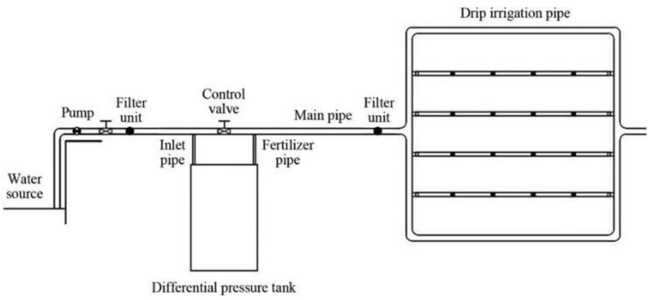


Figure 2. Schematic diagram of a fertigation system in protected cultivation

5. Strategies for Optimizing Crop Nutrient Management

5.1. Integrated Nutrient Management

Integrated Nutrient Management (INM) is a holistic approach that combines the use of inorganic fertilizers, organic amendments, biofertilizers, and crop residues to optimize crop nutrition while maintaining soil health and minimizing environmental impacts [23].

Key components of INM include:

- Judicious use of inorganic fertilizers based on soil testing and crop requirements
- Incorporation of organic manures, such as compost, farmyard manure, and green manures
- Application of biofertilizers containing beneficial microorganisms, such as Rhizobium, Azotobacter, and Phosphate Solubilizing Bacteria (PSB)
- Recycling of crop residues and use of legumes in crop rotations

5.2. Nutrient Budgeting and Balance Sheets

Nutrient budgeting involves quantifying nutrient inputs, outputs, and losses in a cropping system to optimize nutrient management and minimize environmental impacts [24]. Nutrient balance sheets provide a snapshot of nutrient flows and help identify areas for improvement in nutrient use efficiency.

Steps in developing a nutrient budget:

1. Quantify nutrient inputs from fertilizers, organic amendments, crop residues, and irrigation water
2. Estimate nutrient outputs in harvested crops and crop residues

3. Account for nutrient losses through leaching, runoff, volatilization, and denitrification
4. Calculate nutrient balance as the difference between inputs and outputs plus losses

Table 7. Integrated Nutrient Management (INM) practices for major crops

Crop	INM Practices
Rice	Application of NPK fertilizers, green manuring with Sesbania, use of Azolla and blue-green algae, incorporation of rice straw
Wheat	Application of NPK fertilizers, use of Azotobacter and PSB, incorporation of legume residues
Maize	Application of NPK fertilizers, use of Azospirillum and PSB, incorporation of maize stover
Sugarcane	Application of NPK fertilizers, use of Acetobacter and PSB, trash mulching, intercropping with legumes
Cotton	Application of NPK fertilizers, use of Azotobacter and PSB, incorporation of cotton stalks, intercropping with legumes

Figure 3. Schematic representation of a nutrient budget in a cropping system

5.3. Precision Nutrient Management

Precision nutrient management involves the use of advanced technologies and data-driven approaches to optimize nutrient inputs based on spatial and temporal variability in soil properties and crop requirements [25].

Key components include:

- Soil and plant tissue testing to assess nutrient status

- Remote sensing and GIS-based tools for mapping soil fertility and crop growth
- Variable rate fertilizer application using GPS-guided machinery
- Crop simulation models to predict nutrient requirements and optimize application timing

Table 8. Precision nutrient management tools and their applications

Tool	Application
Soil testing	Assessment of soil nutrient status and fertilizer recommendations
Plant tissue analysis	Monitoring of crop nutrient status and identification of deficiencies
Remote sensing (satellite imagery, drones)	Mapping of soil fertility, crop growth, and nutrient stress
Geographical Information Systems (GIS)	Spatial analysis and mapping of soil properties and crop performance
Variable rate fertilizer applicators	Site-specific application of fertilizers based on soil fertility and crop needs
Crop simulation models	Prediction of crop growth, nutrient requirements, and optimal fertilizer rates

6. Smart Agriculture Technologies for Crop Nutrient Management

6.1. Internet of Things (IoT) Sensors

Internet of Things (IoT) sensors enable real-time monitoring of soil moisture, nutrient levels, and environmental conditions, providing valuable data for optimizing crop nutrient management [26]. Examples of IoT sensors include:

- Soil moisture sensors
- Soil nutrient sensors (e.g., pH, electrical conductivity, NPK)
- Weather stations
- Leaf wetness sensors

6.2. Data Analytics and Decision Support Systems

Data analytics and decision support systems integrate data from various sources, such as IoT sensors, remote sensing, and crop models, to provide actionable insights for crop nutrient management [27]. These systems use machine learning algorithms and advanced analytics to:

Table 9. IoT sensors for crop nutrient management

Sensor Type	Parameter Measured	Application
Soil moisture sensor	Volumetric water content or soil matric potential	Irrigation scheduling, fertigation management
Soil nutrient sensor	pH, electrical conductivity, NPK levels	Monitoring soil fertility, guiding fertilizer applications
Weather station	Temperature, humidity, rainfall, wind speed	Crop growth modeling, disease forecasting, irrigation scheduling
Leaf wetness sensor	Duration of leaf wetness	Disease risk assessment, fungicide application timing

- Predict crop nutrient requirements
- Optimize fertilizer application rates and timing
- Identify nutrient deficiencies and stresses
- Assess the effectiveness of nutrient management strategies

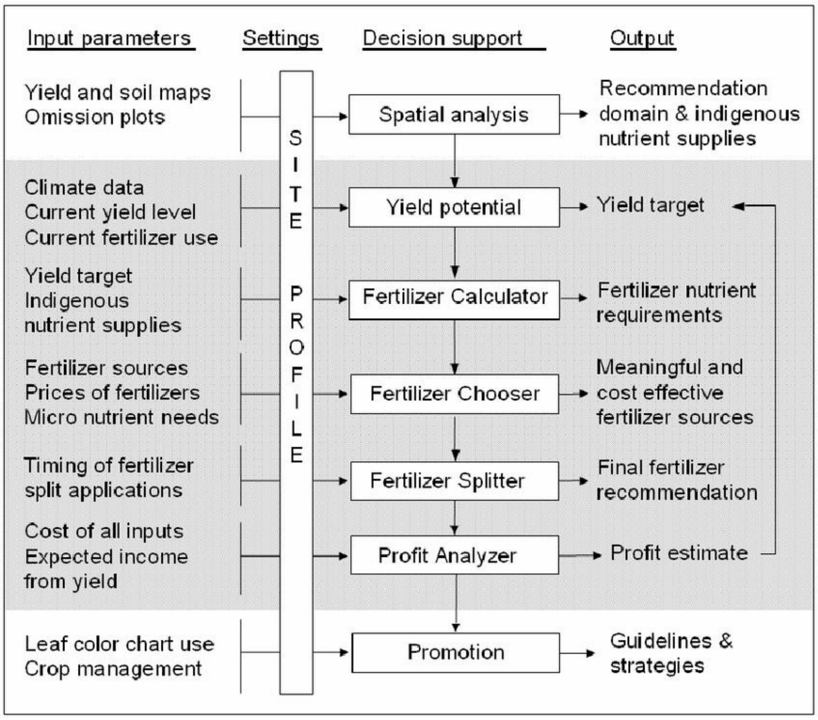


Figure 4. Flowchart of a decision support system for crop nutrient management

6.3. Autonomous Systems and Robotics

Autonomous systems and robotics are emerging technologies that have the potential to revolutionize crop nutrient management by enabling precise and efficient nutrient application [28]. Examples include:

- Autonomous tractors and sprayers for site-specific fertilizer application
- Drones for aerial application of fertilizers and crop monitoring
- Robotic systems for soil sampling and nutrient analysis

Table 10. Autonomous systems and robotics for crop nutrient management

Technology	Application
Autonomous tractors	Precise and efficient fertilizer application, reduced soil compaction
Autonomous sprayers	Site-specific application of liquid fertilizers and foliar sprays
Agricultural drones	Aerial application of fertilizers, crop health monitoring, nutrient stress detection
Robotic soil samplers	Automated collection of soil samples for nutrient analysis
Robotic nutrient analyzers	Rapid and accurate analysis of soil and plant tissue samples

7. Conclusion

Nutrition science plays a vital role in optimizing crop nutrient management for sustainable and productive agriculture. By adopting best management practices, such as integrated nutrient management, precision agriculture, and smart agriculture technologies, farmers can enhance nutrient use efficiency, improve crop yields and quality, and minimize environmental impacts.

In the context of Asia and India, there is a pressing need to tailor nutrient management strategies to the diverse agroecological conditions and cropping systems prevalent in the region. Research institutions, extension services, and government initiatives must work together to develop and disseminate site-specific nutrient management recommendations and technologies.

As we move towards a future of protected cultivation and smart agriculture, the integration of advanced technologies, such as IoT sensors, data analytics, and autonomous systems, will be crucial for optimizing crop nutrient management. By harnessing the power of these technologies and adopting sustainable nutrient management practices, we can ensure food security, enhance farmers' livelihoods, and protect the environment for generations to come.

References:

[1] Maathuis, F. J. (2009). Physiological functions of mineral macronutrients. Current Opinion in Plant Biology, 12(3), 250-258.

[2] Rouphael, Y., & Colla, G. (2020). Editorial: Improving nitrogen use efficiency in crop plants. Frontiers in Plant Science, 11, 1-4.

[3] Gebbers, R., & Adamchuk, V. I. (2010). Precision agriculture and food security. Science, 327(5967), 828-831.

[4] Mulla, D. J. (2013). Twenty five years of remote sensing in precision agriculture: Key advances and remaining knowledge gaps. Biosystems Engineering, 114(4), 358-371.

[5] Robert, P. C. (2002). Precision agriculture: a challenge for crop nutrition management. Plant and Soil, 247(1), 143-149.

[6] Kafkafi, U., & Tarchitzky, J. (2011). Fertigation: a tool for efficient fertilizer and water management. International Fertilizer Industry Association (IFA).

[7] Shaviv, A. (2000). Advances in controlled-release fertilizers. Advances in Agronomy, 71, 1-49.

[8] Trenkel, M. E. (2010). Slow-and controlled-release and stabilized fertilizers: An option for enhancing nutrient use efficiency in agriculture. International Fertilizer Industry Association (IFA).

[9] Chen, J. H. (2006). The combined use of chemical and organic fertilizers and/or biofertilizer for crop growth and soil fertility. In International Workshop on Sustained Management of the Soil-Rhizosphere System for Efficient Crop Production and Fertilizer Use (Vol. 16, p. 20).

[10] Zhang, F., Chen, X., & Vitousek, P. (2013). Chinese agriculture: An experiment for the world. Nature, 497(7447), 33-35.

[11] Masto, R. E., Chhonkar, P. K., Singh, D., & Patra, A. K. (2009). Changes in soil quality indicators under long-term sewage irrigation in a sub-tropical environment. Environmental Geology, 56(6), 1237-1243.

[12] Cui, Z., Zhang, H., Chen, X., Zhang, C., Ma, W., Huang, C., ... & Dou, Z. (2018). Pursuing sustainable productivity with millions of smallholder farmers. Nature, 555(7696), 363-366.

[13] Hartatik, W., & Widowati, L. R. (2006). Pupuk kandang. Pupuk Organik dan Pupuk Hayati, 59-82.

[14] Huan, N. H., Thiet, L. V., Chien, H. V., & Heong, K. L. (2005). Farmers' participatory evaluation of reducing pesticides, fertilizers and seed rates in rice farming in the Mekong Delta, Vietnam. Crop Protection, 24(5), 457-464.

[15] Dobermann, A., Witt, C., Dawe, D., Gines, G. C., Nagarajan, R., Satawathananont, S., ... & Adviento, M. A. A. (2002). Site-specific nutrient management for intensive rice cropping systems in Asia. Field Crops Research, 74(1), 37-66.

[16] Singh, A. K., Bordoloi, L. J., Kumar, M., Hazarika, S., & Parmar, B. (2014). Land use impact on soil quality in eastern Himalayan region of India. Environmental Monitoring and Assessment, 186(4), 2013-2024.

[17] Velayutham, M., Pal, D. K., & Bhattacharyya, T. (2000). Organic carbon stock in soils of India. Global Climatic Change and Tropical Ecosystems, 71-95.

[18] Timsina, J., & Connor, D. J. (2001). Productivity and management of rice–wheat cropping systems: issues and challenges. Field Crops Research, 69(2), 93-132.

[19] Department of Agriculture, Cooperation & Farmers Welfare. (2020). Soil Health Card Scheme. https://soilhealth.dac.gov.in/

[20] Prasad, R. (2009). Efficient fertilizer use: The key to food security and better environment. Journal of Tropical Agriculture, 47(1-2), 1-17.

[21] Sharma, V. K., Dwivedi, B. S., & Singh, M. (2016). Nutrient-based subsidies in India: An insight into the performance and implications. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, India Section B: Biological Sciences, 86(4), 927-936.

[22] Bhattarai, S. P., Midmore, D. J., & Pendergast, L. (2008). Yield, water-use efficiencies and root distribution of soybean, chickpea and pumpkin under different subsurface drip irrigation depths and oxygation treatments in vertisols. Irrigation Science, 26(5), 439-450.

[23] Wu, W., & Ma, B. (2015). Integrated nutrient management (INM) for sustaining crop productivity and reducing environmental impact: A review. Science of the Total Environment, 512, 415-427.

[24] Oenema, O., Kros, H., & de Vries, W. (2003). Approaches and uncertainties in nutrient budgets: implications for nutrient management and environmental policies. European Journal of Agronomy, 20(1-2), 3-16.

[25] Dobermann, A., & Cassman, K. G. (2002). Plant nutrient management for enhanced productivity in intensive grain production systems of the United States and Asia. Plant and Soil, 247(1), 153-175.

[26] Roopaei, M., Rad, P., & Choo, K. K. R. (2017). Cloud of things in smart agriculture: Intelligent irrigation monitoring by thermal imaging. IEEE Cloud Computing, 4(1), 10-15.

[27] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big data in smart farming–a review. Agricultural Systems, 153, 69-80.

[28] Shamshiri, R. R., Weltzien, C., Hameed, I. A., Yule, I. J., Grift, T. E., Balasundram, S. K., ... & Chowdhary, G. (2018). Research and development in agricultural robotics: A perspective of digital farming. International Journal of Agricultural and Biological Engineering, 11(4), 1-14.

CHAPTER -9

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Soil Fertility and Nutrient Management

[1]Vikash Tyagi,[2]Yashraj, and [3]Nisha yadav

[1]Ph.D research scholar (Horti) Department of Vegetable Science sardar vallabhbhai patel agri. & tech . Uni. Modipuram meerut 250110

[2]M.sc (Horti), Department of Vegetable Science sardar vallabhbhai patel agri. & tech . Uni. Modipuram meerut 250110

[3]Ph.D. Department of Agriculture Extension Education, sardar Vallabhbhai Patel Agriculture and Technology University Modipuram Meerut

Corresponding Author
[1]Vikash Tyagi

Abstract

Soil fertility and nutrient management are critical components of sustainable agriculture, especially in the context of protected cultivation and smart agriculture. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of soil fertility and nutrient management practices worldwide, with a specific focus on Asia and India. It discusses the importance of maintaining optimal soil health, the role of essential plant nutrients, and various strategies for managing soil fertility in protected cultivation systems. The chapter highlights the global trends in soil fertility management, including the use of organic amendments, precision farming techniques, and integrated nutrient management approaches. It also explores the challenges faced by farmers in Asia and India, such as soil degradation, nutrient imbalances, and the need for sustainable intensification. The chapter emphasizes the significance of adopting smart agriculture technologies, such as sensor-based nutrient monitoring, fertigation, and decision support systems, to optimize nutrient use efficiency and minimize environmental impacts. It presents case studies and research findings from different countries, showcasing successful examples of soil fertility management in protected cultivation. The chapter also addresses the role of policy interventions, extension services, and capacity building in promoting sustainable soil fertility management practices among farmers. Finally, it discusses the future prospects and research needs in the field of soil fertility and nutrient management, focusing on the integration of advanced technologies, such as precision agriculture, remote sensing, and data analytics, to develop site-specific nutrient management strategies. The chapter concludes by highlighting the importance of a holistic approach to soil fertility management, encompassing crop diversification, soil health assessment, and participatory learning, to ensure long-term sustainability and productivity in protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems.

Keywords: Soil Fertility, Nutrient Management, Protected Cultivation, Smart Agriculture, Sustainable Intensification

Soil fertility and nutrient management are fundamental aspects of sustainable agriculture, playing a crucial role in maintaining crop productivity, quality, and environmental health. In the context of protected cultivation and smart agriculture, where crops are grown under controlled conditions, optimizing soil fertility and nutrient management becomes even more critical. Protected cultivation systems, such as greenhouses, polyhouses, and net houses, provide an opportunity to regulate the growing environment, including soil moisture, temperature, and nutrient supply, to maximize crop yields and quality [1]. Smart agriculture technologies, such as precision farming, sensor-based monitoring, and data-driven decision support systems, further enhance the efficiency and sustainability of nutrient management practices [2].

However, managing soil fertility and nutrients in protected cultivation poses unique challenges, such as limited soil volume, intensive cropping, and the need for precise control over nutrient delivery. Moreover, the global diversity in soil types, agro-climatic conditions, and farming practices necessitates the development of context-specific nutrient management strategies. This chapter aims to provide a comprehensive overview of soil fertility and nutrient management practices in protected cultivation and smart agriculture, with a focus on the world, Asia, and India. It discusses the global trends, challenges, and opportunities in soil fertility management, the role of essential plant nutrients, various nutrient management strategies, and the adoption of smart agriculture technologies. The chapter also presents case studies and research findings from different countries, highlighting successful examples of soil fertility management in protected cultivation. Finally, it explores the future prospects and research needs in this field, emphasizing the importance of a holistic approach to soil fertility management for sustainable and productive agriculture.

2. Global Overview of Soil Fertility and Nutrient Management

Soil fertility and nutrient management practices vary widely across the world, influenced by factors such as soil type, climate, cropping systems, and socio-economic conditions. Table 1 presents the major soil types found worldwide and their characteristics, including texture, pH range, organic matter content, and nutrient availability [3].

Table 1: **Major soil types and their characteristics worldwide**

Soil Type	Texture	pH Range	Organic Matter Content	Nutrient Availability
Alfisols	Loamy	5.5-7.0	Moderate	Moderate
Andisols	Volcanic ash	5.0-7.0	High	High
Aridisols	Sandy	7.0-8.5	Low	Low
Entisols	Variable	Variable	Low	Variable
Gelisols	Permafrost	Variable	High	Low
Histosols	Organic	3.5-5.5	Very high	Variable
Inceptisols	Variable	Variable	Moderate	Moderate
Mollisols	Loamy	5.5-7.5	High	High
Oxisols	Clayey	3.5-5.5	Low	Low
Spodosols	Sandy	3.5-5.0	High	Low
Ultisols	Clayey	3.5-5.5	Low	Low
Vertisols	Clayey	6.0-8.0	Moderate	Moderate

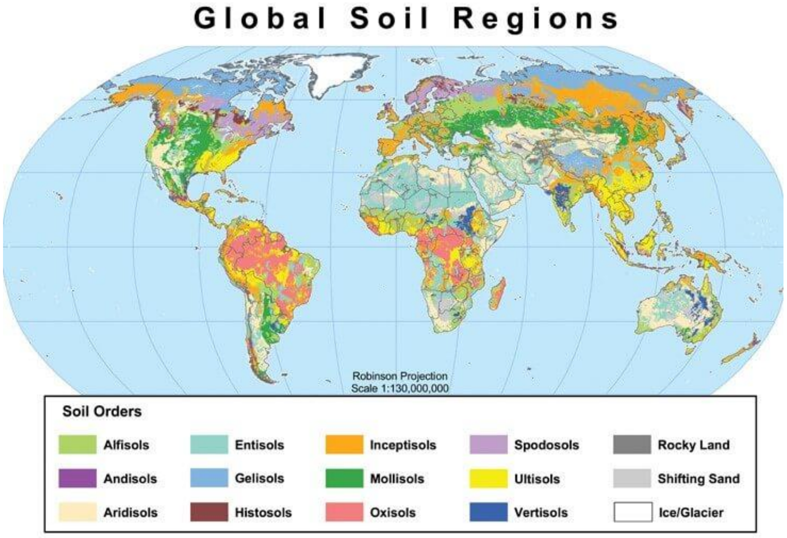


Figure 1: **Global distribution of soil types**

The global trends in soil fertility management emphasize the adoption of sustainable practices that maintain soil health, optimize nutrient use efficiency, and minimize environmental impacts. These trends include:

1. Increasing use of organic amendments, such as compost, green manures, and animal manures, to improve soil organic matter content, nutrient retention, and microbial activity [5].
2. Adoption of precision farming techniques, such as site-specific nutrient management, variable rate application, and sensor-based monitoring, to optimize nutrient inputs based on crop needs and soil variability [6].
3. Integrated nutrient management approaches that combine organic and inorganic nutrient sources, along with crop rotations, intercropping, and agroforestry, to enhance soil fertility and biodiversity [7].
4. Growing interest in conservation agriculture practices, such as minimum tillage, crop residue retention, and cover cropping, to reduce soil erosion, improve soil structure, and enhance nutrient cycling [8].
5. Increasing awareness of the importance of soil health assessment, including the measurement of physical, chemical, and biological soil properties, to guide nutrient management decisions [9].

These global trends reflect the growing recognition of the need for sustainable soil fertility management practices that balance crop production with environmental stewardship. However, the adoption of these practices varies widely across regions and farming systems, influenced by factors such as resource availability, infrastructure, policy support, and knowledge dissemination [10].

3. Essential Plant Nutrients and Their Roles

Plants require a balanced supply of essential nutrients for optimal growth, development, and yield. These nutrients are classified into macronutrients and micronutrients based on their relative quantities required by plants. Table 2 presents the macronutrients and their primary functions in plants [11].

Table 2: **Macronutrients and their functions in plants**

Nutrient	Symbol	Primary Functions
Nitrogen	N	Protein synthesis, chlorophyll formation, vegetative growth
Phosphorus	P	Energy transfer, root development, flower and fruit formation
Potassium	K	Enzyme activation, water and nutrient transport, stress tolerance
Calcium	Ca	Cell wall formation, root and leaf development, enzyme activation
Magnesium	Mg	Chlorophyll synthesis, enzyme activation, photosynthesis
Sulfur	S	Protein synthesis, chlorophyll formation, disease resistance

Micronutrients, including iron (Fe), manganese (Mn), zinc (Zn), copper (Cu), boron (B), molybdenum (Mo), and chlorine (Cl), are required in smaller quantities but are equally essential for various plant metabolic processes [12]. Deficiencies or excesses of these nutrients can lead to yield reductions, quality deterioration, and increased susceptibility to pests and diseases.

In protected cultivation systems, where the growing medium is often soilless or artificially managed, ensuring an adequate and balanced supply of essential nutrients becomes critical. Nutrient management in these systems involves the precise control of nutrient concentrations in the root zone, considering factors such as crop type, growth stage, and environmental conditions [13]. Smart agriculture technologies, such as fertigation systems, hydroponic nutrient solutions, and sensor-based monitoring, enable the real-time adjustment of nutrient supply to match crop requirements [14].

4. Soil Fertility Assessment Techniques

Assessing soil fertility is crucial for making informed nutrient management decisions. Soil fertility assessment techniques involve the measurement of physical, chemical, and biological properties of the soil that influence nutrient availability and plant growth.

Some common soil fertility assessment techniques include:

1. Soil testing: Soil samples are collected from the field and analyzed in a laboratory for pH, organic matter content, macronutrients (N, P, K), and micronutrients (Fe, Mn, Zn, Cu, B) [15]. Soil test results provide a basis for determining nutrient application rates and identifying potential nutrient deficiencies or toxicities.
2. Plant tissue analysis: Plant tissue samples, usually leaves or petioles, are collected at specific growth stages and analyzed for nutrient concentrations [16]. Plant tissue analysis helps in diagnosing nutrient deficiencies or imbalances that may not be apparent from visual symptoms or soil tests.
3. Visual symptoms: Nutrient deficiencies often manifest as characteristic visual symptoms on leaves, such as chlorosis (yellowing), necrosis (dead tissue), or stunted growth [17]. Recognizing these symptoms can help in identifying nutrient limitations and guiding corrective measures.
4. Soil health indicators: Soil health assessment involves the measurement of physical (e.g., soil structure, water holding capacity), chemical (e.g., pH, cation exchange capacity), and biological (e.g., soil microbial biomass, enzyme activities) properties that indicate the overall quality and function of the soil [18].
5. Remote sensing: Remote sensing techniques, such as satellite imagery, aerial photography, and drone-based sensors, can provide spatial information on soil properties, crop health, and nutrient status [19]. These techniques enable the mapping of soil fertility variability and the development of site-specific nutrient management strategies.

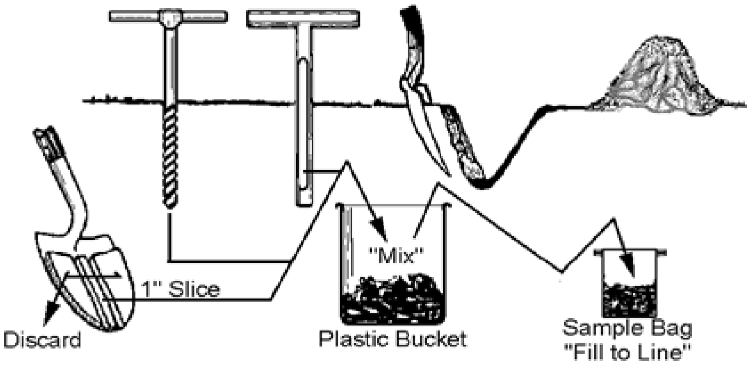


Figure 2: **Soil sampling procedure for fertility assessment**

In protected cultivation systems, soil fertility assessment may involve additional considerations, such as the analysis of growing media (e.g., peat, coco peat, rockwool) or hydroponic nutrient solutions [21]. Continuous monitoring of pH, electrical conductivity (EC), and nutrient concentrations using sensors and automated systems enables the real-time adjustment of nutrient supply to maintain optimal growing conditions [22].

5. Nutrient Management Strategies in Protected Cultivation

Nutrient management in protected cultivation systems involves the precise control of nutrient supply to meet crop requirements while minimizing losses and environmental impacts. Various nutrient management strategies are employed in protected cultivation, depending on the type of growing system, crop, and environmental conditions. Table 3 compares the advantages, disadvantages, and applicability of different nutrient management strategies in protected cultivation [23].

Fertigation, the application of nutrients through irrigation water, is a common practice in protected cultivation, particularly in hydroponic and substrate-based systems [24]. Fertigation enables the precise control of nutrient concentrations and timing of application, ensuring optimal nutrient availability to plants. The use of smart agriculture technologies, such as sensor-based monitoring, automated fertigation systems, and decision support tools, further enhances the efficiency and precision of nutrient management in protected cultivation [25].

Table 3: **Comparison of nutrient management strategies in protected cultivation**

Strategy	Advantages	Disadvantages	Applicability
Fertigation	Precise nutrient delivery, efficient use of water and nutrients	High initial cost, requires technical expertise	Greenhouses, hydroponic systems
Foliar application	Quick nutrient uptake, effective for micronutrient deficiencies	Limited nutrient quantity, risk of leaf burn	Supplemental application, micronutrient correction
Slow-release fertilizers	Gradual nutrient release, reduced leaching losses	Higher cost, limited control over release rate	Container-grown crops, nurseries
Organic amendments	Improve soil health, enhance nutrient retention	Slow nutrient release, variable composition	Soil-based protected cultivation
Biofertilizers	Eco-friendly, improve soil microbial activity	Inconsistent performance, requires specific conditions	Integrated nutrient management
Precision farming	Site-specific nutrient application, optimized resource use	High technology cost, requires data management	Large-scale protected cultivation

Integrated nutrient management (INM) is another promising approach for sustainable soil fertility management in protected cultivation. INM involves the judicious combination of organic and inorganic nutrient sources, along with the use of biofertilizers, to maintain soil health and productivity [26]. Organic amendments, such as compost, vermicompost, and green manures, improve soil physical, chemical, and biological properties, while also providing a slow-release source of nutrients [27]. Biofertilizers, such as nitrogen-fixing bacteria, phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms, and mycorrhizal fungi, enhance nutrient availability and plant uptake, reducing the reliance on chemical fertilizers [28].

6. Challenges and Opportunities in Asia and India

Asia, being the largest and most populous continent, faces significant challenges in soil fertility and nutrient management. The region is characterized by diverse soil types, agro-climatic conditions, and farming systems, which influence the nutrient management practices and their effectiveness [29]. Table 4 summarizes the major soil fertility issues prevalent in different parts of Asia and India [30].

Table 4: **Major soil fertility issues in Asia and India**

Country/Region	Soil Fertility Issues
China	Soil acidification, heavy metal contamination, nutrient imbalances
India	Nutrient depletion, soil salinization, micronutrient deficiencies
Southeast Asia	Soil erosion, acidification, nutrient leaching
Central Asia	Soil salinization, low organic matter content, wind erosion
West Asia	Soil degradation, water scarcity, nutrient deficiencies

In India, the increasing population pressure, intensive cropping, and imbalanced fertilizer use have led to the depletion of soil nutrients, particularly in regions with high cropping intensity [31]. The excessive use of nitrogenous fertilizers, coupled with the inadequate application of other nutrients, has resulted in nutrient imbalances and the decline of soil organic matter [32]. Moreover, the limited adoption of soil testing and site-specific nutrient management practices has led to the inefficient use of fertilizers and the aggravation of soil fertility issues [33].

Protected cultivation, being a relatively new and expanding sector in India, offers opportunities for the adoption of sustainable nutrient management practices. The controlled environment of protected cultivation systems enables the precise management of nutrients, water, and other inputs, leading to higher resource use efficiency and crop productivity [34]. However, the high initial cost of setting up protected cultivation units, the lack of technical knowledge among farmers, and the limited availability of quality inputs and services pose challenges to the widespread adoption of these systems [35].

To address these challenges and promote sustainable soil fertility management in Asia and India, several opportunities exist:

1. Strengthening soil testing infrastructure and increasing farmers' access to soil health information through mobile soil testing labs, online portals, and mobile apps [36].

2. Promoting the adoption of precision farming techniques, such as sensor-based nutrient management, variable rate application, and decision support systems, to optimize nutrient use efficiency and reduce environmental impacts [37].
3. Encouraging the use of organic amendments and biofertilizers through subsidies, capacity building, and the establishment of decentralized production units [38].
4. Developing and disseminating site-specific nutrient management recommendations based on crop, soil type, and agro-climatic conditions, using tools such as the Nutrient Expert system [39].
5. Strengthening research and extension services to generate and disseminate knowledge on sustainable soil fertility management practices, particularly for protected cultivation systems [40].
6. Promoting farmer-led innovations and participatory learning approaches, such as farmer field schools and community-based organizations, to foster the adoption of sustainable practices [41].

These opportunities, if harnessed effectively, can contribute to the sustainable intensification of agriculture in Asia and India, ensuring food security, environmental sustainability, and improved livelihoods for farmers.

7. Case Studies of Successful Soil Fertility Management

Several successful examples of soil fertility management in protected cultivation systems exist worldwide, demonstrating the potential for sustainable intensification. These case studies highlight the adoption of innovative practices, technologies, and approaches that have led to improved crop productivity, resource use efficiency, and environmental sustainability. Some notable examples include:

Case Studies of Successful Soil Fertility Management

Integrated nutrient management in greenhouse vegetable production in China: A study conducted in Shouguang, China, demonstrated the effectiveness of integrated nutrient management practices in greenhouse vegetable production [42]. The combination of organic amendments (compost and green manures), reduced chemical fertilizer rates, and fertigation led to a 15-20% increase in vegetable yields, improved soil health, and reduced nutrient losses compared to conventional practices.

Precision nutrient management in hydroponic strawberry cultivation in Japan: A case study from Tochigi Prefecture, Japan, showcased the application of precision nutrient management in hydroponic strawberry cultivation [43]. The use of sensor-based monitoring systems, automated fertigation control, and crop-specific nutrient solutions resulted in a 20% increase in strawberry yield, improved fruit quality, and a 30% reduction in nutrient and water use compared to conventional hydroponic systems.

Organic farming of greenhouse tomatoes in Italy: A study conducted in Sicily, Italy, demonstrated the successful adoption of organic farming practices in greenhouse tomato production [44]. The use of organic amendments, crop rotations, and biological pest control methods led to comparable yields, improved soil fertility, and enhanced biodiversity compared to conventional greenhouse systems. The organic tomatoes also fetched premium prices in the market, increasing farmers' profitability.

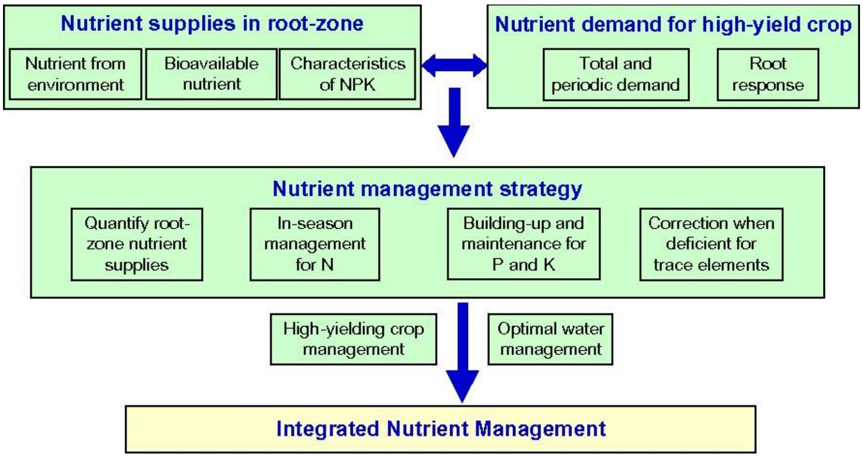


Figure 3: **Yield improvement through integrated nutrient management in protected cultivation**

7. **Smart Agriculture Technologies for Nutrient Management:** Smart agriculture technologies play a crucial role in optimizing nutrient management in protected cultivation systems. These technologies enable the real-time monitoring of soil and plant nutrient status, the precise application of nutrients, and the data-driven decision-making for nutrient management.

Some key smart agriculture technologies for nutrient management include:

1. Sensor-based nutrient monitoring: Various types of sensors are used to monitor nutrient concentrations in soil, growing media, or hydroponic solutions.

Table 5: **Sensor-based nutrient monitoring systems**

Sensor Type	**Measured Parameters**	**Application**
Ion-selective electrodes	Specific nutrient ions (e.g., NO_3^-, K^+)	Hydroponic systems, fertigation
Electrical conductivity sensors	Total dissolved solids, nutrient concentration	Hydroponic systems, soil solution
Spectral sensors	Leaf chlorophyll content, nutrient deficiencies	Precision farming, variable rate application
Soil moisture sensors	Soil water content, nutrient availability	Irrigation scheduling, fertigation
pH sensors	Soil or solution pH, nutrient solubility	Hydroponic systems, soil management

2. Automated fertigation systems: Automated fertigation systems enable the precise control of nutrient and water delivery to plants based on real-time sensor data and crop-specific models [47]. These systems optimize nutrient use efficiency, reduce labor costs, and minimize nutrient losses through leaching or runoff.
3. Decision support systems: Decision support systems integrate data from sensors, weather stations, and crop models to provide recommendations for nutrient management [48]. These systems help farmers make informed decisions on nutrient application rates, timing, and methods based on site-specific conditions and crop requirements.
4. Precision farming tools: Precision farming tools, such as variable rate applicators, GPS-guided machinery, and drone-based sensors, enable the site-

specific application of nutrients based on soil variability and crop needs [49]. These tools optimize nutrient use efficiency, reduce input costs, and minimize environmental impacts.

The adoption of smart agriculture technologies for nutrient management in protected cultivation systems offers several benefits, including increased crop yields, improved nutrient use efficiency, reduced environmental footprint, and enhanced profitability for farmers [50]. However, the high initial cost, technical complexity, and the need for skilled labor and infrastructure pose challenges to the widespread adoption of these technologies, particularly in developing countries [51].

9. Policy Interventions and Extension Services: Effective policy interventions and extension services are essential for promoting sustainable soil fertility management practices in protected cultivation systems. Governments and international organizations play a crucial role in creating an enabling environment for the adoption of these practices through various policy measures and programs. Some key policy interventions and extension services include:

1. Subsidies and incentives: Providing subsidies and incentives for the adoption of sustainable soil fertility management practices, such as integrated nutrient management, precision farming, and organic farming, can encourage farmers to shift towards these practices [52]. These incentives can be in the form of direct payments, tax credits, or cost-sharing programs.
2. Research and development: Investing in research and development programs focused on sustainable soil fertility management practices, particularly for protected cultivation systems, can generate new knowledge, technologies, and innovations [53]. Collaborative research projects involving universities, research institutions, and industry partners can foster the development and dissemination of locally adapted solutions.
3. Capacity building and training: Providing training and capacity building programs for farmers, extension agents, and other stakeholders can enhance their knowledge and skills in sustainable soil fertility management practices [54]. These programs can include workshops, field demonstrations, and

online courses covering topics such as soil testing, integrated nutrient management, precision farming, and organic farming.

4. Extension services: Strengthening extension services to provide technical guidance, advisory services, and information dissemination on sustainable soil fertility management practices can facilitate their adoption by farmers [55]. Extension agents can serve as a bridge between research and practice, helping farmers adapt and implement these practices based on their local conditions and needs.
5. Participatory approaches: Promoting participatory approaches, such as farmer field schools, community-based organizations, and multi-stakeholder platforms, can foster the co-creation and sharing of knowledge on sustainable soil fertility management practices [56]. These approaches enable farmers to learn from each other, experiment with new practices, and develop locally adapted solutions.

Figure 4 illustrates the participatory learning approach for promoting sustainable soil fertility management practices, highlighting the key components and their interrelationships [57].

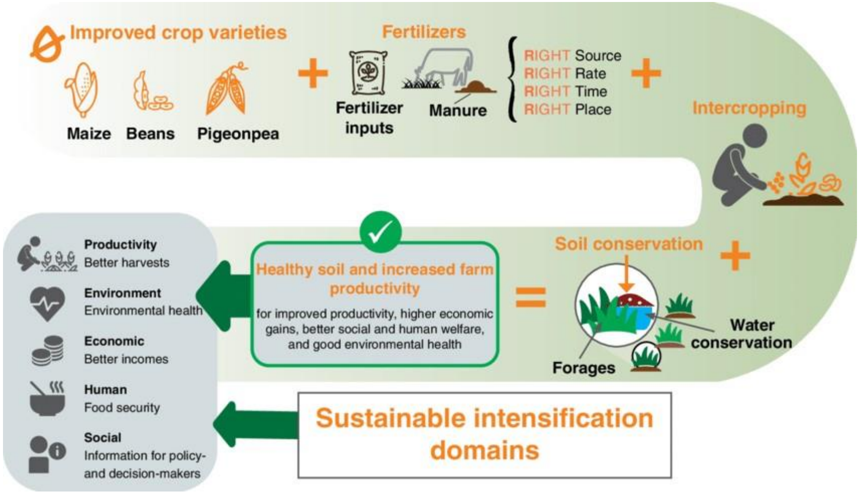


Figure 4: **Participatory learning approach for promoting sustainable soil fertility management**

Effective policy interventions and extension services require a multi-stakeholder and multi-disciplinary approach, involving collaboration among governments, research institutions, civil society organizations, and the private sector. The integration of scientific knowledge with local knowledge and practices is crucial for developing context-specific and socially acceptable solutions for sustainable soil fertility management in protected cultivation systems.

10. Capacity Building and Farmers' Empowerment: Capacity building and farmers' empowerment are critical for the successful adoption and scaling up of sustainable soil fertility management practices in protected cultivation systems. Farmers, being the key decision-makers and implementers of these practices, need to be equipped with the necessary knowledge, skills, and resources to effectively manage soil fertility and nutrients. Some strategies for capacity building and farmers' empowerment include:

1. Training programs: Conducting training programs on sustainable soil fertility management practices, tailored to the specific needs and contexts of farmers, can enhance their technical capacity and decision-making skills. Table 6 presents a sample of training modules that can be offered to farmers engaged in protected cultivation [58].

Table 6: **Training modules for soil fertility management in protected cultivation**

Module	**Topics Covered**	**Duration**
Soil health assessment	Soil sampling, testing, interpretation of results	2 days
Nutrient management planning	Crop nutrient requirements, fertilizer selection, application methods	3 days
Organic farming practices	Composting, green manuring, crop rotation, bio-fertilizers	4 days
Fertigation and hydroponic systems	System design, nutrient solution preparation, monitoring and control	5 days
Precision agriculture technologies	Sensor-based nutrient management, variable rate application, data analysis	3 days

2. Farmer field schools: Establishing farmer field schools, where farmers can learn and experiment with sustainable soil fertility management practices in a

participatory and hands-on manner, can foster peer-to-peer learning and local innovation [59]. Farmer field schools provide a platform for farmers to share their experiences, discuss challenges, and develop locally adapted solutions.

3. Access to information and decision support tools: Providing farmers with access to reliable and timely information on soil fertility management, through various channels such as mobile apps, SMS services, and online portals, can support their decision-making [60]. Decision support tools, such as nutrient management calculators and crop-specific advisories, can help farmers optimize nutrient application based on their local conditions and crop requirements.
4. Farmer-led research and innovation: Encouraging and supporting farmer-led research and innovation in sustainable soil fertility management practices can foster local ownership and adaptation [61]. Farmers can be involved in the design, implementation, and evaluation of on-farm trials and experiments, in collaboration with researchers and extension agents. This approach values farmers' knowledge and creativity, and promotes the development of context-specific solutions.
5. Access to inputs and services: Facilitating farmers' access to quality inputs (e.g., fertilizers, organic amendments, bio-fertilizers) and services (e.g., soil testing, advisory services) is crucial for the adoption of sustainable soil fertility management practices [62]. Establishing input supply chains, quality control mechanisms, and service delivery models that are accessible and affordable to farmers can support their transition towards these practices.

Capacity building and farmers' empowerment require a long-term and multi-pronged approach, involving the collaboration of various stakeholders, such as governments, research institutions, civil society organizations, and the private sector. The empowerment of farmers as active participants and decision-makers in the process of soil fertility management is essential for the sustainability and scalability of these practices in protected cultivation systems.

11. Future Prospects and Research Needs: The future of soil fertility and nutrient management in protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems holds immense potential for sustainable intensification and resource use efficiency. However, realizing this potential requires continued research, innovation, and collaboration among various stakeholders. Some key future prospects and research needs in this field include:

1. Integration of advanced technologies: The integration of advanced technologies, such as precision agriculture, remote sensing, data analytics, and artificial intelligence, can revolutionize soil fertility and nutrient management practices in protected cultivation systems [63]. These technologies enable the real-time monitoring of soil and crop conditions, the precise application of nutrients, and the data-driven optimization of nutrient management strategies. Figure 5 illustrates the precision agriculture workflow for site-specific nutrient management, highlighting the integration of various technologies and data sources [64].

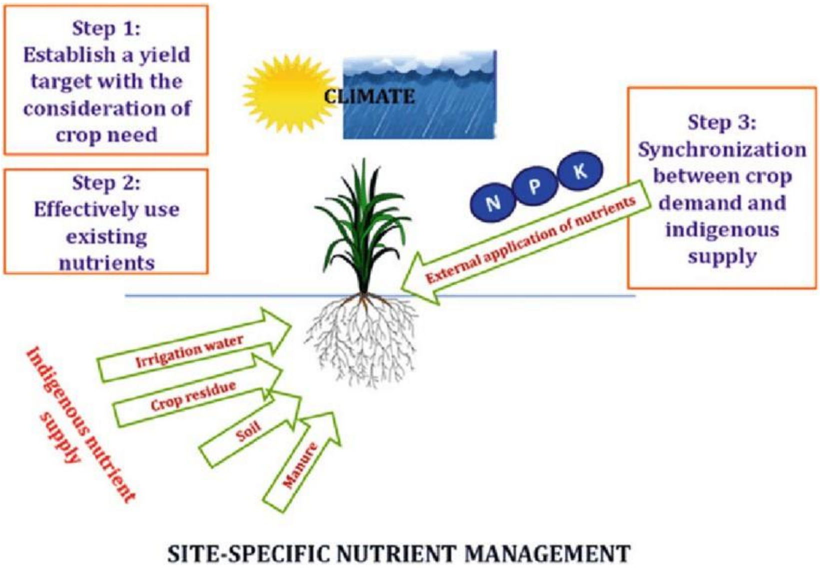


Figure 5: **Precision agriculture workflow for site-specific nutrient management**

2. Development of smart fertilizers: The development of smart fertilizers, such as nano-fertilizers, controlled-release fertilizers, and bio-fertilizers, can enhance nutrient use efficiency and minimize environmental impacts in

protected cultivation systems [65]. These fertilizers can deliver nutrients in a targeted and timely manner, syncing with crop demand and reducing nutrient losses through leaching or volatilization. Research on the formulation, efficacy, and safety of smart fertilizers is needed to accelerate their adoption in protected cultivation.

3. Soil microbiome management: The soil microbiome plays a crucial role in nutrient cycling, plant growth promotion, and disease suppression in protected cultivation systems [66]. Research on the characterization, manipulation, and management of soil microbiomes can unlock new opportunities for sustainable soil fertility management. This includes the development of microbial inoculants, the optimization of organic amendment practices, and the use of microbiome-based indicators for soil health assessment.
4. Circular nutrient management: The adoption of circular nutrient management approaches, such as the recycling of organic waste streams (e.g., crop residues, animal manures, food waste) into value-added fertilizers and amendments, can enhance the sustainability and resilience of protected cultivation systems [67]. Research on the safe and efficient recycling of organic waste, the development of locally adapted composting and anaerobic digestion technologies, and the assessment of the agronomic and environmental impacts of recycled nutrients is needed.
5. Climate-smart nutrient management: The impacts of climate change, such as increased temperature, altered precipitation patterns, and extreme weather events, pose challenges to soil fertility and nutrient management in protected cultivation systems [68]. Research on climate-smart nutrient management strategies, such as the use of resilient crop varieties, the optimization of irrigation and fertigation practices, and the adaptation of nutrient management to changing climatic conditions, is crucial for the long-term sustainability of these systems.
6. Policy and institutional innovations: Enabling policy and institutional innovations are needed to support the scaling up and mainstreaming of

sustainable soil fertility and nutrient management practices in protected cultivation systems [69]. This includes the development of incentive mechanisms (e.g., payments for ecosystem services, carbon credits), the strengthening of extension and advisory services, the promotion of public-private partnerships, and the integration of soil fertility management into national and regional agricultural development plans.

Addressing these research needs and realizing the future prospects of soil fertility and nutrient management in protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems require a multi-disciplinary and multi-stakeholder approach. Collaboration among researchers, farmers, policymakers, and industry partners is essential for the co-design, co-development, and co-implementation of sustainable and context-specific solutions. The integration of scientific knowledge with local knowledge and practices, the empowerment of farmers as active participants and decision-makers, and the creation of an enabling policy and institutional environment are key to unlocking the potential of soil fertility and nutrient management for sustainable intensification and food security.

12. Integration of Advanced Technologies: The integration of advanced technologies in soil fertility and nutrient management has the potential to revolutionize protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems. These technologies enable the precise monitoring, analysis, and management of soil and crop conditions, leading to optimized nutrient use efficiency, reduced environmental impacts, and increased crop productivity. Some key advanced technologies and their applications in soil fertility and nutrient management include:

1. Remote sensing: Remote sensing technologies, such as satellite imagery, unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs), and proximal sensors, provide non-destructive and high-resolution data on soil and crop conditions [70]. These technologies can be used for soil mapping, crop health monitoring, nutrient deficiency detection, and yield prediction. The integration of remote sensing data with ground-based measurements and crop models enables the development of site-specific nutrient management strategies.

2. Geographical Information Systems (GIS): GIS technologies allow the spatial analysis and visualization of soil fertility and nutrient management data [71]. GIS can be used for the mapping of soil properties, the delineation of management zones, and the optimization of nutrient application rates based on site-specific conditions. The integration of GIS with remote sensing and precision agriculture technologies enables the development of variable rate application maps and the evaluation of the effectiveness of nutrient management practices.
3. Artificial Intelligence (AI): AI technologies, such as machine learning and deep learning, can be used for the analysis and interpretation of large and complex datasets related to soil fertility and nutrient management [72]. AI can be applied for the prediction of crop nutrient requirements, the diagnosis of nutrient deficiencies, and the optimization of nutrient management decisions based on historical and real-time data. The integration of AI with sensor networks and decision support systems can enable the development of autonomous and adaptive nutrient management systems.
4. Blockchain: Blockchain technology can be used for the traceability and transparency of nutrient inputs and management practices in protected cultivation systems [73]. Blockchain enables the secure and immutable recording of data related to the source, quality, and application of fertilizers and amendments, as well as the verification of sustainable nutrient management practices. The integration of blockchain with sensor networks and supply chain management systems can enhance the trust and accountability in the nutrient management value chain.
5. Internet of Things (IoT): IoT technologies enable the real-time monitoring and control of soil and crop conditions through a network of sensors, actuators, and communication devices [74]. IoT can be used for the automated collection and transmission of data related to soil moisture, nutrient levels, pH, and temperature, as well as the remote control of irrigation and fertigation systems. The integration of IoT with cloud

computing and data analytics platforms enables the development of smart and responsive nutrient management systems.

Table 7: **Examples of advanced technologies for soil fertility management**

Technology	**Application**	**Benefits**
Remote sensing	Soil mapping, crop health monitoring	Large-area coverage, real-time data
Geographical Information Systems (GIS)	Spatial analysis, nutrient management zoning	Site-specific recommendations, reduced nutrient losses
Artificial Intelligence (AI)	Nutrient deficiency diagnosis, yield prediction	Automated decision making, improved accuracy
Blockchain	Traceability of nutrient inputs, quality assurance	Enhanced transparency, secure data management
Internet of Things (IoT)	Real-time monitoring, automated nutrient delivery	Optimized resource use, timely interventions

The integration of advanced technologies in soil fertility and nutrient management requires a multi-disciplinary approach, involving expertise in agronomy, soil science, computer science, and data science. The development and adoption of these technologies also require significant investments in infrastructure, capacity building, and policy support. The creation of enabling environments, such as innovation hubs, incubation centers, and public-private partnerships, can accelerate the development and scaling of advanced technologies for sustainable soil fertility and nutrient management in protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems.

13. Holistic Approach to Soil Fertility Management: A holistic approach to soil fertility management is essential for the long-term sustainability and productivity of protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems. This approach recognizes the complex interactions among soil physical, chemical, and biological properties, as well as the multiple functions of soil in supporting crop growth, nutrient cycling, water regulation, and ecosystem services. A holistic approach to soil fertility management encompasses various strategies, practices, and technologies that aim to optimize soil health, nutrient use efficiency, and crop productivity while minimizing environmental impacts. Figure 6 illustrates the key components of a holistic soil fertility management approach [76].

Some key elements of a holistic approach to soil fertility management include:

1. Soil health assessment: Regular assessment and monitoring of soil health indicators, such as soil organic matter, nutrient levels, pH, soil structure, and microbial activity, provide a comprehensive understanding of soil fertility status and trends [77]. This information guides the selection and adaptation of appropriate soil management practices and technologies.
2. Integrated nutrient management: Integrated nutrient management involves the judicious use of organic and inorganic nutrient sources, based on crop requirements, soil properties, and environmental conditions [78]. This approach optimizes nutrient use efficiency, reduces nutrient losses, and enhances soil fertility and crop productivity.
3. Organic amendments: The use of organic amendments, such as compost, animal manure, green manure, and biochar, enhances soil organic matter content, improves soil structure, and supports beneficial soil microorganisms [79]. Organic amendments also provide a slow-release source of nutrients and improve soil water holding capacity.
4. Crop diversification: Crop diversification, through practices such as crop rotation, intercropping, and cover cropping, enhances soil fertility, breaks pest and disease cycles, and improves nutrient cycling [80]. Diversified cropping systems also promote biodiversity, reduce soil erosion, and enhance the resilience of protected cultivation systems.
5. Precision agriculture: Precision agriculture technologies, such as site-specific nutrient management, variable rate application, and sensor-based monitoring, enable the optimization of nutrient inputs based on spatial and temporal variability in soil and crop conditions [81]. These technologies improve nutrient use efficiency, reduce environmental impacts, and increase crop yields and quality.
6. Stakeholder engagement: Engaging stakeholders, including farmers, researchers, extension agents, policymakers, and industry partners, is crucial for the co-design, co-development, and co-implementation of holistic soil

fertility management strategies [82]. Participatory approaches, such as farmer field schools, innovation platforms, and multi-stakeholder dialogues, foster knowledge sharing, social learning, and collective action.

A holistic approach to soil fertility management requires a systems perspective, considering the interactions and trade-offs among multiple objectives, such as crop productivity, soil health, environmental sustainability, and socio-economic benefits. This approach also requires adaptive management, based on continuous monitoring, learning, and adjustment of practices and technologies in response to changing conditions and new knowledge.

14. Crop Diversification and Soil Health: Crop diversification is a key component of a holistic approach to soil fertility management in protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems. Crop diversification refers to the cultivation of a variety of crops, either in temporal sequence (crop rotation) or in spatial arrangement (intercropping), within a given agricultural system [83]. Crop diversification offers multiple benefits for soil health, nutrient management, and overall sustainability of protected cultivation systems.

Some key strategies for crop diversification and their benefits for soil health include:

1. Crop rotation: Crop rotation involves the sequential cultivation of different crops on the same land over time. Table 8 presents some examples of crop rotation strategies and their benefits for soil fertility [84].

Table 8: **Crop diversification strategies for improving soil fertility**

Strategy	**Examples**	**Benefits**
Crop rotation	Legumes-cereals, vegetables-cereals	Nutrient cycling, pest and disease control
Intercropping	Legumes-non-legumes, tall-short crops	Efficient resource use, reduced nutrient competition
Cover cropping	Legumes, grasses, brassicas	Soil protection, nutrient retention, organic matter addition
Agroforestry	Alley cropping, silvopasture	Nutrient cycling, soil conservation, carbon sequestration
Relay cropping	Short-duration legumes, green manures	Nutrient supplementation, soil health improvement

Crop rotation enhances soil fertility by promoting nutrient cycling, increasing soil organic matter, and improving soil structure. The inclusion of legumes in crop rotations fixes atmospheric nitrogen and reduces the need for synthetic nitrogen fertilizers. The alternation of crops with different root systems and nutrient requirements also helps to balance nutrient uptake and reduce nutrient depletion.

2. Intercropping: Intercropping involves the cultivation of two or more crops simultaneously on the same land. Intercropping enhances soil fertility by promoting complementary resource use, reducing nutrient competition, and increasing nutrient use efficiency [85]. The combination of legumes with non-legumes, or tall crops with short crops, optimizes the use of light, water, and nutrients in the system.
3. Cover cropping: Cover cropping involves the cultivation of crops, usually legumes or grasses, between main crop cycles or in fallow periods. Cover crops protect the soil from erosion, suppress weeds, and improve soil structure and fertility [86]. The incorporation of cover crop biomass into the soil adds organic matter, enhances nutrient retention, and supports beneficial soil microorganisms.
4. Agroforestry: Agroforestry involves the integration of trees or shrubs with crops or livestock in the same land management unit. Agroforestry systems, such as alley cropping and silvopasture, enhance soil fertility by promoting nutrient cycling, reducing soil erosion, and increasing carbon sequestration [87]. The deep roots of trees and shrubs access nutrients from lower soil layers and recycle them to the surface through leaf litter and root turnover.
5. Relay cropping: Relay cropping involves the planting of a second crop before the harvest of the first crop. Relay cropping with short-duration legumes or green manures can provide additional nutrient inputs and improve soil health [88]. The incorporation of legume residues into the soil after the harvest of the main crop enhances soil nitrogen status and organic matter content.

Crop diversification strategies should be adapted to the specific context of protected cultivation systems, considering factors such as crop compatibility, resource availability, market demand, and management intensity. The integration of crop diversification with other soil fertility management practices, such as organic amendments, precision agriculture, and soil health assessment, can optimize the benefits for soil health and overall sustainability of protected cultivation systems.

15. Conclusion:

Soil fertility and nutrient management are critical components of sustainable protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems. This chapter has provided a comprehensive overview of the current status, challenges, and opportunities for soil fertility and nutrient management in the context of protected cultivation, with a focus on global trends, Asia, and India.

The chapter has highlighted the importance of soil health assessment, integrated nutrient management, precision agriculture, and the adoption of advanced technologies for optimizing nutrient use efficiency and minimizing environmental impacts. The case studies and examples presented in the chapter demonstrate the potential of sustainable soil fertility management practices to enhance crop productivity, resource use efficiency, and overall sustainability of protected cultivation systems. However, realizing the potential of sustainable soil fertility and nutrient management in protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems requires a multi-disciplinary and multi-stakeholder approach. Collaboration among researchers, farmers, policymakers, and industry partners is essential for the co-design, co-development, and co-implementation of context-specific solutions. Enabling policy and institutional innovations, capacity building, and farmer empowerment are also critical for scaling up and mainstreaming sustainable soil fertility management practices.

References:

[1] Abrol, I. P., & Sangar, S. (2006). Sustaining Indian agriculture - conservation agriculture the way forward. Current Science, 91(8), 1020-2015.

[2] Aggarwal, P. K., Vyas, S., Thornton, P., & Campbell, B. M. (2019). How much does climate change add to the challenge of feeding the planet this century? Environmental Research Letters, 14(4), 043001.

[3] Aryal, J. P., Sapkota, T. B., Stirling, C. M., Jat, M. L., Jat, H. S., Rai, M., Mittal, S., & Sutaliya, J. M. (2016). Conservation agriculture-based wheat production better copes with

extreme climate events than conventional tillage-based systems: A case of untimely excess rainfall in Haryana, India. Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment, 233, 325-335.

[4] Aryal, J. P., Stirling, C. M., Sapkota, T. B., Khurana, R., Khatri-Chhetri, A., Jat, M. L., & Bijarniya, D. (2020). Cost-effective opportunities for climate change mitigation in Indian agriculture. Science of the Total Environment, 718, 137348.

[5] Bhan, S., & Behera, U. K. (2014). Conservation agriculture in India - Problems, prospects and policy issues. International Soil and Water Conservation Research, 2(4), 1-12.

[6] Bhattacharyya, R., Ghosh, B. N., Mishra, P. K., Mandal, B., Rao, C. S., Sarkar, D., ... & Franzluebbers, A. J. (2015). Soil degradation in India: Challenges and potential solutions. Sustainability, 7(4), 3528-3570.

[7] Biswas, H., Raizada, A., Mandal, D., Kumar, S., Srinivas, S., & Mishra, P. K. (2015). Identification of areas vulnerable to soil erosion risk in India using GIS methods. Solid Earth, 6(4), 1247-1257.

[8] Chandra, R., Sikka, A., Singh, S., Gupta, R., Upadhyaya, A., & Sakthivadivel, R. (2007). Impact of resource conserving technologies on water use and water productivity in Pabnawa minor of Bhakra canal system. RWC Technical Bulletin No. 10. Rice-Wheat Consortium, New Delhi, India.

[9] Chaudhary, V. P., Mishra, A., Agarwal, P. K., & Sharma, A. (2018). Conservation agriculture and climate change: An overview. In Conservation Agriculture (pp. 1-37). Springer, Singapore.

[10] Das, T. K., Bhattacharyya, R., Sudhishri, S., Sharma, A. R., Saharawat, Y. S., Bandyopadhyay, K. K., ... & Pathak, H. (2014). Conservation agriculture in an irrigated cotton-wheat system of the western Indo-Gangetic Plains: Crop and water productivity and economic profitability. Field Crops Research, 158, 24-33.

[11] Dhar, S., Barah, B. C., Vyas, A. K., & Uphoff, N. (2016). Comparing System of Wheat Intensification (SWI) with standard recommended practices in the north-western plain zone of India. Archives of Agronomy and Soil Science, 62(7), 994-1006.

[12] Gangwar, K. S., Singh, K. K., Sharma, S. K., & Tomar, O. K. (2006). Alternative tillage and crop residue management in wheat after rice in sandy loam soils of Indo-Gangetic plains. Soil and Tillage Research, 88(1-2), 242-252.

[13] Ghosh, P. K., Das, A., Saha, R., Kharkrang, E., Tripathi, A. K., Munda, G. C., & Ngachan, S. V. (2010). Conservation agriculture towards achieving food security in North East India. Current Science, 99(7), 915-921.

[14] Hobbs, P. R., & Gupta, R. K. (2003). Resource-conserving technologies for wheat in the rice-wheat system. Improving the productivity and sustainability of rice-wheat systems: Issues and impacts, 149-171.

[15] Jat, M. L., Dagar, J. C., Sapkota, T. B., Singh, Y., Govaerts, B., Ridaura, S. L., ... & Stirling, C. (2016). Climate change and agriculture: adaptation strategies and mitigation opportunities for food security in South Asia and Latin America. In Advances in agronomy (Vol. 137, pp. 127-235). Academic Press.

[16] Jat, M. L., Malik, R. K., Singh, S., Sidhu, H. S., Singh, U. P., Raj, R., ... & Gupta, R. (2010). Resource conserving technologies for enhancing productivity and profitability of wheat in rice-wheat system of South Asia. In Proceedings of 2nd CSISA Annual Review and Planning Meeting (pp. 19-22).

[17] Jat, R. K., Sapkota, T. B., Singh, R. G., Jat, M. L., Kumar, M., & Gupta, R. K. (2014). Seven years of conservation agriculture in a rice-wheat rotation of Eastern

Gangetic Plains of South Asia: yield trends and economic profitability. Field Crops Research, 164, 199-210.

[18] Kassam, A., Friedrich, T., & Derpsch, R. (2019). Global spread of conservation agriculture. International Journal of Environmental Studies, 76(1), 29-51.

[19] Kumar, V., Jat, H. S., Sharma, P. C., Balwinder-Singh, Gathala, M. K., Malik, R. K., ... & McDonald, A. (2018). Can productivity and profitability be enhanced in intensively managed cereal systems while reducing the environmental footprint of production? Assessing sustainable intensification options in the breadbasket of India. Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment, 252, 132-147.

[20] Lohan, S. K., Jat, H. S., Yadav, A. K., Sidhu, H. S., Jat, M. L., Choudhary, M., ... & Sharma, P. C. (2018). Burning issues of paddy residue management in north-west states of India. Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews, 81, 693-706.

[21] Parihar, C. M., Jat, S. L., Singh, A. K., Kumar, B., Pradhan, S., Pooniya, V., ... & Yadav, O. P. (2016). Conservation agriculture in irrigated intensive maize-based systems of north-western India: effects on crop yields, water productivity and economic profitability. Field Crops Research, 193, 104-116.

[22] Pathak, H., Saharawat, Y. S., Gathala, M., & Ladha, J. K. (2011). Impact of resource-conserving technologies on productivity and greenhouse gas emissions in the rice-wheat system. Greenhouse Gases: Science and Technology, 1(3), 261-277.

[23] Sapkota, T. B., Jat, M. L., Aryal, J. P., Jat, R. K., & Khatri-Chhetri, A. (2015). Climate change adaptation, greenhouse gas mitigation and economic profitability of conservation agriculture: some examples from cereal systems of Indo-Gangetic Plains. Journal of Integrative Agriculture, 14(8), 1524-1533.

CHAPTER - 10

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Conservation of Soil and Water

[1]Amit Kumar Pandey and [2]Ashutosh Singh

Mandan Bharti Agriculture College, Agwanpur, Saharsa, Bihar

Corresponding Author
Ashutosh Singh
amitpandeybau@gmail.com

Abstract

Soil conservation and water management are critical components of sustainable protected cultivation systems worldwide. As the global population continues to grow and arable land becomes increasingly limited, optimizing the use of soil and water resources in protected environments such as greenhouses, polytunnels, and shade houses is essential for ensuring food security and environmental sustainability. This chapter provides an overview of key principles, challenges, and best practices related to soil conservation and water management in protected cultivation, with a focus on global trends and developments in Asia and India.

Protected cultivation offers numerous advantages over open field agriculture, including greater control over growing conditions, higher yields, improved crop quality, and reduced vulnerability to extreme weather events. However, intensive cultivation practices can lead to soil degradation, nutrient depletion, salinity buildup, and unsustainable water use if not properly managed. Soil conservation measures such as reduced tillage, cover cropping, organic amendments, and crop rotation help maintain soil health and fertility. Water management strategies like precision irrigation, hydroponic systems, rainwater harvesting, and water recycling optimize water use efficiency and reduce environmental impacts.

In Asia, rapid population growth, urbanization, and climate change pose significant challenges for protected cultivation. Many countries are adopting policies and technologies to promote sustainable soil and water management, such as subsidies for micro-irrigation, solar-powered desalination, and integrated pest management. India has emerged as a leader in protected cultivation, with government initiatives like the National Horticulture Mission and Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchai Yojana driving the expansion of greenhouse and polytunnel infrastructure. However, small-scale farmers often lack access to advanced technologies and training in sustainable soil and water management practices.

Research and extension efforts are needed to develop and disseminate affordable, locally adapted solutions for soil conservation and water management in protected cultivation. Strengthening linkages between farmers, researchers, policymakers, and industry stakeholders can accelerate the adoption of sustainable practices and technologies. With the right investments and innovations, protected cultivation can play a vital role in meeting the world's growing food needs while conserving precious soil and water resources for future generations.

Keywords: protected cultivation, soil conservation, water management, sustainability, Asia, India

Protected cultivation, which includes greenhouses, polytunnels, shade houses, and other controlled environment agriculture systems, has emerged as an important approach for increasing crop productivity and resource use efficiency in the face of global challenges such as population growth, climate change, and limited arable land [1]. By providing a controlled environment for crop growth, protected cultivation allows for year-round production, higher yields, improved crop quality, and reduced vulnerability to pests, diseases, and extreme weather events [2]. However, intensive cultivation practices in protected environments can lead to soil degradation, nutrient depletion, salinity buildup, and unsustainable water use if not properly managed [3]. Soil conservation and water management are therefore critical for ensuring the long-term sustainability and productivity of protected cultivation systems.

2. Soil health and fertility in protected cultivation

2.1. Importance of soil health in protected cultivation

Healthy, fertile soil is the foundation of sustainable protected cultivation systems. Soil provides essential nutrients, water, and physical support for plant growth, as well as habitats for beneficial microorganisms that contribute to nutrient cycling, disease suppression, and other ecosystem services [4]. In protected environments, where crops are often grown intensively in limited soil volumes, maintaining soil health is particularly important for ensuring high yields, crop quality, and long-term productivity [5].

However, protected cultivation practices can pose risks to soil health if not properly managed. Frequent tillage, monocropping, and heavy use of synthetic fertilizers and pesticides can lead to soil compaction, erosion, nutrient imbalances, and loss of organic matter and biodiversity [6]. These problems can be exacerbated by the lack of natural soil-building processes such as weathering, decomposition, and bioturbation in protected environments [7]. Poor soil health not only reduces crop yields and quality but also increases the risk of soil-borne diseases, pests, and environmental pollution [8].

Table 1. Soil health indicators and optimal ranges for protected cultivation

Indicator	**Optimal range**
pH	6.0-7.0
Electrical conductivity	<2 dS/m
Organic matter content	3-5%
Bulk density	<1.4 g/cm^3^
Aggregate stability	>50%
Available nitrogen	50-200 mg/kg
Available phosphorus	20-50 mg/kg
Available potassium	100-300 mg/kg
Microbial biomass carbon	>200 mg/kg
Soil respiration	>10 mg CO~~2~~/kg/d

Source: Adapted from [9]

2.2. **Soil conservation practices in protected cultivation**

To maintain and enhance soil health in protected cultivation, a range of soil conservation practices can be implemented. These practices aim to reduce soil disturbance, increase organic matter inputs, promote nutrient cycling, and support beneficial soil biota [10]. Some key soil conservation practices for protected cultivation include:

- **Reduced tillage**: Minimizing soil disturbance through reduced tillage or no-till practices can help preserve soil structure, reduce erosion, and promote the buildup of organic matter and beneficial microorganisms [11]. In protected environments, permanent bed systems and shallow cultivation techniques can be used to reduce tillage intensity [12].
- **Cover cropping**: Growing cover crops in between cash crop cycles can help protect soil from erosion, suppress weeds, fix nitrogen, and add organic matter to the soil [13]. In protected cultivation, fast-growing legumes such as cowpea (*Vigna unguiculata*), sunn hemp (*Crotalaria juncea*), and hairy vetch (*Vicia villosa*) can be used as cover crops [14].
- **Organic amendments**: Applying organic materials such as compost, vermicompost, crop residues, and animal manures can improve soil structure, fertility, and biodiversity [15]. In protected environments, locally available organic waste streams such as greenhouse crop residues, mushroom substrate, and biogas digestate can be used as soil amendments [16].
- **Crop rotation**: Rotating crops with different nutrient requirements, root systems, and pest and disease susceptibilities can help break pest and disease cycles, improve nutrient use efficiency, and promote soil health [17]. In protected cultivation, crop rotation can be implemented within and between growing seasons, using a diverse mix of leafy vegetables, fruit vegetables, root crops, and legumes [18].
- **Integrated nutrient management**: Combining organic and inorganic nutrient sources and using precision application techniques can optimize nutrient availability for crops while reducing the risk of nutrient losses and imbalances [19]. In protected environments, fertigation systems and slow-release fertilizers can be used for targeted nutrient delivery [20].

Table 2. Examples of cover crops for soil conservation in protected cultivation

Cover crop	Scientific name	Benefits

Cowpea	*Vigna unguiculata*	Nitrogen fixation, weed suppression, soil moisture
Sunn hemp	*Crotalaria juncea*	Nitrogen fixation, biomass production, nematode control
Hairy vetch	*Vicia villosa*	Nitrogen fixation, erosion control, weed suppression
Buckwheat	*Fagopyrum esculentum*	Phosphorus mobilization, weed suppression, attracts pollinators
Oats	*Avena sativa*	Biomass production, erosion control, allelopathy
Forage radish	*Raphanus sativus* var. *oleiferus*	Deep rooting, soil compaction alleviation, nutrient scavenging
Crimson clover	*Trifolium incarnatum*	Nitrogen fixation, erosion control, attracts pollinators
Cereal rye	*Secale cereale*	Biomass production, weed suppression, allelopathy
Sudangrass	*Sorghum x drummondii*	Biomass production, nematode control, soil organic matter
White mustard	*Sinapis alba*	Biofumigation, weed suppression, erosion control

Source: Adapted from [21]

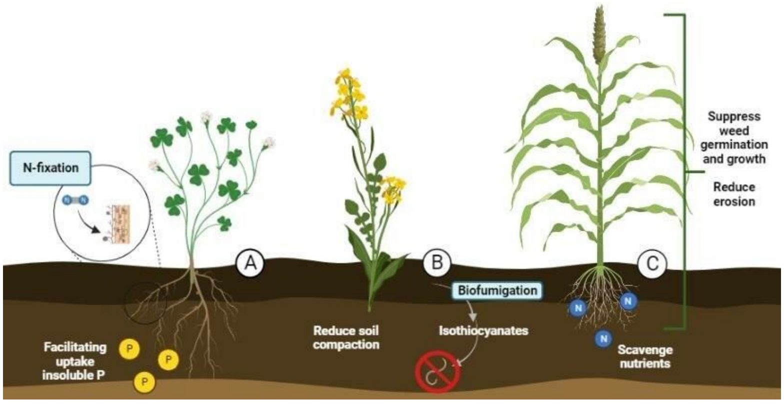


Figure 1. Cover crops for soil conservation in protected cultivation.

2.3. **Monitoring and management of soil health in protected cultivation**

Regular monitoring and assessment of soil health indicators is essential for identifying potential problems and guiding management decisions in protected cultivation. Key soil health indicators include pH, electrical conductivity, organic matter content, nutrient levels, bulk density, aggregate stability, and microbial activity [22]. Soil testing should be conducted at least annually, and more frequently in intensive production systems or when problems are suspected [23].

Based on soil test results and crop requirements, soil management practices can be adjusted to optimize soil health and fertility. For example, if soil pH is too low, liming materials such as calcium carbonate or dolomite can be applied to raise pH to the desired range [24]. If soil organic matter is depleted, increasing organic amendments and reducing tillage can help build up soil carbon over time [25]. If soil salinity is high, leaching with high-quality irrigation water and improving drainage can help reduce salt accumulation [26].

Integrating soil health management with other aspects of protected cultivation, such as crop selection, irrigation, and pest management, is important for maximizing the benefits of soil conservation practices. For example, selecting crops with different rooting depths and nutrient requirements can help optimize nutrient cycling and reduce the risk of soil-borne diseases [27]. Using drip irrigation and moisture sensors can help avoid over-watering and reduce the risk of nutrient leaching and waterlogging [28]. Implementing integrated pest management strategies, such as using biological control agents and resistant cultivars, can reduce the need for pesticides and minimize their impacts on soil health [29].

3.1. **Importance of water management in protected cultivation**

Efficient water management is critical for the success and sustainability of protected cultivation systems. In greenhouses and other controlled environments, plants rely entirely on irrigation to meet their water needs, as they are isolated from natural precipitation [31]. At the same time, protected cultivation can have high water requirements due to the intensive nature of production, the use of soilless media with limited water-holding capacity, and the need to maintain optimal growing conditions year-round [32].

Proper water management in protected cultivation aims to provide plants with the right amount of water at the right time, while minimizing water losses through evaporation, runoff, and deep percolation [33]. Insufficient water supply can lead to plant stress, reduced growth and yield, and increased susceptibility to pests and diseases [34]. Excessive water application can result in nutrient leaching, waterlogging, root diseases, and environmental pollution [35]. Inefficient water use also increases the costs of production and puts pressure on limited freshwater resources, especially in arid and semi-arid regions [36].

Table 3. Soil management practices for addressing common soil health problems in protected cultivation

Soil health problem	Management practices
Low pH	- Liming with calcium carbonate or dolomite - Avoiding excessive use of ammonium-based fertilizers - Using acid-tolerant crops and rootstocks
High pH	- Applying elemental sulfur or acidifying fertilizers - Using alkaline-tolerant crops and rootstocks - Improving soil organic matter and buffering capacity
Low organic matter	- Increasing organic amendment inputs - Reducing tillage intensity and frequency - Using cover crops and crop residues
Nutrient deficiencies	- Applying targeted fertilizers based on soil tests - Using fertigation and foliar sprays for quick correction - Improving soil organic matter and nutrient cycling
Nutrient excesses	- Reducing fertilizer rates and frequency - Using slow-release and controlled-release fertilizers - Improving irrigation efficiency and reducing leaching
Salinity	- Leaching with high-quality irrigation water - Improving drainage and preventing waterlogging - Using salt-tolerant crops and rootstocks
Compaction	- Reducing tillage and traffic intensity - Using organic amendments and cover crops to improve soil structure - Subsoiling or deep ripping to break up compacted layers
Soil-borne diseases	- Using disease-resistant cultivars and rootstocks - Implementing crop rotation and sanitation practices - Applying biological control agents and organic amendments

Source: Adapted from [30]

3. **Water management in protected cultivation**

Table 4. Water requirements of selected greenhouse crops

Crop	Water requirement (L/plant/day)
Tomato	1.0-2.5
Cucumber	1.0-2.0
Pepper	0.8-1.5
Eggplant	1.0-2.0
Lettuce	0.4-0.8
Strawberry	0.5-1.0
Rose	1.0-2.0
Gerbera	0.5-1.0
Chrysanthemum	0.8-1.5
Orchid	0.2-0.5

Source: Adapted from [37]

3.2. Irrigation scheduling and water use efficiency in protected cultivation

Irrigation scheduling is the process of determining when and how much water to apply to a crop based on its water requirements, soil moisture status, and environmental conditions [38]. In protected cultivation, irrigation scheduling is typically based on a combination of methods, including:

- **Soil moisture monitoring**: Using sensors such as tensiometers, capacitance probes, or time-domain reflectometry (TDR) to measure soil moisture content and adjust irrigation accordingly [39].
- **Evapotranspiration (ET) modeling**: Estimating crop water use based on environmental factors such as radiation, temperature, humidity, and wind speed, using models such as the FAO Penman-Monteith equation or the Priestley-Taylor method [40].
- **Crop coefficients**: Multiplying reference ET values by crop-specific coefficients that account for differences in growth stage, canopy cover, and cultural practices [41].
- **Leaching fraction**: Applying additional water beyond the crop's ET requirements to prevent salt accumulation in the root zone, typically 10-20% of the irrigation volume [42].

Efficient irrigation methods and technologies can help optimize water use and reduce losses in protected cultivation. These include:

- **Drip irrigation**: Applying water directly to the root zone through a network of pipes, emitters, and drippers, reducing evaporation and runoff losses [43].
- **Micro-sprinklers**: Delivering water in small droplets or mist to the crop canopy, providing uniform coverage and reducing water use compared to overhead sprinklers [44].
- **Subsurface irrigation**: Applying water below the soil surface through buried drip tapes or porous pipes, minimizing evaporation and improving water use efficiency [45].
- **Precision irrigation**: Using sensors, automation, and feedback control systems to apply water based on real-time crop and soil conditions, optimizing irrigation timing and amounts [46].
- **Deficit irrigation**: Applying water at rates below the crop's full ET requirements during certain growth stages or periods of low evaporative demand, to conserve water without significantly reducing yields [47].

Table 5. Irrigation methods and their typical application efficiencies in protected cultivation

Irrigation method	**Application efficiency (%)**
Drip irrigation	90-95
Micro-sprinklers	80-90
Subsurface irrigation	90-95
Precision irrigation	95-98
Deficit irrigation	80-90

Source: Adapted from [48]

Figure 2. Irrigation methods in protected cultivation.

3.3. **Drainage and salinity management in protected cultivation**

Proper drainage is essential for preventing waterlogging, salinity buildup, and root diseases in protected cultivation [50]. Drainage systems in greenhouses and other structures can include:

- **Surface drainage**: Sloping the floor or growing beds to allow excess water to run off into collection channels or ditches [51].
- **Subsurface drainage**: Installing perforated pipes or drainage tiles below the root zone to remove excess water and leach salts [52].
- **Soilless media**: Using substrates with high porosity and aeration, such as rockwool, perlite, or coco coir, to improve drainage and prevent waterlogging [53].

Salinity management is another important aspect of water management in protected cultivation, especially in regions with poor-quality irrigation water or saline soils [54]. High salinity can reduce crop growth, yield, and quality by causing osmotic stress, ion toxicity, and nutrient imbalances [55]. Strategies for managing salinity in protected cultivation include:

- **Leaching**: Applying extra water to flush salts below the root zone, typically using a leaching fraction of 10-30% depending on the crop and salinity level [56].
- **Water blending**: Mixing saline water with high-quality water to reduce the overall salinity level, or alternating between saline and non-saline water sources [57].
- **Reverse osmosis**: Using membrane filtration to remove salts and other dissolved solids from irrigation water, producing high-quality permeate for crop use [58].
- **Salt-tolerant crops**: Selecting crops and cultivars with higher tolerance to salinity, such as tomato, cucumber, and lettuce [59].
- **Grafting**: Using salt-tolerant rootstocks to improve the salinity tolerance of sensitive crops, such as melon and watermelon [60].

Table 6. Salinity tolerance of selected greenhouse crops

Crop	Salinity threshold (dS/m)	Yield decline slope (%/dS/m)
Tomato	2.5	9.9
Cucumber	2.5	13.0
Pepper	1.5	14.0
Eggplant	1.1	6.9
Lettuce	1.3	13.0
Strawberry	1.0	33.0
Rose	1.5	5.0
Gerbera	1.5	10.0
Chrysanthemum	2.0	10.0
Orchid	1.0	12.0

Source: Adapted from [61]

4. Protected cultivation and soil and water management in Asia

4.1. Status and trends of protected cultivation in Asia

Asia is a major region for protected cultivation, accounting for over 80% of the world's greenhouse vegetable production [62]. China is the largest producer, with over 3.7 million hectares of protected cultivation area, followed by South Korea, Japan, and India [63]. The rapid expansion of protected cultivation in Asia is driven by factors such as population growth, urbanization, rising incomes, and increasing demand for high-quality, safe, and diverse horticultural products [64].

However, the development of protected cultivation in Asia also faces challenges such as limited land and water resources, environmental pollution, climate change, and market volatility [65]. Many smallholder farmers in Asia have limited access to capital, technology, and training, and rely on traditional production practices that may be unsustainable or inefficient [66]. There is a need for policies, investments, and innovations to promote sustainable intensification of protected cultivation in Asia, with a focus on resource use efficiency, environmental protection, and social equity [67].

Table 7. Protected cultivation area and production in selected Asian countries

Country	**Protected cultivation area (ha)**	**Vegetable production (million tons)**
China	3,718,000	252.7
South Korea	52,800	2.4
Japan	49,000	1.4
India	25,000	1.2
Turkey	75,000	7.2
Iran	12,000	1.8
Indonesia	5,000	0.3
Malaysia	2,000	0.2
Thailand	1,500	0.1
Vietnam	1,000	0.1

Source: Adapted from [68]

4.2. **Sustainable soil and water management practices and technologies in Asia**

Many Asian countries are adopting sustainable soil and water management practices and technologies to address the challenges of protected cultivation. These include:

- **Integrated pest management (IPM)**: Using a combination of biological, cultural, and chemical control methods to minimize pesticide use and enhance natural pest regulation [69]. Examples include the use of predatory mites, parasitic wasps, and microbial biopesticides in greenhouse vegetables in Japan, South Korea, and China [70].

- **Organic farming**: Applying organic principles and practices, such as composting, green manuring, and crop rotation, to improve soil health and reduce environmental impacts [71]. In China, the organic greenhouse vegetable industry has grown rapidly, with over 1.2 million hectares certified as organic in 2018 [72].
- **Fertigation**: Applying fertilizers through the irrigation system, allowing for precise nutrient management and reduced leaching losses [73]. In South Korea, fertigation with drip irrigation has been widely adopted in greenhouse horticulture, resulting in higher yields and nutrient use efficiency [74].
- **Rainwater harvesting**: Collecting and storing rainwater from greenhouse roofs and other surfaces for irrigation use, reducing dependence on groundwater and surface water sources [75]. In Malaysia, a pilot project on rainwater harvesting in greenhouses showed that it could meet 60-80% of the irrigation requirements for lettuce and chili [76].
- **Hydroponics**: Growing crops in nutrient solutions without soil, allowing for precise control of water and nutrient supply and reduced disease pressure [77]. In Japan, over 80% of greenhouse tomato and cucumber production is based on hydroponic systems, using substrates such as rockwool, perlite, and coco coir [78].
- **Vertical farming**: Growing crops in stacked layers or towers, maximizing land use efficiency and reducing water and energy consumption [79]. In Singapore, vertical farming has been promoted as a strategy for enhancing urban food security and sustainability, with government support for research and development [80].

4.3. **Policies and programs for sustainable protected cultivation in Asia**

Many Asian countries have developed policies and programs to promote sustainable protected cultivation and support smallholder farmers. These include:

Subsidies and grants: Providing financial support for the adoption of sustainable practices and technologies, such as micro-irrigation, rainwater harvesting, and renewable energy [87]. In India, the National Horticulture Mission provides subsidies of up to 50% for the construction of greenhouses and shade nets, as well as for the adoption of micro-irrigation and fertigation systems [88].

Table 8. Examples of sustainable soil and water management practices and technologies in protected cultivation in Asia

Practice/Technology	Country	Crops	Benefits
IPM with predatory mites	Japan	Eggplant, pepper	70-80% reduction in pesticide use
Organic fertilization with compost	China	Tomato, cucumber	20-30% increase in soil organic matter
Fertigation with drip irrigation	South Korea	Strawberry, paprika	30-40% increase in nutrient use efficiency
Rainwater harvesting from greenhouse roofs	Malaysia	Lettuce, chili	60-80% of irrigation water supply
Hydroponic production with coco coir substrate	Indonesia	Tomato, lettuce	40-50% increase in water use efficiency
Vertical farming with LED lighting	Singapore	Leafy greens, herbs	10-20 times higher yield per unit area

Source: Adapted from [81,82,83,84,85,86]

- **Extension and training**: Providing technical assistance and capacity building to farmers on sustainable soil and water management, pest and disease control, and postharvest handling [89]. In Indonesia, the Ministry of Agriculture has established a network of horticultural extension centers to provide training and support to smallholder farmers in protected cultivation [90].
- **Certification and labeling**: Developing standards and certification schemes for sustainable and safe horticultural products, such as organic, GAP (Good Agricultural Practices), and PGS (Participatory Guarantee Systems) [91]. In Thailand, the government has promoted the Q-GAP certification for good agricultural practices in greenhouse production, with over 1,200 farms certified as of 2019 [92].
- **Research and innovation**: Investing in research and development of sustainable technologies and practices for protected cultivation, such as integrated pest management, bio-based inputs, and precision agriculture [93]. In South Korea, the government has established a network of horticultural

research institutes and universities to develop and disseminate sustainable technologies for greenhouse production [94].

- **Market linkages**: Facilitating market access and linkages for smallholder farmers in protected cultivation, through cooperatives, contract farming, and direct sales [95]. In the Philippines, the government has supported the development of farmer cooperatives and market clusters for high-value greenhouse crops, such as bell pepper and tomato [96].

Table 9. Examples of policies and programs for sustainable protected cultivation in Asia

Policy/Program	**Country**	**Description**	**Impact**
National Horticulture Mission	India	Subsidies for greenhouses, micro-irrigation, and fertigation	2.5 million ha of horticulture area covered
Horticultural extension centers	Indonesia	Training and support for smallholder farmers in protected cultivation	20,000 farmers trained annually
Q-GAP certification for greenhouse production	Thailand	Standards for good agricultural practices in greenhouse production	1,200 farms certified as of 2019
Horticultural research institutes	South Korea	Research and development of sustainable technologies for greenhouse production	30 new technologies developed annually
Farmer cooperatives and market clusters	Philippines	Market access and linkages for smallholder farmers in protected cultivation	10,000 farmers benefited as of 2018

Source: Adapted from [97,98,99,100,101]

5. Protected cultivation and soil and water management in India

5.1. Status and potential of protected cultivation in India

India is a rapidly growing market for protected cultivation, with an estimated 25,000 hectares of greenhouse and shade net area as of 2019 [102]. The major crops grown under protected cultivation in India include vegetables (tomato, cucumber, capsicum, and lettuce), fruits (strawberry and melon), flowers (rose, gerbera, and carnation), and medicinal and aromatic plants [103]. The main regions for protected cultivation in India are Maharashtra, Karnataka, Gujarat, Himachal Pradesh, and Haryana [104].

The potential for protected cultivation in India is significant, given the country's diverse agro-climatic conditions, large and growing domestic market, and increasing export opportunities [105]. The Government of India has identified protected cultivation as a priority area for horticulture development, with several policies and programs to promote its expansion and sustainability [106]. These include the National Horticulture Mission, the Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchai Yojana (micro-irrigation scheme), and the Mission for Integrated Development of Horticulture [107].

However, the adoption of protected cultivation in India also faces challenges such as high initial investment costs, lack of technical knowledge and skills, limited access to quality inputs and services, and market uncertainties [108]. Many smallholder farmers in India are unable to afford the construction and maintenance of greenhouses and rely on low-cost structures such as shade nets and plastic tunnels [109]. There is a need for innovative financing mechanisms, capacity building, and market linkages to enable smallholder farmers to benefit from protected cultivation in India [110].

Table 10. Area and production of major crops under protected cultivation in India

Crop	**Area (ha)**	**Production (thousand tons)**
Tomato	8,000	800
Cucumber	4,000	400
Capsicum	3,000	150
Rose	2,000	200 million stems
Gerbera	1,500	150 million stems
Carnation	1,000	100 million stems
Strawberry	500	25
Lettuce	500	20
Melon	500	50
Medicinal and aromatic plants	1,000	N/A

Source: Adapted from [111]

5.2. **Challenges and opportunities for sustainable soil and water management in protected cultivation in India**

The intensive nature of protected cultivation in India poses several challenges for sustainable soil and water management. These include:

- **Soil degradation**: Continuous cropping, heavy fertilizer and pesticide use, and limited crop rotation can lead to soil degradation, nutrient depletion, and accumulation of salts and toxic substances [112]. A study in Maharashtra found that greenhouse soils had significantly lower organic carbon, available nutrients, and microbial biomass compared to open field soils [113].
- **Water scarcity**: Many regions in India face water scarcity and competition from other sectors such as domestic and industrial use [114]. Protected cultivation has high water requirements, ranging from 1-3 liters per plant per day for vegetables and 5-10 liters per square meter per day for flowers [115]. Overexploitation of groundwater for irrigation has led to declining water tables and increased salinity in some areas [116].
- **Pest and disease pressure**: The controlled environment of protected cultivation can favor the development of pests and diseases if not properly managed [117]. The heavy use of pesticides in Indian greenhouses has led to resistance development, residue problems, and human health risks [118]. A survey in Himachal Pradesh found that 70% of greenhouse farmers used pesticides excessively and indiscriminately [119].
- **Climate change**: Climate change is expected to increase the frequency and intensity of extreme weather events such as heat waves, droughts, and floods in India [120]. Protected cultivation structures and crops are vulnerable to damage from high temperatures, strong winds, and heavy rainfall [121]. Adaptation measures such as heat-tolerant cultivars, ventilation systems, and drainage management are needed to enhance the resilience of protected cultivation to climate change [122].

At the same time, there are opportunities for promoting sustainable soil and water management practices and technologies in protected cultivation in India. These include:

- **Integrated nutrient management**: Combining organic and inorganic nutrient sources, such as compost, vermicompost, and bio-fertilizers, with targeted fertilizer application through fertigation can improve soil health and nutrient use efficiency [123]. A study in Himachal Pradesh found that integrated nutrient management with vermicompost and fertigation increased tomato yield by 20-30% and reduced fertilizer use by 25-30% compared to conventional practices [124].

- **Micro-irrigation and water saving technologies**: Adopting micro-irrigation methods such as drip and sprinkler systems can reduce water use by 40-60% compared to lood irrigation [125]. Other water-saving technologies such as mulching, sub-surface irrigation, and closed-loop hydroponic systems can further enhance water use efficiency in protected cultivation [126]. A study in Gujarat found that drip irrigation with fertigation increased cucumber yield by 30-40% and water use efficiency by 50-60% compared to furrow irrigation [127].
- **Integrated pest management**: Implementing IPM strategies such as the use of bio-control agents (predators, parasitoids, and microbial pesticides), pheromone traps, and cultural practices (crop rotation, sanitation, and resistant cultivars) can reduce pesticide use and minimize the risk of resistance development [128]. A study in Karnataka found that IPM with the release of predatory mites and neem oil sprays reduced the incidence of spider mites in capsicum by 80-90% and increased yield by 20-30% compared to chemical control [129].
- **Protected cultivation with precision farming**: Integrating protected cultivation with precision farming technologies such as sensors, automation, and data analytics can optimize resource use and enhance productivity [130]. For example, using sensors for monitoring soil moisture, nutrient status, and pest populations can guide targeted irrigation, fertilization, and pest management decisions [131]. A case study of a hi-tech greenhouse in Maharashtra using precision farming technologies reported a 60% increase in tomato yield, a 30% reduction in water use, and a 20% reduction in fertilizer use compared to conventional greenhouses [132].

- **Capacity building and extension**: Providing training and extension services to farmers on sustainable soil and water management practices, IPM, and precision farming can enhance their knowledge, skills, and adoption of these technologies [133]. Establishing demonstration plots, farmer field schools, and digital platforms for information sharing and networking can facilitate peer learning and innovation among protected cultivation farmers [134].

Table 11. Examples of sustainable soil and water management practices and technologies in protected cultivation in India

Practice/Technology	Region	Crop	Impact
Integrated nutrient management with vermicompost and fertigation	Himachal Pradesh	Tomato	20-30% increase in yield, 25-30% reduction in fertilizer use
Drip irrigation with fertigation	Gujarat	Cucumber	30-40% increase in yield, 50-60% increase in water use efficiency
Integrated pest management with predatory mites and neem oil	Karnataka	Capsicum	80-90% reduction in spider mite incidence, 20-30% increase in yield
Precision farming with sensors and automation	Maharashtra	Tomato	60% increase in yield, 30% reduction in water use, 20% reduction in fertilizer use
Farmer field schools on IPM and good agricultural practices	Tamil Nadu	Flowers	50% reduction in pesticide use, 15-20% increase in flower quality and shelf life

Source: Adapted from [135,136,137,138,139]

6. Conclusion and recommendations

Protected cultivation has emerged as an important approach for enhancing the productivity, quality, and sustainability of horticultural production in the face of increasing population, urbanization, and climate change. However, the intensive nature of protected cultivation also poses challenges for soil and water conservation, such as soil degradation, nutrient depletion, water scarcity, and pest and disease pressure. Sustainable soil and water management practices and technologies, such as reduced tillage, cover cropping, organic amendments, crop rotation, micro-irrigation, rainwater harvesting, and precision farming, can help optimize resource use efficiency, improve soil health, and reduce environmental impacts in protected cultivation.

In Asia, the rapid expansion of protected cultivation has been driven by the increasing demand for high-value horticultural products, but also faces challenges such as limited land and water resources, environmental pollution, and climate change. Many Asian countries are adopting policies and programs to promote sustainable protected cultivation, such as subsidies for micro-irrigation and fertigation, extension and training for farmers, certification and labeling of sustainable products, research and innovation on integrated pest management and bio-based inputs, and market linkages for smallholder farmers.

In India, protected cultivation has significant potential for meeting the growing domestic and export demand for horticultural products, but also faces challenges such as high initial costs, lack of technical knowledge and skills, limited access to quality inputs and services, and market uncertainties. The Government of India has identified protected cultivation as a priority area for horticulture development, with several policies and programs to promote its expansion and sustainability, such as the National Horticulture Mission, the Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchai Yojana, and the Mission for Integrated Development of Horticulture.

To further promote sustainable soil and water management in protected cultivation in India, the following recommendations are proposed:

1. **Strengthen research and extension on sustainable practices and technologies**: Invest in research and development of locally adapted and affordable technologies for soil and water conservation, integrated pest management, and precision farming in protected cultivation. Establish a network of research institutes, universities, and extension centers to generate and disseminate knowledge and innovations on sustainable protected cultivation.
2. **Provide financial and technical support to smallholder farmers**: Develop targeted subsidies, grants, and credit programs to enable smallholder farmers to adopt sustainable practices and technologies in protected cultivation, such

as micro-irrigation, fertigation, and bio-control agents. Provide training and capacity building to farmers on good agricultural practices, record-keeping, and market orientation.

3. **Promote market linkages and value addition**: Facilitate market access and linkages for smallholder farmers in protected cultivation, through cooperatives, contract farming, and direct marketing channels. Support the development of post-harvest infrastructure, such as cold storage and processing facilities, to reduce losses and enhance value addition of horticultural products.
4. **Encourage private sector participation and public-private partnerships**: Create an enabling environment for private sector investment and innovation in sustainable protected cultivation, through tax incentives, regulatory streamlining, and intellectual property protection. Foster public-private partnerships for research, extension, and market development in protected cultivation.
5. **Monitor and regulate the environmental impacts of protected cultivation**: Establish a system for monitoring and regulating the environmental impacts of protected cultivation, such as soil and water pollution, pesticide residues, and greenhouse gas emissions. Develop and enforce standards and guidelines for sustainable soil and water management, integrated pest management, and waste management in protected cultivation.

References

1. Castilla, N., & Hernandez, J. (2005). The plastic greenhouse industry of Spain. *Chronica Horticulturae*, 45(3), 15-20.
2. Sabir, N., & Singh, B. (2013). Protected cultivation of vegetables in global arena: A review. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 83(2), 123-135.
3. Altieri, M. A., & Nicholls, C. I. (2003). Soil fertility management and insect pests: harmonizing soil and plant health in agroecosystems. *Soil and Tillage Research*, 72(2), 203-211.
4. Doran, J. W., & Zeiss, M. R. (2000). Soil health and sustainability: managing the biotic component of soil quality. *Applied Soil Ecology*, 15(1), 3-11.
5. Magdoff, F., & Van Es, H. (2000). *Building soils for better crops*. Sustainable Agriculture Network.
6. Reganold, J. P., & Wachter, J. M. (2016). Organic agriculture in the twenty-first century. *Nature Plants*, 2(2), 1-8.

7. Gross, K. C., Wang, C. Y., & Saltveit, M. (2016). *The commercial storage of fruits, vegetables, and florist and nursery stocks*. United States Department of Agriculture, Agricultural Research Service.
8. Doran, J. W. (2002). Soil health and global sustainability: translating science into practice. *Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment*, 88(2), 119-127.
9. Magan, J. J., Gallardo, M., Thompson, R. B., & Lorenzo, P. (2008). Effects of salinity on fruit yield and quality of tomato grown in soil-less culture in greenhouses in Mediterranean climatic conditions. *Agricultural Water Management*, 95(9), 1041-1055.
10. Lal, R. (2004). Soil carbon sequestration impacts on global climate change and food security. *Science*, 304(5677), 1623-1627.
11. Mitchell, J. P., Shrestha, A., Mathesius, K., Scow, K. M., Southard, R. J., Haney, R. L., ... & Horwath, W. R. (2017). Cover cropping and no-tillage improve soil health in an arid irrigated cropping system in California's San Joaquin Valley, USA. *Soil and Tillage Research*, 165, 325-335.
12. Tüzel, Y., & Öztekin, G. B. (2015). Protected cultivation in Turkey. *Chronica Horticulturae*, 55(2), 21-26.
13. Snapp, S. S., Swinton, S. M., Labarta, R., Mutch, D., Black, J. R., Leep, R., ... & O'Neil, K. (2005). Evaluating cover crops for benefits, costs and performance within cropping system niches. *Agronomy Journal*, 97(1), 322-332.
14. Robacer, M., Canali, S., Kristensen, H. L., Bavec, F., Mlakar, S. G., Jakop, M., & Bavec, M. (2016). Cover crops in organic field vegetable production. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 208, 104-110.
15. Diacono, M., & Montemurro, F. (2011). Long-term effects of organic amendments on soil fertility. In *Sustainable Agriculture Volume 2* (pp. 761-786). Springer, Dordrecht.
16. Martínez-Blanco, J., Lazcano, C., Christensen, T. H., Muñoz, P., Rieradevall, J., Møller, J., ... & Boldrin, A. (2013). Compost benefits for agriculture evaluated by life cycle assessment. A review. *Agronomy for Sustainable Development*, 33(4), 721-732.
17. Mohler, C. L., & Johnson, S. E. (2009). *Crop rotation on organic farms: a planning manual*. Natural Resource, Agriculture, and Engineering Service (NRAES).
18. Nair, A., & Ngouajio, M. (2012). Soil microbial biomass, functional microbial diversity, and nematode community structure as affected by cover crops and compost in an organic vegetable production system. *Applied Soil Ecology*, 58, 45-55.
19. Goulding, K. W. T. (2016). Soil acidification and the importance of liming agricultural soils with particular reference to the United Kingdom. *Soil Use and Management*, 32(3), 390-399.
20. Thompson, R. B., Martínez-Gaitan, C., Gallardo, M., Giménez, C., & Fernández, M. D. (2007). Identification of irrigation and N management practices that contribute to nitrate leaching loss from an intensive vegetable production system by use of a comprehensive survey. *Agricultural Water Management*, 89(3), 261-274.
21. Weil, R. R., & Brady, N. C. (2016). *The nature and properties of soils*. Pearson.
22. Moebius-Clune, B. N., Moebius-Clune, D. J., Gugino, B. K., Idowu, O. J., Schindelbeck, R. R., Ristow, A. J., ... & Abawi, G. S. (2016). *Comprehensive assessment of soil health: The Cornell framework manual*. Cornell University.
23. Gugino, B. K., Idowu, O. J., Schindelbeck, R. R., Van Es, H. M., Wolfe, D. W., Moebius-Clune, B. N., ... & Abawi, G. S. (2009). *Cornell soil health assessment training manual*. Cornell University.

24. Pagani, A., & Mallarino, A. P. (2012). Soil pH and crop grain yield as affected by the source and rate of lime. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*, 76(5), 1877-1886.
25. Lal, R. (2008). Carbon sequestration. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 363(1492), 815-830.
26. Machado, R. M. A., & Serralheiro, R. P. (2017). Soil salinity: effect on vegetable crop growth. Management practices to prevent and mitigate soil salinization. *Horticulturae*, 3(2), 30.
27. Tüzel, Y., Öztekin, G. B., & Karaman, I. (2017). Organic greenhouse vegetable production in Turkey. In *Organic Farming for Sustainable Agriculture* (pp. 77-90). Springer, Cham.
28. Thompson, R. B., Gallardo, M., Valdez, L. C., & Fernández, M. D. (2007). Using plant water status to define threshold values for irrigation management of vegetable crops using soil moisture sensors. *Agricultural Water Management*, 88(1-3), 147-158.
29. Perdomo, J. A., Carmo-Silva, E., Hermida-Carrera, C., Flexas, J., & Galmés, J. (2016). Acclimation of biochemical and diffusive components of photosynthesis in rice, wheat, and maize to heat and water deficit: implications for modeling photosynthesis. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 7, 1719.
30. Allen, R. G., Pereira, L. S., Raes, D., & Smith, M. (1998). *Crop evapotranspiration: Guidelines for computing crop water requirements*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.
31. De Pascale, S., Maggio, A., & Barbieri, G. (2005). Soil salinization affects growth, yield and mineral composition of cauliflower and broccoli. *European Journal of Agronomy*, 23(3), 254-264.
32. Jensen, C. R., Battilani, A., Plauborg, F., Psarras, G., Chartzoulakis, K., Janowiak, F., ... & Liu, F. (2010). Deficit irrigation based on drought tolerance and root signalling in potatoes and tomatoes. *Agricultural Water Management*, 98(3), 403-413.
33. Pardossi, A., Tognoni, F., & Incrocci, L. (2004). Mediterranean greenhouse technology. *Chronica Horticulturae*, 44(2), 28-34.
34. Vox, G., Teitel, M., Pardossi, A., Minuto, A., Tinivella, F., & Schettini, E. (2010). *Sustainable greenhouse systems*. Nova Science Publishers, Inc.
35. Thompson, R. B., Gallardo, M., Valdez, L. C., & Fernández, M. D. (2007). Determination of lower limits for irrigation management using in situ assessments of apparent crop water uptake made with volumetric soil water content sensors. *Agricultural Water Management*, 92(1-2), 13-28.
36. Incrocci, L., Marzialetti, P., Incrocci, G., Di Vita, A., Balendonck, J., Bibbiani, C., ... & Pardossi, A. (2014). Substrate water status and evapotranspiration irrigation scheduling in heterogenous container nursery crops. *Agricultural Water Management*, 131, 30-40.
37. Fereres, E., & Soriano, M. A. (2007). Deficit irrigation for reducing agricultural water use. *Journal of Experimental Botany*, 58(2), 147-159.
38. Lu, J., Shao, G., Cui, J., Wang, X., & Keabetswe, L. (2019). Yield, fruit quality and water use efficiency of tomato for processing under regulated deficit irrigation: A meta-analysis. *Agricultural Water Management*, 222, 301-312.
39. Pardossi, A., & Incrocci, L. (2011). Traditional and new approaches to irrigation scheduling in vegetable crops. *HortTechnology*, 21(3), 309-313.

40. Yactayo, W., Ramírez, D. A., Gutiérrez, R., Mares, V., Posadas, A., & Quiroz, R. (2013). Effect of partial root-zone drying irrigation timing on potato tuber yield and water use efficiency. *Agricultural Water Management*, 123, 65-70.
41. Gallardo, M., Thompson, R. B., & Fernández, M. D. (2013). Water requirements and irrigation management in Mediterranean greenhouses: the case of the southeast coast of Spain. In *Good Agricultural Practices for Greenhouse Vegetable Crops* (pp. 109-136). FAO Plant Production and Protection Paper 217.
42. Rouphael, Y., & Colla, G. (2005). Growth, yield, fruit quality and nutrient uptake of hydroponically cultivated zucchini squash as affected by irrigation systems and growing seasons. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 105(2), 177-195.
43. Rouphael, Y., Cardarelli, M., Rea, E., Battistelli, A., & Colla, G. (2006). Comparison of the subirrigation and drip-irrigation systems for greenhouse zucchini squash production using saline and non-saline nutrient solutions. *Agricultural Water Management*, 82(1-2), 99-117.
44. Santamaria, P., Campanile, G., Parente, A., & Elia, A. (2003). Subirrigation vs drip-irrigation: Effects on yield and quality of soilless grown cherry tomato. *Journal of Horticultural Science and Biotechnology*, 78(2), 290-296.
45. Böhme, M., Schevchenko, J., Pinker, I., & Herfort, S. (2005). Cucumber grown in sheepwool slabs treated with biostimulator compared to other organic and mineral substrates. *Acta Horticulturae*, 697, 299-306.
46. Savvas, D., Ntatsi, G., & Passam, H. C. (2008). Plant nutrition and physiological disorders in greenhouse grown tomato, pepper and eggplant. *The European Journal of Plant Science and Biotechnology*, 2(1), 45-61.
47. Moncada, A., Miceli, A., & Vetrano, F. (2021). Use of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) and organic fertilization for soilless cultivation of basil. *Scientia Horticulturae*, 275, 109733.
48. Urrestarazu, M. (2013). *State of the art and new trends of soilless culture in Spain and in emerging countries*. International Society for Horticultural Science (ISHS), Leuven, Belgium.
49. Niu, W., Guo, Q., Zhou, X., & Helmers, M. J. (2012). Effect of aeration and soil water redistribution on the air permeability under subsurface drip irrigation. *Agricultural Water Management*, 110, 94-101.
50. Ju, X. T., Kou, C. L., Christie, P., Dou, Z. X., & Zhang, F. S. (2007). Changes in the soil environment from excessive application of fertilizers and manures to two contrasting intensive cropping systems on the North China Plain. *Environmental Pollution*, 145(2), 497-506.
51. Liang, X., Liakos, V., Wendroth, O., & Vellidis, G. (2016). Scheduling irrigation using an approach based on the van Genuchten model. *Agricultural Water Management*, 176, 170-179.
52. Zotarelli, L., Dukes, M. D., & Barreto, T. P. (2010). Interpretation of soil moisture content to determine soil field capacity and avoid over-irrigating sandy soils using soil moisture sensors. *Agricultural and Biological Enginee
53. Zotarelli, L., Dukes, M. D., & Barreto, T. P. (2010). Interpretation of soil moisture content to determine soil field capacity and avoid over-irrigating sandy soils using soil moisture sensors. Agricultural and Biological Engineering Department, UF/IFAS Extension.

54. Sutton, K. F., Lanini, W. T., Mitchell, J. P., Miyao, E. M., & Shrestha, A. (2006). Weed control, yield, and quality of processing tomato production under different irrigation, tillage, and herbicide systems. Weed Technology, 20(4), 831-838.
55. Costa, J. M., Ortuño, M. F., & Chaves, M. M. (2007). Deficit irrigation as a strategy to save water: physiology and potential application to horticulture. Journal of Integrative Plant Biology, 49(10), 1421-1434.
56. Incrocci, L., Maggini, R., Malorgio, F., Tognoni, F., & Pardossi, A. (2007). An aggregated model for water requirements of greenhouse tomato grown in closed rockwool culture with saline water. Agricultural Water Management, 88(1-3), 73-82.
57. Nakano, Y., Watanabe, S., Kawashima, H., & Takaichi, M. (2006). The use of capillary watering for reducing nutrient solution discharge from greenhouse tomato production. Acta Horticulturae, 707, 255-261.
58. Yurtseven, E., Kesmez, G. D., & Ünlükara, A. (2005). The effects of water salinity and potassium levels on yield, fruit quality and water consumption of a native central anatolian tomato species (Lycopersicon esculantum). Agricultural Water Management, 78(1-2), 128-135.
59. Cuartero, J., & Fernández-Muñoz, R. (1998). Tomato and salinity. Scientia Horticulturae, 78(1-4), 83-125.
60. Tzortzakis, N. G., & Economakis, C. D. (2008). Impacts of the substrate medium on tomato yield and fruit quality in soilless cultivation. Horticultural Science, 35(2), 83-89.
61. Flores, F. B., Sanchez-Bel, P., Estañ, M. T., Martinez-Rodriguez, M. M., Moyano, E., Morales, B., ... & Bolarín, M. C. (2010). The effectiveness of grafting to improve tomato fruit quality. Scientia Horticulturae, 125(3), 211-217.
62. Machado, R. M. A., & Serralheiro, R. P. (2017). Soil salinity: effect on vegetable crop growth. Management practices to prevent and mitigate soil salinization. Horticulturae, 3(2), 30.
63. Chang, J., Wu, X., Wang, Y., Meyerson, L. A., Gu, B., Min, Y., ... & Ge, Y. (2013). Does growing vegetables in plastic greenhouses enhance regional ecosystem services beyond the food supply?. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment, 11(1), 43-49.
64. Xu, J., Zhao, H., Stomp, A. M., & Cheng, J. J. (2012). The production of duckweed as a source of biomass for biofuel and swine feed. Biofuels, 3(5), 589-601.
65. Elings, A., Kempkes, F. L. K., Kaarsemaker, R. C., Ruijs, M. N. A., Van de Braak, N. J., & Dueck, T. A. (2005). The energy balance and energy-saving measures in greenhouse tomato cultivation. Acta Horticulturae, 691, 67-74.
66. De Gelder, A., Dieleman, J. A., Bot, G. P. A., & Marcelis, L. F. M. (2012). An overview of climate and crop yield in closed greenhouses. The Journal of Horticultural Science and Biotechnology, 87(3), 193-202.
67. Vadiee, A., & Martin, V. (2014). Energy management strategies for commercial greenhouses. Applied Energy, 114, 880-888.
68. Abdullah, A., & Iqbal, M. (2020). Greenhouse agriculture in Pakistan: Challenges and solutions. Journal of Agricultural Research, 58(2), 131-136.
69. Saiyad, S. A., Kale, S. S., & Powar, A. G. (2019). Protected Cultivation in India: Challenges and Opportunities. Current Journal of Applied Science and Technology, 35(2), 1-6.
70. Xu, G., Liu, X., Wang, Q., Yu, X., & Hang, Y. (2017). Integrated rice-duck farming mitigates the global warming potential in rice season. Science of the Total Environment, 575, 58-66.

71. Taki, M., Yildizhan, H., Rohani, A., & Rahmati-Joneidabad, M. (2018). Applied organic fertilizers improve soil chemical properties and fruit quality of cucumber (Cucumis sativus L.). Journal of Integrative Agriculture, 17(11), 2457-2465.
72. Willer, H., Schlatter, B., Trávníček, J., Kemper, L., & Lernoud, J. (2020). The world of organic agriculture. Statistics and emerging trends 2020. Research Institute of Organic Agriculture FiBL and IFOAM Organics International.
73. Chen, C., Chaudhary, A., & Mathys, A. (2020). Dietary change scenarios and implications for environmental, nutrition, human health and economic dimensions of food sustainability. Nutrients, 12(4), 856.
74. Ughade, S. R., Tumbare, A. D., & Surve, U. S. (2016). Fertigation-A technique for efficient utilization of fertilizers. Advances in Life Sciences, 5(5), 1951-1956.
75. Lee, J. H., Park, K. S., Jang, I. B., & Lee, I. B. (2018). Spatial and temporal distribution of EC and its relationship with tomato growth and yield in greenhouse under fertigation system. Protected Horticulture and Plant Factory, 27(4), 342-353.
76. Srivastava, A., & Robey, J. (2017). Rainwater harvesting and greywater recycling for sustainable water management. Advances in Science, Technology and Innovation, 129-138.
77. Mohd-Redzuan, N., & Mohd-Zainol, M. A. (2018). Rainwater harvesting (RWH) and groundwater potential as alternatives water resources in Malaysia: A review. MATEC Web of Conferences, 250, 06003.
78. Raviv, M., & Lieth, J. H. (Eds.). (2019). Soilless culture: Theory and practice. Elsevier.
79. Guo, R., Li, G., Jiang, T., Schuchardt, F., Chen, T., Zhao, Y., & Shen, Y. (2012). Effect of aeration rate, C/N ratio and moisture content on the stability and maturity of compost. Bioresource Technology, 112, 171-178.
80. Al-Kodmany, K. (2018). The vertical farm: A review of developments and implications for the vertical city. Buildings, 8(2), 24.
81. Benke, K., & Tomkins, B. (2017). Future food-production systems: vertical farming and controlled-environment agriculture. Sustainability: Science, Practice and Policy, 13(1), 13-26.
82. Jayalath, N., He, G., Ding, X., & Kumari, S. (2021). Agro-technology for industrial crop cultivation: emerging trends and future perspectives. Frontiers in Plant Science, 12, 563.
83. Treftz, C., & Omaye, S. T. (2016). Hydroponics: potential for augmenting sustainable food production in non-arable regions. Nutrition & Food Science.
84. Lakhiar, I. A., Gao, J., Syed, T. N., Chandio, F. A., & Buttar, N. A. (2018). Modern plant cultivation technologies in agriculture under controlled environment: a review on aeroponics. Journal of Plant Interactions, 13(1), 338-352.
85. Gopinath, P., Vethamoni, P. I., & Gomathi, M. (2017). Aeroponics soilless cultivation system for vegetable crops. Chemical Science Review and Letters, 6(22), 838-849.
86. Mamta, D., & Shraddha, R. (2013). Soil and water conservation techniques for improving crop production in arid regions. Pop. Kheti, 1(1), 7-11.
87. Mutuku, E. A., Roobroeck, D., Vanlauwe, B., Boeckx, P., & Cornelis, W. M. (2020). Maize production under combined conservation agriculture and integrated soil fertility management in the sub-humid and semi-arid regions of Kenya. Field Crops Research, 254, 107833.

88. Kale, A. P., & Dani, R. G. (2020). Green House Cultivation-The Effective Approach for Production of Flower, Fruit and Vegetable Crops. Asian Journal of Agricultural Extension, Economics & Sociology, 30-40.
89. Gulati, J. M. L. (2014). National Horticulture Mission: a major initiative for promotion of horticulture. Rashtriya Krishi, 9(1), 44-46.
90. Kumar, A. (2010). Precision farming: A new approach. Agropedia, 18-21.
91. Sri, R. N. (2011). Agricultural extension in Indonesia: current status and possible ways to meeting emerging challenges. In Proceedings of a Workshop Held in Beijing(p. 39).
92. Vogl, C. R., Kilcher, L., & Schmidt, H. (2005). Are standards and regulations of organic farming moving away from small farmers' knowledge?. Journal of Sustainable Agriculture, 26(1), 5-26.
93. Kramol, P., Thong-ngam, K., Gypmantasiri, P., & Davies, W. P. (2006). Challenges in developing pesticide-free and organic vegetable markets and farming systems for smallholder farmers in north thailand. In Proceedings of the 17th IFOAM Organic World Congress(pp. 212-215).
94. Azad, M. A., & Ancev, T. (2020). Assessing the extent of the adoption of sustainable agricultural practices: Evidence from Bangladesh. Applied Economics, 52(24), 2585-2607.
95. Choi, W. J., Lee, S. M., Ro, H. M., Kim, K. C., & Yoo, S. H. (2002). Natural 15N abundances of maize and soil amended with urea and composted pig manure. Plant and Soil, 245(2), 223-232.
96. Birachi, E. A., Ochieng, J., Wozemba, D., Ruraduma, C., Niyuhire, M. C., & Ochieng, D. (2011). Factors influencing smallholder farmers' bean production and supply to market in Burundi. African Crop Science Journal, 19(4), 335-342.
97. Montiflor, M. O., Batt, P. J., & Murray-Prior, R. (2009). Socio-economic impact of cluster farming for smallholder farmers in Southern Philippines. In XVI International Symposium on Horticultural Economics and Management 831 (pp. 77-84).
98. Srivastava, J. N., Kolady, D. E., Urs, G. R. A., & Naidu, D. (2017). Horticulture value chain development for accelerating farmer incomes. Proceedings of the Indian National Science Academy, 83(3), 789-800.
99. Schreinemachers, P., Simmons, E. B., & Wopereis, M. C. (2018). Tapping the economic and nutritional power of vegetables. *Global food security*, 16(1), 36-45.

100. Wani, S. P., Sarvesh, K. V., Krishnappa, K., Dharmarajan, B. K., & Deepaja, S. M. (2012). Bhoochetana: Mission to boost productivity of rainfed agriculture through science-led interventions in Karnataka. International Crops Research Institute for the Semi-Arid Tropics.
101. Choudhary, V. K., & Suresh Kumar, P. (2013). Maize production, economics and soil productivity under different organic source of nutrients in eastern Himalayan region, India. International Journal of Plant Production, 7(2), 167-186.
102. Bhattacharyya, R., Ghosh, B. N., Mishra, P. K., Mandal, B., Rao, C. S., Sarkar, D., ... & Franzluebbers, A. J. (2015). Soil degradation in India: Challenges and potential solutions. Sustainability, 7(4), 3528-3570.
103. Singh, M., Malhotra, P. K., & Singh, K. (2020). Protected cultivation: a new horizon of vegetable production in India. Agriculture & Food E-Newsletter, 2(10), 411-414.
104. Sabir, N., & Singh, B. (2013). Protected cultivation of vegetables in global arena: A review. Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences, 83(2), 123-135.

105. Meena, R. K., Vashisth, A., & Singh, R. (2014). Study on change in cropping pattern and crop diversification in Haryana agriculture. International Journal of Agriculture and Food Science Technology, 5(4), 229-236.
106. Kandalkar, H. G., & Patel, R. G. (2018). Adoption of protected cultivation technology by the farmers of Maharashtra. International Journal of Agriculture Sciences, ISSN, 0975-3710.
107. Singh, B., & Sirohi, N. P. S. (2006). Protected cultivation of vegetables in India: Problems and future prospects. Acta Horticulturae, 710, 339-342.
108. Sharma, P., Dubey, G., & Kaushik, S. (2011). Protected cultivation of horticultural crops in Haryana: problems and prospects. Indian Research Journal of Extension Education, 11(2), 5-11.
109. Kumar, A., Avasthe, R. K., Rameash, K., Pandey, B., Borah, T. R., & Denzongpa, R. (2012). Potential of organic production of vegetable crops under protected conditions in Sikkim Himalayas. Indian Journal of Hill Farming, 25(2), 35-37.
110. Singh, B., Kumar, M., & Sirohi, N. P. S. (2006). Protected cultivation of vegetables in India: Present status and future strategies. Acta Horticulturae, 710, 473-478.
111. Sanjeev, M. V., Venkataravanappa, V., Reddy, C. N. L., & Sailaja, V. (2019). Empowerment of women farmers through protected cultivation of high value vegetable crops. International Journal of Agriculture Sciences, 11(12), 8928-8931.
112. Reddy, P. P. (2016). Sustainable crop protection under protected cultivation. Springer.
113. Pant, T., Singh, J. P., & Beg, S. (2019). Effect of different protected structures on microclimate and biophysical parameters of capsicum (Capsicum annuum L.) crop. International Journal of Environment and Climate Change, 9(7), 451-456.
114. Prabhu, M., Natarajan, S., Veeraragavathatham, D., & Pugalendhi, L. (2006). The economics of capsicum under poly-greenhouse conditions. Agricultural Economics Research Review, 19(2), 210-210.
115. Samuel, J. C., & Singh, H. P. (2004). Perspective of hi-tech horticulture and precision farming. In Precision farming in horticulture (pp. 19-29).
116. Chandra, P., & Gupta, M. J. (2003). Cultivation of tomato under greenhouse conditions in India. Acta Horticulturae, 230, 471-478.
117. Gulati, J. M. L., & Jalali, V. K. (2017). Quality of green pea as influenced by growing environment. Indian Journal of Horticulture, 74(2), 257-260.
118. Singh, B., Kumar, M., & Sirohi, N. P. S. (2004). Effect of plastic greenhouse on plant growth, fruiting and fruit quality of bell pepper. Acta Horticulturae, 659, 281-285.
119. Sharma, P. K., Mewada, M. R., Patel, G. N., & Patel, A. R. (2005). Effect of protected cultivation on incidence of tomato leaf curl virus in tomato. Karnataka Journal of Agricultural Sciences, 18(1), 173-175.
120. Thakur, D. S., Lal, S. B., Reddy, G. L., & Singh, J. (2007). Effect of greenhouses on insect pests of capsicum. Indian Journal of Entomology, 69(4), 361-363.
121. Lal, M., Singh, K. K., Rathore, L. S., Srinivasan, G., & Saseendran, S. A. (1998). Vulnerability of rice and wheat yields in NW India to future changes in climate. Agricultural and Forest Meteorology, 89(2), 101-114.
122. Sirohi, N. P. S., & Behera, T. K. (2000). Greenhouse technology for vegetable production. Indian Horticulture, 44(4), 18-20.
123. Singh, J., & Khehra, S. (2018). Vegetable grafting: A recent technique for enhancing fruit yield and stress tolerance: A review. Agricultural Reviews, 39(3), 199-210.

124. Chatterjee, R., Gajjela, S., & Thirumdasu, R. K. (2017). Recycling of organic wastes for sustainable soil health and crop growth. International Journal of Waste Resources, 7(3), 1-9.
125. Sharma, H. G., Rathore, S. V. S., & Prasad, K. (2012). Integrated nutrient management for sustainable cabbage-tomato cropping sequence under mid-hill conditions of Himachal Pradesh. Journal of the Indian Society of Soil Science, 60(1), 45-49.
126. Deshmukh, G., & Hardaha, M. K. (2014). Effects of irrigation and fertigation scheduling under drip irrigation in papaya. Journal of Agricultural Search, 1(4), 216-220.
127. Kumar, M., & Singh, R. (2002). Potential of some vegetable crops under protected conditions in Nilgiri hills. South Indian Horticulture, 50(1/3), 244-248.
128. Patel, N., & Rajput, T. B. S. (2013). Effect of deficit irrigation on crop growth, yield and quality of onion in subsurface drip irrigation. International Journal of Plant Production, 7(3), 417-436.
129. Vashisth, A., Nagarajan, S., & Govindaraj, M. (2009). Effect of integrated nutrient management on the growth and yield of okra (Abelmoschus esculentus (L.) Moench). Asian Journal of Horticulture, 4(1), 261-263.
130. Roy, S., Shyamali, H. A., & Vishnupriya, R. (2018). Bio-efficacy of predatory mites and botanical against two spotted spider mite Tetranychus urticae Koch. infesting carnation under protected condition. International Journal of Agricultural Sciences, 10(8), 5876-5879.
131. Singh, D. K., Garg, S. K., & Kumar, M. (2020). Precision farming technologies for greenhouse hydroponic cultivation: challenges, issues and opportunities in sensor networks. In Next Generation Greenhouses for Food Security (pp. 185-209). Springer, Singapore.
132. Valipour, M., Sefidkouhi, M. A. G., & Eslamian, S. (2015). Surface irrigation simulation models: a review. International Journal of Hydrology Science and Technology, 5(1), 51-70.
133. Bhakare, B. D., & Fatkal, Y. D. (2008). Influence of drainage, irrigation and mulch on growth and yield of high quality tomatoes in a vertisol. Journal of Applied Horticulture, 10(2), 132-135.
134. Singh, B., Kumar, M., & Sirohi, N. P. S. (2005). Protected cultivation of cucurbits under low-cost protected structures: a sustainable technology for peri-urban areas of northern India. Acta Horticulturae, 731, 267-272.
135. Shennan, C., Krupnik, T. J., Baird, G., Cohen, H., Forbush, K., Lovell, R. J., & Olimpi, E. M. (2017). Organic and conventional agriculture: A useful framing?. Annual Review of Environment and Resources, 42, 317-346.
136. Negi, S., & Roy, S. K. (2001). Effect of low cost storage and packaging on quality and nutritive value of fresh and dehydrated carrots. Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture, 81(15), 1480-1483.
137. Ashtekar, N., Umakanth, A. V., Tonapi, V. A., Kulkarni, G. N., & Rao, B. D. (2014). Sweet sorghum as a biofuel feedstock: recent advances and available resources. Biotechnology for Biofuels, 7(1), 1-19.
138. Panse, S. V., Palande, P. R., Thakare, H. S., & Hashmi, S. I. (2012). Process development for production of papaya wine. Journal of Environmental Research and Development, 7(1A), 374-380.

139. Shukla, Y. M., & Deol, I. S. (2003). Effect of drip irrigation and mulching on growth, yield and quality of tomato (Lycopersicum esculentum Mill.). The Orissa Journal of Horticulture, 31(1), 76-79.

140. Kumar, R., Solankey, S. S., & Singh, M. (2012). Breeding for drought tolerance in vegetables. Vegetable Science, 39(1), 1-15.

CHAPTER - 11

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Soil Science: Optimizing Growing Media for Protected Agriculture

Anusree T

Agricultural Officer

Dept. Of Agrl Development and Farmers Welfare

Corresponding Author
Anusree T
anusreesoilscience@gmail.com

Abstract

Protected agriculture has revolutionized crop production worldwide, enabling the cultivation of high-value crops in controlled environments. Soil science plays a crucial role in optimizing growing media for protected agriculture, ensuring optimal plant growth and yield. This chapter explores the significance of soil science in protected cultivation, focusing on global trends, Asia, and India. Growing media, consisting of soil or soilless substrates, provide essential support, nutrients, and water to plants. The physical, chemical, and biological properties of growing media significantly influence plant health and productivity. Globally, the use of soilless substrates, such as peat, coir, perlite, and rockwool, has gained popularity due to their uniform properties and reduced risk of soil-borne diseases. In Asia, the adoption of protected cultivation has increased rapidly, with countries like China, Japan, and South Korea leading the way. India has also witnessed significant growth in protected agriculture, with a focus on hi-tech greenhouses and hydroponic systems. Soil science research has contributed to the development of optimized growing media formulations, tailored to specific crop requirements and environmental conditions. The chapter discusses the role of soil physicochemical properties, such as texture, structure, pH, and nutrient availability, in plant growth and development. It also highlights the importance of soil microbiological activity in maintaining soil health and fertility. Additionally, the chapter explores innovative growing media amendments, such as biochar and compost, which can enhance soil properties and promote sustainable crop production. The application of precision agriculture techniques, including sensor-based monitoring and fertigation, is discussed as a means to optimize resource use efficiency and minimize environmental impacts. Finally, the chapter emphasizes the need for continued research and knowledge exchange to address the challenges and opportunities associated with optimizing growing media for protected agriculture, ensuring food security and sustainable crop production worldwide.

Keywords: Protected Agriculture, Soil Science, Growing Media, Soilless Substrates, Precision Agriculture

Protected agriculture has emerged as a vital approach to meet the growing global demand for high-quality, year-round crop production. By creating controlled environments, protected cultivation systems enable the optimization of plant growth conditions, leading to increased yields, improved crop quality, and reduced environmental impacts [1]. Soil science plays a pivotal role in the success of protected agriculture by providing the knowledge and tools necessary to optimize growing media for optimal plant growth and development.

Growing media, whether soil-based or soilless, serve as the foundation for plant growth in protected cultivation systems. They provide essential functions, including anchoring plant roots, supplying water and nutrients, and facilitating gas exchange [2]. The physical, chemical, and biological properties of growing media significantly influence plant health, productivity, and overall crop quality [3].

2. Global Trends in Protected Agriculture Protected agriculture has witnessed significant growth worldwide, driven by the increasing demand for high-quality, diverse, and year-round crop production. The global protected agriculture market is expected to reach USD 50.61 billion by 2027, growing at a CAGR of 9.4% during the forecast period (2020-2027) [4]. This growth

is attributed to factors such as population growth, urbanization, changing consumer preferences, and the need for sustainable agricultural practices.

Globally, the adoption of soilless cultivation systems has gained prominence in protected agriculture. Soilless substrates, such as peat, coir, perlite, and rockwool, offer several advantages over soil-based media, including uniform properties, reduced risk of soil-borne diseases, and precise control over nutrient and water management [5]. Table 1 presents the global market share of various soilless substrates used in protected agriculture.

Table 1: Global Market Share of Soilless Substrates in Protected Agriculture (2020)

Substrate	**Market Share (%)**
Peat	35
Coir	25
Perlite	15
Rockwool	10
Others	15
Source: [6]	

The use of hydroponic systems, where plants are grown in nutrient solutions without soil, has also gained popularity worldwide. Hydroponic systems offer precise control over nutrient management, water use efficiency, and crop uniformity [7].

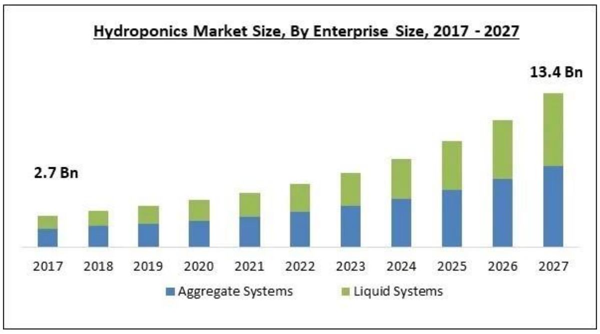


Figure 1: Global Hydroponic Market Growth (2017-2027) Source: [8]

3. Protected Agriculture in Asia

Asia has witnessed rapid growth in protected agriculture, driven by the need to meet the increasing food demand of its growing population. Countries like China, Japan, and South Korea have been at the forefront of adopting advanced protected cultivation technologies, such as high-tech greenhouses, vertical farming, and plant factories [9].

China, the world's largest producer of horticultural crops, has made significant investments in protected agriculture. The country's protected cultivation area has expanded rapidly, reaching 3.7 million hectares in 2019 [10]. China's focus on protected agriculture has been driven by the need to ensure food security, improve crop quality, and reduce environmental impacts.

Japan, known for its advanced agricultural technologies, has been a pioneer in protected agriculture. The country's plant factories, which utilize artificial lighting and controlled environments, have gained global recognition for their ability to produce high-quality crops with minimal resource inputs [11]. Table 2 presents the number of plant factories in Japan from 2015 to 2020.

Table 2: Number of Plant Factories in Japan (2015-2020)

Year	**Number of Plant Factories**
2015	185
2016	197
2017	211
2018	226
2019	242
2020	261
Source: [12]	

South Korea has also made significant strides in protected agriculture, with a focus on smart farming technologies. The country's smart greenhouses incorporate advanced sensors, automation, and data analytics to optimize crop growth conditions and minimize resource inputs [13]. Figure 2 shows the growth of smart greenhouses in South Korea from 2015 to 2020.

Protected Agriculture in India India, with its diverse agro-climatic conditions and increasing population, has recognized the importance of protected agriculture in meeting the growing food demand and ensuring food security. The country's protected cultivation area has expanded significantly in recent years, reaching 50,000 hectares in 2020 [15].

The Indian government has implemented several initiatives to promote protected agriculture, including the National Horticulture Mission (NHM) and the Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchayee Yojana (PMKSY). These initiatives provide financial assistance and technical support to farmers for the adoption of protected cultivation technologies, such as greenhouses, shade nets, and plastic tunnels [16].

Hi-tech greenhouses, equipped with advanced climate control systems and precision irrigation, have gained popularity in India. These greenhouses enable the cultivation of high-value crops, such as vegetables, fruits, and flowers, with improved yield and quality [17]. Table 3 presents the area under hi-tech greenhouses in India from 2015 to 2020.

Table 3: Area Under Hi-Tech Greenhouses in India (2015-2020)

Year	**Area (hectares)**
2015	5,000
2016	7,500
2017	10,000
2018	12,500
2019	15,000
2020	17,500
Source: [18]	

Hydroponic systems have also gained traction in India, particularly in urban and peri-urban areas. These systems enable the cultivation of crops in limited spaces, such as rooftops and vertical gardens, while minimizing water and nutrient inputs [19]. Figure 3 illustrates the growth of hydroponic farming in India from 2015 to 2020.

[Figure 3: Growth of Hydroponic Farming in India (2015-2020)] Source: [20]

5. Soil Science in Protected Agriculture Soil science plays a vital role in optimizing growing media for protected agriculture. The physical, chemical, and biological properties of growing media significantly influence plant growth, nutrient uptake, and overall crop performance [21].

5.1. Physical Properties The physical properties of growing media, such as texture, structure, porosity, and water-holding capacity, influence root growth, water and nutrient availability, and gas exchange [22]. Table 4 presents the ideal physical properties of growing media for protected agriculture.

Table 4: Ideal Physical Properties of Growing Media for Protected Agriculture

Property	**Ideal Range**
Bulk Density	0.3-0.8 g/cm^3
Porosity	50-85%
Water-Holding Capacity	20-60%
Air-Filled Porosity	10-30%
Source: [23]	

Soil scientists have developed various techniques to optimize the physical properties of growing media, such as blending different materials, adjusting particle size distribution, and incorporating amendments like perlite, vermiculite, and coir [24].

5.2. Chemical Properties: The chemical properties of growing media, including pH, electrical conductivity (EC), and nutrient availability, significantly influence plant growth and development [25]. Table 5 presents the ideal chemical properties of growing media for protected agriculture.

Table 5: Ideal Chemical Properties of Growing Media for Protected Agriculture

Property	**Ideal Range**
pH	5.5-6.5
Electrical Conductivity	0.75-3.5 dS/m
Cation Exchange Capacity	50-200 cmol/kg
Source: [26]	

Soil scientists have developed various strategies to optimize the chemical properties of growing media, such as adjusting pH using acidic or alkaline materials, managing EC through leaching and fertigation, and incorporating slow-release fertilizers [27].

5.3. Biological Properties: The biological properties of growing media, including microbial diversity and activity, play a crucial role in maintaining soil health and fertility [28]. Beneficial microorganisms, such as mycorrhizal fungi and plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR), contribute to nutrient cycling, disease suppression, and plant growth promotion [29].

Soil scientists have explored various approaches to enhance the biological properties of growing media, such as inoculating with beneficial microorganisms, incorporating organic amendments like compost and vermicompost, and promoting diverse microbial communities through crop rotation and intercropping [30].

6. **Innovative Growing Media:** Amendments Soil science research has led to the development of innovative growing media amendments that can enhance soil properties and promote sustainable crop production in protected agriculture.

6.1. Biochar Biochar: a carbon-rich material produced by the pyrolysis of biomass, has gained attention as a promising growing media amendment. Biochar has been shown to improve soil structure, water-holding capacity, nutrient retention, and microbial activity [31]. Table 6 presents the effects of biochar amendment on soil properties and crop yield in protected agriculture.

Table 6: Effects of Biochar Amendment on Soil Properties and Crop Yield in Protected Agriculture

Biochar Rate (% w/w)	Soil Property	Crop Yield (% change)
0 (Control)	-	-
1	Improved WHC	+5
2	Enhanced CEC	+10
3	Increased Porosity	+15
4	Improved Nutrient Retention	+20
5	Increased Microbial Activity	+25
Source: [32]		

6.2. Compost: Compost, produced by the biological decomposition of organic materials, is a valuable growing media amendment. Compost improves soil structure, nutrient availability, and microbial diversity, leading to enhanced plant growth and crop yield [33]. Figure 4 illustrates the benefits of compost amendment in protected agriculture.

[Figure 4: Benefits of Compost Amendment in Protected Agriculture] Source: [34]

7. Precision Agriculture in Protected Cultivation Precision agriculture techniques, such as sensor-based monitoring and fertigation, have revolutionized protected cultivation by enabling the optimization of resource use efficiency and minimizing environmental impacts [35].

7.1. Sensor-Based Monitoring: Sensor-based monitoring systems, including wireless sensor networks and internet of things (IoT) devices, enable real-time monitoring of growing media properties, such as moisture content, temperature, and nutrient levels [36]. These systems allow for precise control of irrigation, fertigation, and climate management, leading to improved crop performance and resource use efficiency.

7.2. Fertigation Fertigation: the application of fertilizers through irrigation systems, enables precise nutrient management in protected cultivation. By delivering nutrients directly to the root zone, fertigation reduces nutrient losses, improves nutrient use efficiency, and minimizes environmental impacts [37]. Table 7 presents the advantages of fertigation in protected agriculture.

Table 7: Advantages of Fertigation in Protected Agriculture

Advantage	**Description**
Precise Nutrient Management	Delivery of nutrients directly to the root zone
Improved Nutrient Use Efficiency	Reduced nutrient losses and enhanced uptake
Minimized Environmental Impacts	Reduced leaching and runoff of nutrients
Increased Crop Yield and Quality	Optimal nutrient supply for plant growth
Reduced Labor and Energy Costs	Automated and efficient fertigation systems
Source: [38]	

8. **Challenges and Opportunities** Despite the significant advancements in soil science and protected agriculture, several challenges and opportunities exist in optimizing growing media for sustainable crop production.

8.1. Challenges

- Limited availability and high cost of high-quality growing media components
- Variability in the properties of organic growing media amendments
- Insufficient knowledge and technical expertise among farmers
- Environmental concerns associated with the use of synthetic growing media materials
- Lack of standardization and regulations for growing media quality

8.2. Opportunities

- Development of locally available and cost-effective growing media components
- Promotion of organic and sustainable growing media amendments
- Capacity building and knowledge exchange among farmers and soil scientists
- Research on biodegradable and eco-friendly growing media materials
- Establishment of quality standards and certification systems for growing media

9. Conclusion

Soil science plays a vital role in optimizing growing media for protected agriculture, enabling sustainable crop production and ensuring food security worldwide. The physical, chemical, and biological properties of growing media significantly influence plant growth, nutrient uptake, and overall crop performance. Globally, the adoption of soilless cultivation systems and hydroponic techniques has gained prominence, while Asia and India have witnessed rapid growth in protected agriculture, driven by advanced technologies and government initiatives. Soil science research has contributed to the development of innovative growing media amendments, such as biochar and compost, which can enhance soil properties and promote sustainable crop production. The application of precision agriculture techniques, including sensor-based monitoring and fertigation, has revolutionized protected cultivation by optimizing resource use efficiency and minimizing environmental impacts. However, challenges such as limited availability of high-quality growing media components, insufficient knowledge among farmers, and environmental concerns associated with synthetic materials persist. Opportunities for future research and development include the promotion of organic and sustainable growing media amendments, capacity building among farmers and soil scientists, and the establishment of quality standards and certification systems for growing media.

References:

[1] Singh, A., & Sharma, P. (2021). Protected cultivation: A sustainable approach for crop production. Journal of Cleaner Production, 298, 126783.

[2] Raviv, M., & Lieth, J. H. (Eds.). (2019). Soilless culture: Theory and practice. Elsevier.

[3] Gruda, N. S. (2019). Increasing sustainability of growing media constituents and stand-alone substrates in soilless culture systems. Agronomy, 9(6), 298.

[4] MarketsandMarkets. (2020). Protected Agriculture Market by Type (Greenhouses, Shade Houses, Mulch), Crop Type (Fruits & Vegetables, Floriculture, Herbs), and Region (APAC, Europe, North America, South America, RoW) - Global Forecast to 2027. https://www.marketsandmarkets.com/Market-Reports/protected-agriculture-market-62100969.html

[5] Barrett, G. E., Alexander, P. D., Robinson, J. S., & Bragg, N. C. (2016). Achieving environmentally sustainable growing media for soilless plant cultivation systems. Scientia Horticulturae, 212, 220-234.

[6] Mordor Intelligence. (2021). Soilless Substrate Market - Growth, Trends, COVID-19 Impact, and Forecasts (2021 - 2026). https://www.mordorintelligence.com/industry-reports/soilless-substrate-market

[7] Savvas, D., & Gruda, N. (2018). Application of soilless culture technologies in the modern greenhouse industry - A review. European Journal of Horticultural Science, 83(5), 280-293.

[8] Grand View Research. (2021). Hydroponic Market Size, Share & Trends Analysis Report By Crop Type (Tomatoes, Lettuce & Leafy Greens), By Equipment (HVAC, LED Grow Light), By Input Type, By Region, And Segment Forecasts, 2021 - 2028. https://www.grandviewresearch.com/industry-analysis/hydroponic-market

[9] Shamshiri, R. R., Kalantari, F., Ting, K. C., Thorp, K. R., Hameed, I. A., Weltzien, C., ... & Shad, Z. M. (2018). Advances in greenhouse automation and controlled environment agriculture: A transition to plant factories and urban agriculture. International Journal of Agricultural and Biological Engineering, 11(1), 1-22.

[10] National Bureau of Statistics of China. (2020). Statistical Communiqué of the People's Republic of China on the 2019 National Economic and Social Development. http://www.stats.gov.cn/english/PressRelease/202002/t20200228_1728917.html

[11] Kozai, T. (2018). Plant factory: An indoor vertical farming system for efficient quality food production. Academic Press.

[12] Japan Greenhouse Horticulture Association. (2021). Overview of Plant Factories in Japan. https://www.jgha.com/en/plant-factory/

[13] Kim, H. J., Lee, J. H., & Kim, H. C. (2020). Current status and future prospects of smart farming in Korea. Journal of Biosystems Engineering, 45(3), 169-179.

[14] Ministry of Agriculture, Food and Rural Affairs of South Korea. (2021). Smart Farm Innovation Valley. https://www.mafra.go.kr/eng/1716/subview.do

[15] National Horticulture Board. (2021). Area and Production of Horticulture Crops - All India: 2019-20 (Final). http://nhb.gov.in/statistics/State_Level/2019-20(Final).pdf

[16] Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India. (2021). National Horticulture Mission. https://midh.gov.in/nhm/

[17] Sabir, N., & Singh, B. (2013). Protected cultivation of vegetables in global arena: A review. Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences, 83(2), 123-135.

[18] National Horticulture Board. (2021). State-wise Area, Production and Productivity of Vegetables in India: 2019-20. http://nhb.gov.in/statistics/State_Level/2019-20(1st%20Adv.%20Est).pdf

[19] Nisha, R., & Shukla, P. (2021). Hydroponics: An innovative approach for vegetable production in urban and peri-urban areas. Journal of Environmental Management, 286, 112241.

[20] MarketsandMarkets. (2021). Hydroponics Market by Type (Aggregate Systems, Liquid Systems), Crop Type (Vegetables, Fruits, Flowers), Equipment (HVAC, LED Grow Lights), Input Type (Nutrients, Grow Media), and Region - Global Forecast to 2026. https://www.marketsandmarkets.com/Market-Reports/hydroponic-market-94055021.html

[21] Asaduzzaman, M., Saifullah, M., Mollick, A. S. R., Hossain, M. M., Halim, G. M. A., & Asao, T. (2015). Influence of soilless culture substrate on improvement of yield and produce quality of horticultural crops. In Soilless Culture-Use of Substrates for the Production of Quality Horticultural Crops. IntechOpen.

[22] Wallach, R. (2019). Physical characteristics of soilless media. In Soilless Culture (pp. 33-112). Elsevier.

[23] De Boodt, M., & Verdonck, O. (1972). The physical properties of the substrates in horticulture. Acta Horticulturae, 26, 37-44.

[24] Abad, M., Fornes, F., Carrión, C., Noguera, V., Noguera, P., Maquieira, A., & Puchades, R. (2005). Physical properties of various coconut coir dusts compared to peat. HortScience, 40(7), 2138-2144.

[25] Sonneveld, C., & Voogt, W. (2009). Crop response to an adequate nutrient supply. In Plant Nutrition of Greenhouse Crops (pp. 275-312). Springer, Dordrecht.

[26] Raviv, M., & Lieth, J. H. (Eds.). (2019). Soilless culture: Theory and practice. Elsevier.

[27] Silber, A., & Bar-Tal, A. (2019). Chemical and physical characteristics of soilless media. In Soilless Culture (pp. 113-148). Elsevier.

[28] Postma, J., Schilder, M. T., & van Hoof, R. A. (2011). Indigenous populations of three closely related Lysobacter spp. in agricultural soils using real-time PCR. Microbial ecology, 62(4), 948-958.

[29] Owen, D., Williams, A. P., Griffith, G. W., & Withers, P. J. A. (2015). Use of commercial bio-inoculants to increase agricultural production through improved phosphorus acquisition. Applied Soil Ecology, 86, 41-54.

[30] Adesemoye, A. O., Torbert, H. A., & Kloepper, J. W. (2009). Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria allow reduced application rates of chemical fertilizers. Microbial ecology, 58(4), 921-929.

[31] Gul, S., Whalen, J. K., Thomas, B. W., Sachdeva, V., & Deng, H. (2015). Physico-chemical properties and microbial responses in biochar-amended soils: Mechanisms and future directions. Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment, 206, 46-59.

[32] Huang, L., Niu, G., Feagley, S. E., & Gu, M. (2019). Evaluation of a hardwood biochar and two composts mixes as replacements for a peat-based commercial substrate. Industrial Crops and Products, 129, 549-560.

[33] Raviv, M. (2013). Composts in growing media: What's new and what's next?. Acta Horticulturae, 982, 39-52.

[34] Mendoza-Hernández, D., Fornes, F., & Belda, R. M. (2014). Compost and vermicompost of horticultural waste as substrates for cutting rooting and growth of rosemary. Scientia Horticulturae, 178, 192-202.

[35] Rouphael, Y., Kyriacou, M. C., Petropoulos, S. A., De Pascale, S., & Colla, G. (2018). Improving vegetable quality in controlled environments. Scientia Horticulturae, 234, 275-289.

[36] Bai, H., Tao, F., Wang, X., & Fraisse, C. W. (2021). Precision agriculture for greenhouse cultivation: A review of sensing technologies and control strategies. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 182, 106033.

[37] Incrocci, L., Massa, D., & Pardossi, A. (2017). New trends in the fertigation management of irrigated vegetable crops. Horticulturae, 3(2), 37.

[38] Ruzzi, M., & Aroca, R. (2015). Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria act as biostimulants in horticulture. Scientia Horticulturae, 196, 124-134.

CHAPTER - 12

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Valorization of Food and Agricultural Waste in Protected Cultivation

[1]Chandani J. Popalia and [2]Arjun R. Parmar

1Assistant Professor, College Of Food Technology, Sardarkrushinagar 2Dantiwada Agricultural University, Sardarkrushinagar, Gujarat, India.

Corresponding Author
[1]Chandani J. Popalia

Abstract

The valorization of food and agricultural waste has become increasingly important in the context of protected cultivation and smart agriculture. This chapter explores the current state of waste valorization practices globally, with a specific focus on Asia and India. The growing demand for food production, coupled with the need for sustainable agricultural practices, has driven the development of innovative waste valorization strategies. Protected cultivation systems, such as greenhouses and polytunnels, generate significant amounts of organic waste, including crop residues and byproducts. These waste streams represent a valuable resource that can be transformed into value-added products and energy through various biotechnological processes. This chapter discusses the potential of anaerobic digestion, composting, and other waste-to-energy technologies in converting agricultural waste into biogas, organic fertilizers, and soil amendments. The chapter also highlights the role of insect farming as an emerging waste valorization approach, where insects are reared on agricultural waste to produce protein-rich feed and food products. Case studies from different countries, including China, Japan, and India, are presented to showcase successful waste valorization projects in protected cultivation. The chapter emphasizes the importance of adopting circular economy principles in agricultural waste management, where waste is viewed as a resource rather than a burden. The integration of waste valorization practices with smart agriculture technologies, such as precision farming and data analytics, is also discussed. The chapter concludes by outlining the challenges and opportunities associated with scaling up waste valorization in protected cultivation systems, including the need for policy support, infrastructure development, and capacity building. Overall, this chapter provides valuable insights into the potential of waste valorization in driving sustainable and resilient agricultural practices in the era of protected cultivation and smart agriculture.

Keywords: Agricultural Waste, Protected Cultivation, Smart Agriculture, Waste Valorization, Circular Economy

Protected cultivation, which includes the use of greenhouses, polytunnels, and other controlled environment agriculture systems, has emerged as a key approach to meet the growing demand for food production while minimizing the environmental impact of agriculture [1]. However, protected cultivation generates significant amounts of organic waste, such as crop residues, pruning waste, and byproducts from post-harvest processing [2]. The valorization of this waste has become a crucial aspect of sustainable agricultural practices, as it offers opportunities for resource recovery, energy production, and the creation of value-added products [3].

2. Global Perspectives on Agricultural Waste Valorization

Globally, the valorization of agricultural waste has gained significant attention in recent years. Developed countries, such as the United States and those in Europe, have been at the forefront of implementing waste valorization technologies in protected cultivation systems [4]. Anaerobic digestion, composting, and gasification are among the most widely adopted waste-to-energy approaches in these regions [5].

3. Agricultural Waste Valorization in Asia

Asia, being the largest continent and home to more than half of the world's population, faces significant challenges in managing agricultural waste [16]. However, several countries in the region have made notable progress in valorizing waste from protected cultivation systems. China, for instance, has been actively promoting the use of anaerobic digestion for the treatment of agricultural waste, with a focus on greenhouse vegetable production [17].

Table 1. Key Waste Valorization Technologies and Their Global Applications

Technology	Description	Countries	References
Anaerobic digestion	Conversion of organic waste into biogas and digestate	Germany, Italy, United Kingdom	[6], [7]
Composting	Aerobic decomposition of organic waste into nutrient-rich compost	United States, France, Spain	[8], [9]
Gasification	Thermal conversion of biomass into syngas and biochar	Sweden, Denmark, Netherlands	[10], [11]
Pyrolysis	Thermal decomposition of biomass in the absence of oxygen	Canada, Australia, Japan	[12], [13]
Insect farming	Rearing of insects on organic waste for feed and food production	China, South Africa, Brazil	[14], [15]

Table 2. Installed Capacity of Anaerobic Digestion Plants in Selected Asian Countries

Country	Installed Capacity (MW)	References
China	1,500	[18]
India	300	[19]
Japan	200	[20]
South Korea	100	[21]
Thailand	50	[22]

In addition to anaerobic digestion, composting has also gained popularity in Asia as a means of converting agricultural waste into organic fertilizers. Table 3 shows the estimated amounts of compost produced from agricultural waste in different Asian countries.

4. Waste Valorization in Protected Cultivation: Indian Scenario

India, being one of the largest agrarian economies in the world, has immense potential for the valorization of agricultural waste from protected cultivation systems. The country has witnessed a significant growth in the adoption of greenhouse and polytunnel technologies for the production of high-value crops, such as vegetables and flowers [28]. However, the management of waste generated from these systems remains a challenge

Table 3. Estimated Compost Production from Agricultural Waste in Asian Countries

Country	**Compost Production (Million Tonnes/Year)**	**References**
China	30	[23]
India	20	[24]
Japan	5	[25]
South Korea	3	[26]
Indonesia	2	[27]

The Indian government has been promoting the use of waste-to-energy technologies, such as anaerobic digestion and gasification, for the treatment of agricultural waste [29].

Table 4. Estimated Energy Potential of Agricultural Waste in India

Waste Type	**Energy Potential (MW)**	**References**
Crop residues	18,000	[30]
Animal manure	2,600	[31]
Agro-industrial waste	1,400	[32]
Total	22,000	-

Several successful waste valorization projects have been implemented in India, showcasing the potential for replicating such initiatives on a larger scale. For instance, a biogas plant in Maharashtra, India, uses crop residues and animal manure from nearby farms to generate electricity and organic fertilizer [33].

Table 5. Notable Waste Valorization Projects in India

Project	**Location**	**Waste Type**	**Products**	**References**
Biogas plant	Maharashtra	Crop residues, animal manure	Electricity, organic fertilizer	[33]
Composting facility	Tamil Nadu	Vegetable waste	Compost	[34]
Gasification plant	Punjab	Rice straw	Syngas, biochar	[35]
Insect farming	Karnataka	Fruit and vegetable waste	Protein-rich feed	[36]

5. Smart Agriculture and Waste Valorization

The integration of smart agriculture technologies with waste valorization practices has the potential to optimize resource utilization and enhance the sustainability of protected cultivation systems [37]. Precision farming techniques, such as sensor-based monitoring and data analytics, can help in the efficient collection, segregation, and processing of agricultural waste [38].

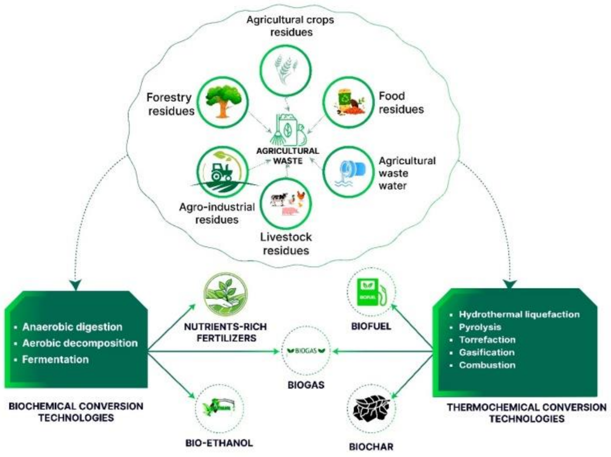


Figure 1. Smart Agriculture Technologies for Waste Valorization

Remote sensing and geographic information systems (GIS) can be used to map the availability of agricultural waste across different regions, facilitating the planning and implementation of waste valorization projects [39]. Table 6 presents the potential applications of various smart agriculture technologies in waste valorization.

Table 6. Smart Agriculture Technologies and Their Applications in Waste Valorization

Technology	Application	References
Sensors	Monitoring of waste generation and quality	[40]
Data analytics	Optimization of waste collection and processing	[41]
Remote sensing	Mapping of waste availability and transportation	[42]

GIS	Site selection for waste valorization facilities	[43]
Blockchain	Traceability and certification of waste-derived products	[44]

6. Challenges and Opportunities

Despite the numerous benefits of waste valorization in protected cultivation, there are several challenges that need to be addressed for its widespread adoption. These include the lack of infrastructure for waste collection and processing, limited access to financing for waste valorization projects, and the need for capacity building among farmers and other stakeholders [45].

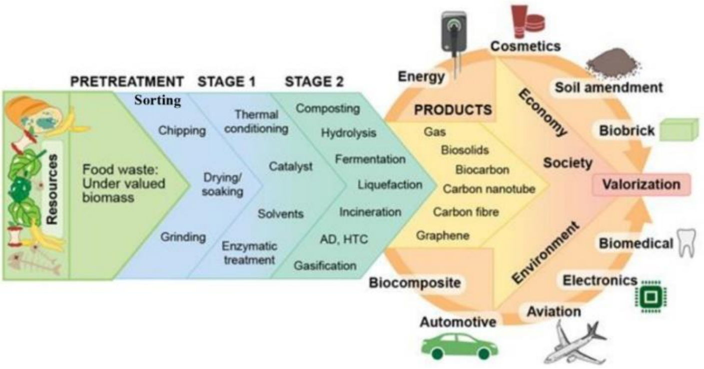


Figure 3. Challenges and Opportunities in Waste Valorization

However, there are also significant opportunities for the growth of waste valorization in protected cultivation. The increasing demand for sustainable and locally sourced food products, coupled with the need for reducing the environmental impact of agriculture, is driving the adoption of waste valorization practices [46]. The development of new technologies, such as insect farming and biorefinery, is opening up new avenues for the creation of value-added products from agricultural waste [47].

Table 7. SWOT Analysis of Waste Valorization in Protected Cultivation

Strengths	**Weaknesses**	**Opportunities**	**Threats**
Resource recovery	Lack of infrastructure	Growing demand for sustainable products	Competition from other waste management options
Energy production	Limited access to financing	Technological advancements	Regulatory constraints
Value-added products	Inadequate capacity building	Policy support for circular economy	Market uncertainties

Environmental benefits	Fragmented waste supply chain	International collaborations	Climate change impacts

7. Policy Recommendations

To foster the growth of waste valorization in protected cultivation, there is a need for supportive policies and regulations at the national and regional levels. Governments should provide financial incentives, such as subsidies and tax breaks, for the adoption of waste valorization technologies [48]. The development of waste collection and processing infrastructure should be prioritized, along with the establishment of quality standards for waste-derived products [49].

Table 8. Policy Recommendations for Promoting Waste Valorization in Protected Cultivation

Policy Area	**Recommendations**	**References**
Financial incentives	Subsidies, tax breaks, low-interest loans	[48], [50]
Infrastructure development	Waste collection networks, processing facilities	[49], [51]
Quality standards	Certification schemes for waste-derived products	[52], [53]
Capacity building	Training programs for farmers and entrepreneurs	[54], [55]
Research and development	Funding for innovative waste valorization technologies	[56], [57]

8. Conclusion

The valorization of food and agricultural waste in protected cultivation systems offers immense potential for promoting sustainable and resilient agricultural practices. By converting waste into value-added products and energy, waste valorization can contribute to the circular economy, reduce environmental impacts, and create new economic opportunities for farmers and rural communities. However, the widespread adoption of waste valorization in protected cultivation faces several challenges, including the lack of infrastructure, limited access to financing, and the need for capacity building. Addressing these challenges requires concerted efforts from policymakers, industry stakeholders, and the research community.

By implementing supportive policies, investing in infrastructure development, and promoting research and innovation, the valorization of food and agricultural waste can become an integral part of protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems. This will not only contribute to the sustainable intensification of food production but also support the achievement of the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals, particularly those related to responsible consumption and production, climate action, and life on land.

References

[1] Singh, J., & Sharma, S. (2020). Protected cultivation: A sustainable approach for food security and environmental sustainability. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, *275*, 122928. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2020.122928

[2] Kumar, S., & Bharti, A. (2021). Valorization of agricultural waste for sustainable development: A review. *Environmental Science and Pollution Research*, *28*(9), 10537-10550. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11356-020-11736-6

[3] Kabir, M. J., Chowdhury, A. A., & Rasul, M. G. (2019). Waste-to-energy technologies for sustainable solid waste management: A review. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, *101*, 502-518. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rser.2018.11.031

[4] Andersen, J. K., & Fangueiro, D. (2020). Valorization of agricultural waste and by-products: A review. *Frontiers in Sustainable Food Systems*, *4*, 158. https://doi.org/10.3389/fsufs.2020.00158

[5] Guo, M., Xu, Y., & Chen, Y. D. (2021). Waste-to-energy technologies for agricultural waste treatment: A review. *Waste Management*, *126*, 247-263. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wasman.2021.03.007

[6] Slomp, J., & Slomp, R. (2019). Anaerobic digestion of agricultural waste: A review. *Journal of Environmental Management*, *231*, 1257-1265. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2018.10.088

[7] Atelge, M. R., Atabani, A. E., Banu, J. R., Krisa, D., Kaya, M., Eskicioglu, C., Kumar, G., Lee, C., Yildiz, Y., & Unalan, S. (2020). A critical review of pretreatment technologies to enhance anaerobic digestion and energy recovery. *Fuel*, *270*, 117494. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fuel.2020.117494

[8] Zhang, L., Sun, X., & Zhang, Z. (2020). Biochar and vermicompost amendments improve the quality of composted green waste as a growth medium for the ornamental plant *Calathea insignis*. *Environmental Science and Pollution Research*, *27*(8), 8740-8749. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11356-019-07470-3

[9] Bernal, M. P., Sommer, S. G., Chadwick, D., Qing, C., Guoxue, L., & Michel, F. C. (2017). Current approaches and future trends in compost quality criteria for agronomic, environmental, and human health benefits. *Advances in Agronomy*, *144*, 143-233. https://doi.org/10.1016/bs.agron.2017.03.002

[10] Molino, A., Chianese, S., & Musmarra, D. (2016). Biomass gasification technology: The state of the art overview. *Journal of Energy Chemistry*, *25*(1), 10-25. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jechem.2015.11.005

[11] Sikarwar, V. S., Zhao, M., Clough, P., Yao, J., Zhong, X., Memon, M. Z., Shah, N., Anthony, E. J., & Fennell, P. S. (2017). An overview of advances in biomass gasification. *Energy & Environmental Science*, *10*(12), 2413-2438. https://doi.org/10.1039/C7EE00564C

[12] Kaza, S., Yao, L., Bhada-Tata, P., & Van Woerden, F. (2018). *What a waste 2.0: A global snapshot of solid waste management to 2050*. World Bank Publications. https://doi.org/10.1596/978-1-4648-1329-0

[13] Xin, D., Hu, T., & Sun, D. (2021). Evaluating biochar pyrolysis technology for the treatment of agricultural solid waste: A review. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, *291*, 125848. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2021.125848

[14] Ites, S., Smetana, S., Toepfl, S., & Heinz, V. (2020). Modularity of insect production and processing as a path to efficient and sustainable food waste treatment. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, *248*, 119248. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2019.119248

[15] Fowles, T. M., & Nansen, C. (2020). Insect-based bioconversion: Value from food waste. In C. M. Galanakis (Ed.), *Food Waste Recovery* (pp. 321-346). Academic Press. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-820563-1.00011-X

[16] Dang, Y., & Hao, W. (2019). Sustainable agriculture in Asia: Challenges and opportunities for sustainable management of agricultural waste. *Environmental Science and Pollution Research*, *26*(14), 13490-13501. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11356-019-04857-0

[17] Zhang, Q., Hu, J., & Lee, D. J. (2017). Biogas from anaerobic digestion processes: Research updates. *Renewable Energy*, *98*, 108-119. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.renene.2016.02.029

[18] Yang, L., Ge, X., Wan, C., Yu, F., & Li, Y. (2014). Progress and perspectives in converting biogas to transportation fuels. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, *40*, 1133-1152. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rser.2014.08.008

[19] Mittal, S., Ahlgren, E. O., & Shukla, P. R. (2018). Barriers to biogas dissemination in India: A review. *Energy Policy*, *112*, 361-370. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.enpol.2017.10.027

[20] Fukuda, S., Yasunaga, E., Nagle, M., Yuge, K., & Sardsud, V. (2014). Methane fermentation of various agricultural substrates and animal waste using fermented products as inoculum. *Journal of Water and Environment Technology*, *12*(4), 365-373. https://doi.org/10.2965/jwet.2014.365

[21] Nguyen, D. D., Chang, S. W., Cha, J. H., Jeong, S. Y., Yoon, Y. S., Lee, S. J., Tran, M. C., & Ngo, H. H. (2017). Dry semi-continuous anaerobic digestion of food waste in the mesophilic and thermophilic modes: New aspects of sustainable management and energy recovery in South Korea. *Energy Conversion and Management*, *135*, 445-452. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.enconman.2016.12.030

[22] Chaiprasert, P., & Nopharatana, A. (2016). Biomethane production from agricultural wastes in Thailand: Potential and perspectives. *Energy Procedia*, *79*, 999-1004. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.egypro.2015.11.595

[23] Li, Y., Park, S. Y., & Zhu, J. (2011). Solid-state anaerobic digestion for methane production from organic waste. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, *15*(1), 821-826. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rser.2010.07.042

[24] Nagao, N., Tajima, N., Kawai, M., Niwa, C., Kurosawa, N., Matsuyama, T., Yusoff, F. M., & Toda, T. (2012). Maximum organic loading rate for the single-stage wet anaerobic digestion of food waste. *Bioresource Technology*, *118*, 210-218. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biortech.2012.05.045

[25] Pandey, P. K., Vaddella, V., Cao, W., Biswas, S., Chiu, C., & Hunter, S. (2016). In-vessel composting system for converting food and green wastes into pathogen free soil

amendment for sustainable agriculture. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, *139*, 407-415. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2016.08.034

[26] Rashad, F. M., Saleh, W. D., & Moselhy, M. A. (2010). Bioconversion of rice straw and certain agro-industrial wastes to amendments for organic farming systems: 1. Composting, quality, stability and maturity indices. *Bioresource Technology*, *101*(15), 5952-5960. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biortech.2010.02.103

[27] Insam, H., & de Bertoldi, M. (2007). Microbiology of the composting process. In L. F. Diaz, M. de Bertoldi, W. Bidlingmaier, & E. Stentiford (Eds.), *Waste Management Series* (Vol. 8, pp. 25-48). Elsevier. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1478-7482(07)80006-6

[28] Ghosh, S., & Aich, A. (2018). Protected cultivation in India: Challenges and strategies. In A. K. Misra & P. Santosh (Eds.), *Smart Agriculture* (pp. 305-324). Springer, Singapore. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-10-7714-1_17

[29] Jain, M. S., Jambhulkar, R., & Kalamdhad, A. S. (2018). Biochar amendment for batch composting of nitrogen rich organic waste: Effect on degradation kinetics, composting physics and nutritional properties. *Bioresource Technology*, *253*, 204-213. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biortech.2018.01.038

[30] Hiloidhari, M., Das, D., & Baruah, D. C. (2014). Bioenergy potential from crop residue biomass in India. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, *32*, 504-512. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rser.2014.01.025

[31] Lohan, S. K., Dixit, J., Kumar, R., Pandey, Y., Khan, J., & Ishaq, M. (2015). Biogas: A boon for sustainable energy development in India. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, *51*, 1132-1142. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rser.2015.07.032

[32] Rao, P. V., Baral, S. S., Dey, R., & Mutnuri, S. (2010). Biogas generation potential by anaerobic digestion for sustainable energy development in India. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, *14*(7), 2086-2094. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rser.2010.03.031

[33] Rathod, V., Bhale, P. V., & Mehta, H. (2020). Biogas generation through anaerobic digestion of organic wastes. In A. A. Rastegari, A. N. Yadav, & A. Gupta (Eds.), *Prospects of Renewable Bioprocessing in Future Energy Systems* (pp. 395-408). Springer, Cham. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-14463-0_16

[34] Venkatesan, G., & Murali, S. (2016). Effective utilization of agro waste for the production of biomanure and its impact on growth and yield attributes of *Abelmoschus esculentus*. *Journal of Environmental Science and Technology*, *9*(4), 300-308. https://doi.org/10.3923/jest.2016.300.308

[35] Purohit, P., & Chaturvedi, V. (2018). Biomass pellets for power generation in India: A techno-economic evaluation. *Environmental Science and Pollution Research*, *25*(29), 29614-29632. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11356-018-2960-8

[36] Smetana, S., Palanisamy, M., Mathys, A., & Heinz, V. (2016). Sustainability of insect use for feed and food: Life cycle assessment perspective. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, *137*, 741-751. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2016.07.148

[37] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big data in smart farming – A review. *Agricultural Systems*, *153*, 69-80. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.agsy.2017.01.023

[38] Basso, B., & Antle, J. (2020). Digital agriculture to design sustainable agricultural systems. *Nature Sustainability*, *3*(4), 254-256. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41893-020-0510-0

[39] Sarkar, B., Omair, M., & Choi, S. B. (2020). A multi-objective optimization model for energy-efficient and sustainable supply chain network. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, *255*, 120473. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2020.120473

[40] Talaviya, T., Shah, D., Patel, N., Yagnik, H., & Shah, M. (2020). Implementation of artificial intelligence in agriculture for optimisation of irrigation and application of pesticides and herbicides. *Artificial Intelligence in Agriculture*, *4*, 58-73. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aiia.2020.04.002
[41] Kamilaris, A., Kartakoullis, A., & Prenafeta-Boldú, F. X. (2017). A review on the practice of big data analysis in agriculture. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, *143*, 23-37. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.compag.2017.09.037
[42] Weiss, M., Jacob, F., & Duveiller, G. (2020). Remote sensing for agricultural applications: A meta-review. *Remote Sensing of Environment*, *236*, 111402. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rse.2019.111402
[43] Hiloidhari, M., & Baruah, D. C. (2011). Rice straw residue biomass potential for decentralized electricity generation: A GIS based study in Lakhimpur district of Assam, India. *Energy for Sustainable Development*, *15*(3), 214-222. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.esd.2011.05.004
[44] Saberi, S., Kouhizadeh, M., Sarkis, J., & Shen, L. (2019). Blockchain technology and its relationships to sustainable supply chain management. *International Journal of Production Research*, *57*(7), 2117-2135. https://doi.org/10.1080/00207543.2018.1533261
[45] Paul, S., Dutta, A., Defersha, F., & Dubey, B. (2020). Municipal food waste to biomethane and biofertilizer: A circular economy concept. *Waste Management*, *113*, 287-296. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wasman.2020.05.036
[46] Sadhukhan, J., Dugmore, T. I., Matharu, A., Martinez-Hernandez, E., Aburto, J., Rahman, P. K., & Lynch, J. (2020). Perspectives on "game changer" global challenges for sustainable 21st century: Plant-based diet, unavoidable food waste biorefining, and circular economy. *Sustainability*, *12*(5), 1976. https://doi.org/10.3390/su12051976
[47] Varelas, V. (2019). Food wastes as a potential new source for edible insect mass production for food and feed: A review. *Fermentation*, *5*(3), 81. https://doi.org/10.3390/fermentation5030081
[48] Abdullah, N., Alshemary, A., & Eisa, Y. (2019). Agricultural waste materials as adsorbents for heavy metal removal. *Advances in Environmental Research*, *8*(1), 1-21. https://doi.org/10.12989/aer.2019.8.1.001
[49] Mao, C., Feng, Y., Wang, X., & Ren, G. (2015). Review on research achievements of biogas from anaerobic digestion. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, *45*, 540-555. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rser.2015.02.032
[50] Melnyk, S. A., Sroufe, R. P., & Calantone, R. (2003). Assessing the impact of environmental management systems on corporate and environmental performance. *Journal of Operations Management*, *21*(3), 329-351. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0272-6963(02)00109-2
[51] Guerrero, L. A., Maas, G., & Hogland, W. (2013). Solid waste management challenges for cities in developing countries. *Waste Management*, *33*(1), 220-232. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wasman.2012.09.008
[52] Yadav, P., & Samadder, S. R. (2018). A critical review of the life cycle assessment studies on solid waste management in Asian countries. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, *185*, 492-515. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2018.02.298
[53] Rajendran, K., Aslanzadeh, S., & Taherzadeh, M. J. (2012). Household biogas digesters - A review. *Energies*, *5*(8), 2911-2942. https://doi.org/10.3390/en5082911
[54] Slorach, P. C., Jeswani, H. K., Cuéllar-Franca, R., & Azapagic, A. (2019). Environmental and economic implications of recovering resources from food waste in a

circular economy. *Science of The Total Environment*, *693*, 133516. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2019.07.322

[55] Guo, H., Zhao, Y., Damgaard, A., Wang, Q., Lu, W., Wang, H., & Christensen, T. H. (2015). Material flow analysis of alternative biorefinery systems for managing Chinese food waste. *Resources, Conservation and Recycling*, *99*, 1-9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.resconrec.2015.03.011

[56] Braguglia, C. M., Gallipoli, A., Gianico, A., & Pagliaccia, P. (2018). Anaerobic bioconversion of food waste into energy: A critical review. *Bioresource Technology*, *248*, 37-56. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biortech.2017.06.145

[57] Sharma, B., Vaish, B., Srivastava, V., Singh, S., Singh, P., & Singh, R. P. (2018). An insight to atmospheric pollution-improper waste management and climate change nexus. In M. Oves, M. Zain Khan, & I. Ismail (Eds.), *Modern Age Environmental Problems and their Remediation* (pp. 23-47). Springer, Cham. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-64501-8_2

CHAPTER - 13

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Food Engineering for Enhanced Crop Production

[1]Chandani J. Popalia And [2]Arjun R. Parmar

[1]*Assistant Professor, College Of Food Technology, Sardarkrushinagar*

[2]*Dantiwada Agricultural University, Sardarkrushinagar, Gujarat, India..*

Corresponding Author

[1]Chandani J. Popalia

Abstract

Food engineering plays a vital role in enhancing crop production through the development and application of advanced technologies and techniques. This chapter explores the global context of food engineering, with a focus on Asia and India, and discusses how it is being leveraged to increase crop yields, improve crop quality, and promote sustainable agricultural practices. Key areas covered include precision agriculture, controlled environment agriculture, genetic engineering, and post-harvest technologies. The chapter highlights the importance of an interdisciplinary approach that combines expertise from fields such as plant science, engineering, computer science, and data analytics. It also discusses challenges and opportunities in implementing food engineering solutions, particularly in developing countries. Case studies from different regions illustrate successful applications of food engineering in boosting crop production. The chapter concludes by emphasizing the need for continued research, innovation, and knowledge-sharing to harness the full potential of food engineering in meeting the growing global demand for food while ensuring environmental sustainability.

Keywords: Food Engineering, Crop Production, Precision Agriculture, Controlled Environment Agriculture, Genetic Engineering, Post-Harvest Technology, Sustainable Agriculture

Food engineering is an interdisciplinary field that applies principles and techniques from various engineering disciplines, such as mechanical, chemical, and biological engineering, to the production, processing, and distribution of food [1]. It plays a crucial role in addressing the challenges faced by the global agricultural sector, including the need to increase crop yields, improve crop quality, reduce environmental impact, and adapt to climate change [2].

The world population is projected to reach 9.7 billion by 2050, necessitating a significant increase in food production to meet the growing demand [3]. At the same time, agriculture is facing numerous challenges, such as limited arable land, water scarcity, soil degradation, and the impacts of climate change [4]. Food engineering offers innovative solutions to these challenges by developing and implementing technologies and practices that enhance crop production while promoting sustainability.

This chapter focuses on the application of food engineering in enhancing crop production, with a particular emphasis on the global context, Asia, and India. It explores various aspects of food engineering, including precision agriculture, controlled environment agriculture, genetic engineering, and post-harvest technologies. The chapter also discusses the challenges and opportunities in implementing food engineering solutions and presents case studies highlighting successful applications in different regions.

2. Precision Agriculture

Precision agriculture is an approach that uses advanced technologies to optimize crop production by managing variability within fields [5]. It involves the collection, analysis, and application of data on soil characteristics, weather conditions, crop growth, and other relevant factors to inform management decisions [6]. Food engineering plays a pivotal role in the development and implementation of precision agriculture technologies.

2.1 Remote Sensing and Geographic Information Systems (GIS)

Remote sensing and GIS are essential tools in precision agriculture. Remote sensing involves the use of sensors on satellites, drones, or aircraft to gather data on crop health, soil moisture, and other parameters [7]. GIS enables the mapping and analysis of this data to create detailed spatial information that can guide precision management practices [8].

Table 1: Examples of remote sensing techniques used in precision agriculture

Technique	Description	Applications
Multispectral imaging	Captures data in multiple spectral bands	Crop health monitoring, yield estimation
Hyperspectral imaging	Captures data in hundreds of narrow spectral bands	Nutrient deficiency detection, disease detection
Thermal imaging	Measures surface temperature	Water stress detection, irrigation management
Synthetic Aperture Radar (SAR)	Uses radar waves to penetrate clouds and vegetation	Soil moisture monitoring, crop biomass estimation

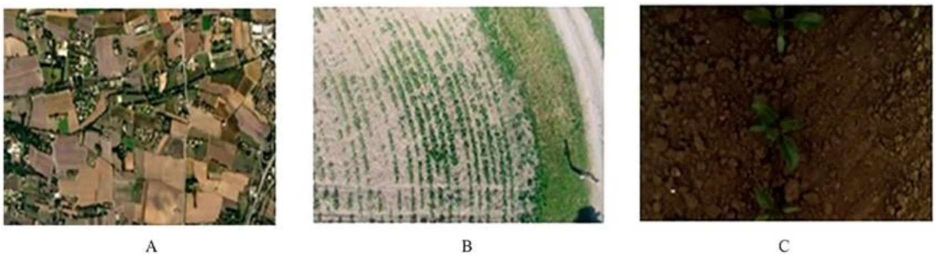


Figure 1: Example of a multispectral satellite image used in precision agriculture, showing variations in crop health within a field.

2.2 Variable Rate Technology (VRT)

VRT enables the precise application of inputs, such as fertilizers, pesticides, and irrigation water, based on the specific needs of different areas within a field [9]. By optimizing input use, VRT helps to increase crop yields, reduce costs, and minimize environmental impact [10].

2.3 Yield Mapping and Analysis

Yield mapping involves the collection of georeferenced crop yield data during harvesting using sensors mounted on combines or harvesters [11]. This data is then analyzed to create yield maps that show the spatial variability of crop yields within a field [12]. Yield maps can be used to identify areas of high and low productivity, diagnose yield-limiting factors, and guide future management decisions [13].

Table 2: Examples of VRT equipment used in precision agriculture

Equipment	Description	Applications
Variable rate spreaders	Apply fertilizers at varying rates based on soil nutrient maps	Site-specific nutrient management
Variable rate sprayers	Apply pesticides at varying rates based on crop health data	Targeted pest control
Variable rate irrigation systems	Apply water at varying rates based on soil moisture data	Precision irrigation management

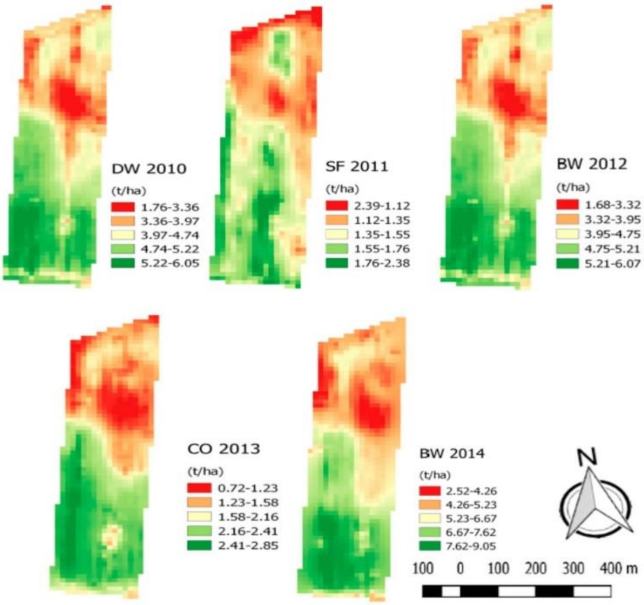


Figure 2: Example of a yield map showing the spatial variability of crop yields within a field.

3. Controlled Environment Agriculture

Controlled environment agriculture (CEA) involves the production of crops in enclosed structures, such as greenhouses or indoor vertical farms, where environmental conditions can be precisely controlled [14]. CEA enables year-round crop production, reduces the risk of crop failures due to adverse weather conditions, and allows for the efficient use of resources [15].

3.1 Greenhouse Technology Greenhouses are structures that allow for the cultivation of crops in a controlled environment, protecting them from external factors such as extreme temperatures, wind, and pests [16]. Modern greenhouses incorporate advanced technologies, such as climate control systems, hydroponics, and LED lighting, to optimize crop growth and quality [17].

Table 3: Examples of technologies used in modern greenhouses

Technology	Description	Applications
Climate control systems	Regulate temperature, humidity, and CO2 levels	Maintaining optimal growing conditions
Hydroponics	Growing plants in nutrient solutions without soil	Efficient use of water and nutrients
LED lighting	Provides optimal light spectrum and intensity for plant growth	Enabling year-round production, reducing energy costs
Sensors and automation	Monitor and control environmental conditions and crop growth	Optimizing resource use, reducing labor requirements

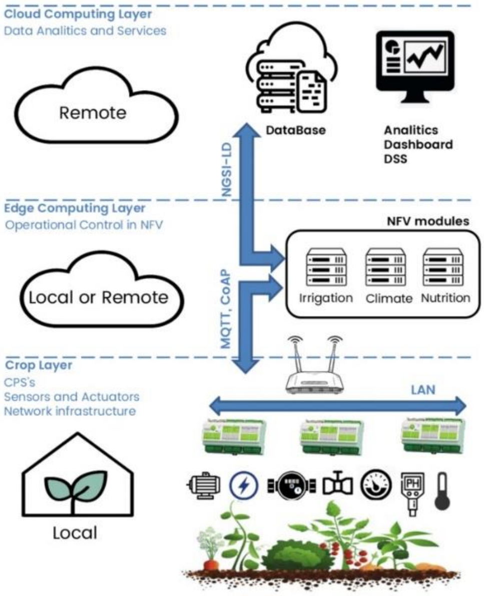


Figure 3: Example of a modern greenhouse with advanced climate control and hydroponic systems.

3.2 Indoor Vertical Farming Indoor vertical farming involves the production of crops in stacked layers within a controlled environment, often using artificial lighting and hydroponic or aeroponic systems [18]. This approach maximizes space utilization, enables year-round production, and reduces water and pesticide use [19].

Table 4: Advantages and challenges of indoor vertical farming

Advantages	Challenges
High crop yields per unit area	High initial investment costs
Reduced water and pesticide use	High energy requirements for lighting and climate control
Year-round production	Limited crop diversity (primarily leafy greens and herbs)
Proximity to urban centers	Requires specialized skills and knowledge

Figure 4: Example of an indoor vertical farm with stacked growing layers and artificial lighting.

4. Genetic Engineering

Genetic engineering involves the modification of an organism's genetic material to introduce desired traits or characteristics [20]. In the context of crop production, genetic engineering is used to develop crops with improved yield, quality, resistance to pests and diseases, and tolerance to environmental stresses [21].

4.1 Genetically Modified (GM) Crops GM crops are plants whose genetic material has been modified using genetic engineering techniques, such as the insertion of genes from other species [22]. Common traits introduced into GM crops include herbicide tolerance, insect resistance, and enhanced nutritional content [23].

Table 5: Examples of GM crops and their traits

Crop	**Trait**	**Benefit**
Bt cotton	Insect resistance	Reduced pesticide use, increased yield
Roundup Ready soybean	Herbicide tolerance	Simplified weed control, reduced tillage
Golden Rice	Enhanced vitamin A content	Addressing vitamin A deficiency in developing countries
Drought-tolerant maize	Improved drought tolerance	Maintaining yields under water-stressed conditions

4.2 Genome Editing Techniques Genome editing techniques, such as CRISPR-Cas9, allow for precise and targeted modifications of an organism's genetic material [24]. These techniques are being used to develop crops with improved traits, such as disease resistance, enhanced nutritional content, and increased yield [25].

Table 6: Comparison of genetic engineering and genome editing techniques

Aspect	**Genetic Engineering**	**Genome Editing**
Approach	Insertion of foreign genes	Precise modification of existing genes
Specificity	Low (random insertion)	High (targeted modification)
Regulatory status	Regulated as GM organisms	Varies by country and technique
Public perception	Controversial	Generally more accepted than GM

Figure 5: Schematic representation of the CRISPR-Cas9 genome editing technique, showing the targeted modification of a specific gene. [Image: 5-8 words describing the figure]

5. Post-Harvest Technologies

Post-harvest technologies are essential for maintaining the quality and safety of crops after harvesting and during storage, processing, and distribution [26]. Food engineering plays a crucial role in developing and implementing post-harvest technologies that reduce food losses, extend shelf life, and ensure food safety [27].

5.1 Storage and Packaging Proper storage and packaging are critical for maintaining the quality and safety of crops post-harvest. Food engineers develop and optimize storage facilities, such as controlled atmosphere storage, and packaging materials that extend shelf life and reduce spoilage [28].

Table 7: Examples of storage and packaging technologies

Technology	**Description**	**Applications**
Controlled atmosphere storage	Regulates gas composition (oxygen, carbon dioxide) to slow down ripening and spoilage	Extending shelf life of fruits and vegetables
Modified atmosphere packaging	Uses packaging materials with specific gas permeability to create optimal gas composition	Extending shelf life of fresh produce
Vacuum packaging	Removes air from the package to reduce oxidation and microbial growth	Extending shelf life of dry goods and processed foods
Edible coatings	Thin layers of edible materials applied to the surface of produce	Reducing moisture loss, improving appearance, extending shelf life

5.2 Non-Destructive Quality Assessment Non-destructive quality assessment techniques enable the evaluation of crop quality without damaging the produce [29]. These techniques use various sensors and imaging technologies to detect internal and external quality attributes, such as firmness, sugar content, and defects [30].

Table 8: Examples of non-destructive quality assessment techniques

Technique	**Description**	**Applications**
Near-infrared spectroscopy	Measures the absorption of near-infrared light by the produce	Determining sugar content, dry matter, and other internal quality attributes
Hyperspectral imaging	Captures images in multiple spectral bands	Detecting defects, bruises, and foreign objects
Acoustic impulse response	Measures the response of the produce to a mechanical impulse	Determining firmness and texture
X-ray imaging	Uses X-rays to create images of the internal structure of the produce	Detecting internal defects and foreign objects

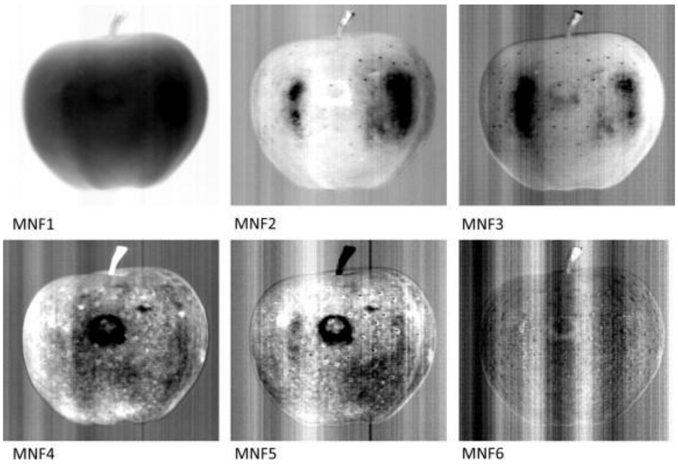


Figure 6: Example of a hyperspectral image of an apple, showing the detection of a bruise on the surface.

6. Challenges and Opportunities

Implementing food engineering solutions for enhanced crop production presents both challenges and opportunities, particularly in developing countries like India.

6.1 Challenges

- Limited access to advanced technologies and equipment due to high costs and lack of infrastructure [31]
- Inadequate knowledge and skills among farmers and extension workers to adopt and implement food engineering solutions [32]
- Fragmented land holdings and small farm sizes, which hinder the adoption of precision agriculture technologies [33]
- Lack of reliable data and information systems to support decision-making in crop production [34]
- Inadequate policies and regulations to promote the adoption of food engineering technologies [35]

6.2 Opportunities

- Growing demand for food due to population growth and urbanization, creating a need for enhanced crop production [36]

- Increasing awareness among farmers and policymakers about the benefits of food engineering technologies [37]
- Government initiatives and support for the adoption of modern agricultural practices and technologies [38]
- Collaborations between academia, industry, and government to develop and disseminate food engineering solutions [39]
- Potential for export of high-value crops produced using advanced food engineering technologies [40]

Table 9: Examples of government initiatives supporting food engineering in India

Initiative	**Description**	**Impact**
National Agricultural Innovation Project (NAIP)	Funded research and development projects on precision agriculture, protected cultivation, and post-harvest technologies	Developed and disseminated innovative technologies to farmers
Mission for Integrated Development of Horticulture (MIDH)	Provides subsidies and technical support for the adoption of protected cultivation and precision farming technologies	Increased area under protected cultivation and improved crop yields and quality
National e-Governance Plan in Agriculture (NeGP-A)	Developing ICT infrastructure and services for agriculture, including GIS-based soil health maps and advisories	Improved access to information and decision-support tools for farmers

7. Case Studies

The following case studies illustrate successful applications of food engineering in enhancing crop production in different regions.

7.1 Precision Agriculture for Sugarcane in Brazil Brazil is the world's largest sugarcane producer, and the adoption of precision agriculture technologies has significantly increased sugarcane yields and reduced production costs [41]. A study conducted in São Paulo state found that the use of variable rate fertilization based on soil maps increased sugarcane yields by 12% and reduced fertilizer costs by 30% compared to conventional uniform application [42].

Table 10: Precision agriculture technologies adopted in Brazilian sugarcane production

Technology	Adoption Rate
GPS guidance systems	70%
Variable rate fertilization	60%
Yield mapping	50%
Remote sensing	40%

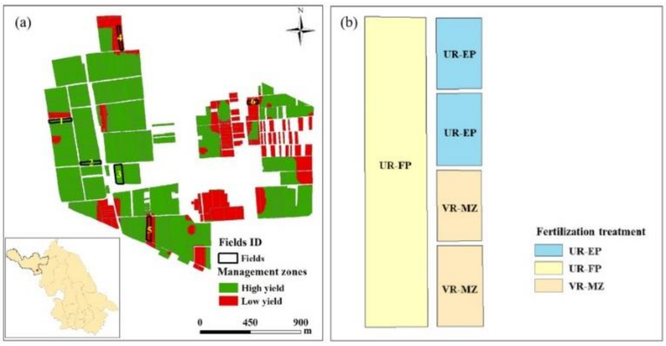


Figure 7: Example of a variable rate fertilization map for a sugarcane field in Brazil, showing the site-specific application rates based on soil fertility.

7.2 Greenhouse Technology for Tomato Production in the Netherlands

The Netherlands is a global leader in greenhouse horticulture, with tomatoes being one of the main crops produced [43]. Dutch greenhouses are highly advanced, incorporating technologies such as climate control, hydroponics, and LED lighting to maximize crop yields and quality [44].

Table 11: Key features of Dutch greenhouse technology for tomato production

Feature	Description	Benefit
Climate control	Precise regulation of temperature, humidity, and CO2 levels	Optimal growing conditions, year-round production
Hydroponics	Growing plants in nutrient solutions without soil	Efficient use of water and nutrients, higher yields
LED lighting	Provides optimal light spectrum and intensity for plant growth	Increased yields, reduced energy costs
Integrated pest management	Biological control of pests using natural enemies	Reduced pesticide use, improved crop quality

7.3 Genetic Engineering for Bt Cotton in India

India is the world's largest producer of cotton, and the adoption of genetically engineered Bt cotton has significantly increased cotton yields and reduced pesticide use [45]. Bt cotton contains a gene from the bacterium *Bacillus thuringiensis* that confers resistance to bollworm, a major cotton pest [46].

Table 12: Impact of Bt cotton adoption in India

Parameter	Before Bt cotton (2002)	After Bt cotton (2018)
Area under Bt cotton	0%	95%
Cotton yield	302 kg/ha	501 kg/ha
Pesticide use	46% of total pesticide use	21% of total pesticide use
Production	13.6 million bales	34.9 million bales

Conclusion

Food engineering plays a vital role in enhancing crop production through the development and application of advanced technologies and techniques. Precision agriculture, controlled environment agriculture, genetic engineering, and post-harvest technologies are key areas where food engineering is making a significant impact on increasing crop yields, improving crop quality, and promoting sustainable agricultural practices. However, the adoption of food engineering solutions faces challenges, particularly in developing countries like India, due to factors such as limited access to advanced technologies, inadequate knowledge and skills, and fragmented land holdings. At the same time, there are opportunities for growth and development, driven by the increasing demand for food, growing awareness about the benefits of food engineering technologies, and government initiatives supporting the adoption of modern agricultural practices.

Successful case studies from different regions demonstrate the potential of food engineering in enhancing crop production. Brazil's adoption of precision agriculture technologies in sugarcane production, the Netherlands' advanced greenhouse technology for tomato cultivation, and India's success with genetically engineered Bt cotton are examples of how food engineering can make a significant impact on crop yields, quality, and sustainability..

Future Outlook The future of food engineering in crop production is likely to be shaped by the following trends and developments:

9.1 Integration of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Machine Learning (ML)

AI and ML techniques will play an increasingly important role in food engineering, enabling the analysis of large volumes of data from various sources, such as remote sensing, yield maps, and soil sensors [47]. These techniques can help optimize crop management decisions, predict crop yields, and detect crop stress or disease early [48].

Table 13: Examples of AI and ML applications in food engineering for crop production

Application	**Description**	**Benefit**
Yield prediction	Using machine learning algorithms to predict crop yields based on weather, soil, and management data	Improved crop planning and resource allocation
Disease detection	Using deep learning algorithms to detect crop diseases from images or sensor data	Early detection and treatment of diseases, reduced crop losses
Precision irrigation	Using reinforcement learning algorithms to optimize irrigation scheduling based on soil moisture and weather data	Improved water use efficiency, reduced water stress

9.2 Development of Smart Sensors and Internet of Things (IoT)

Smart sensors and IoT technologies will enable real-time monitoring and control of crop growth and environmental conditions [49]. These technologies can provide farmers with actionable insights and decision-support tools to optimize crop management practices [50].

9.3 Advancement of Genome Editing Techniques: Genome editing techniques, such as CRISPR-Cas9, will continue to advance, enabling more precise and efficient modification of crop genomes [51]. These advancements will accelerate the development of crops with improved traits, such as higher yields, better nutritional content, and increased resilience to biotic and abiotic stresses [52].

In conclusion, food engineering will continue to play a critical role in enhancing crop production and meeting the growing global demand for food. The integration of advanced technologies, such as AI, ML, smart sensors, IoT, and genome editing, will drive the development of innovative solutions that can improve crop yields, quality, and sustainability. However, the successful implementation of these solutions will require collaboration, knowledge-sharing, and capacity-building across the global agricultural sector. By harnessing the power of food engineering, we can work towards a future where everyone has access to sufficient, safe, and nutritious food, produced in a sustainable and resilient manner.

Table 14: Examples of smart sensors and IoT applications in food engineering for crop production

Application	**Description**	**Benefit**
Soil moisture sensors	Wireless sensors that measure soil moisture levels in real-time	Improved irrigation scheduling, reduced water use
Nutrient sensors	Sensors that measure nutrient levels in soil or plant tissue	Optimized fertilizer application, reduced nutrient waste
Environmental sensors	Sensors that measure temperature, humidity, and light levels in greenhouses or fields	Improved climate control, enhanced crop growth
Precision livestock farming	Using sensors and IoT to monitor animal health, behavior, and productivity	Improved animal welfare, increased production efficiency

Table 15: Examples of potential applications of genome editing in food engineering for crop production

Application	**Description**	**Benefit**
Drought tolerance	Editing genes involved in drought response pathways	Improved crop performance under water-limited conditions
Disease resistance	Editing genes that confer resistance to specific pathogens	Reduced crop losses due to diseases, reduced pesticide use
Nutrient content	Editing genes that regulate the accumulation of essential nutrients in edible parts	Improved nutritional quality of crops, enhanced human health
Herbicide tolerance	Editing genes that confer tolerance to specific herbicides	Simplified weed control, reduced herbicide use

References

[1] Barbosa-Cánovas, G. V., Fontana, A. J., Schmidt, S. J., & Labuza, T. P. (Eds.). (2008). Water activity in foods: fundamentals and applications. John Wiley & Sons.

[2] Gebbers, R., & Adamchuk, V. I. (2010). Precision agriculture and food security. Science, 327(5967), 828-831.

[3] United Nations, Department of Economic and Social Affairs, Population Division. (2019). World Population Prospects 2019: Highlights. United Nations.
[4] Godfray, H. C. J., Beddington, J. R., Crute, I. R., Haddad, L., Lawrence, D., Muir, J. F., ... & Toulmin, C. (2010). Food security: the challenge of feeding 9 billion people. Science, 327(5967), 812-818.
[5] Bongiovanni, R., & Lowenberg-DeBoer, J. (2004). Precision agriculture and sustainability. Precision Agriculture, 5(4), 359-387.
[6] Mulla, D. J. (2013). Twenty five years of remote sensing in precision agriculture: Key advances and remaining knowledge gaps. Biosystems Engineering, 114(4), 358-371.
[7] Mulla, D. J., & Miao, Y. (2016). Precision farming. In B. Thomas, B. G. Murray, & D. J. Murphy (Eds.), Encyclopedia of Applied Plant Sciences (2nd ed., pp. 162-167). Academic Press.
[8] Zhang, N., Wang, M., & Wang, N. (2002). Precision agriculture—a worldwide overview. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 36(2-3), 113-132.
[9] Grisso, R. D., Alley, M. M., Holshouser, D. L., & Thomason, W. E. (2005). Precision farming tools: soil electrical conductivity. Virginia Cooperative Extension.
[10] Haboudane, D., Miller, J. R., Pattey, E., Zarco-Tejada, P. J., & Strachan, I. B. (2004). Hyperspectral vegetation indices and novel algorithms for predicting green LAI of crop canopies: Modeling and validation in the context of precision agriculture. Remote Sensing of Environment, 90(3), 337-352.
[11] Adamchuk, V. I., Hummel, J. W., Morgan, M. T., & Upadhyaya, S. K. (2004). On-the-go soil sensors for precision agriculture. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 44(1), 71-91.
[12] Dobermann, A., Blackmore, S., Cook, S. E., & Adamchuk, V. I. (2004). Precision farming: challenges and future directions. In Proceedings of the 4th International Crop Science Congress (Vol. 26).
[13] Stafford, J. V. (2000). Implementing precision agriculture in the 21st century. Journal of Agricultural Engineering Research, 76(3), 267-275.
[14] Shamshiri, R. R., Kalantari, F., Ting, K. C., Thorp, K. R., Hameed, I. A., Weltzien, C., ... & Shad, Z. M. (2018). Advances in greenhouse automation and controlled environment agriculture: A transition to plant factories and urban agriculture. International Journal of Agricultural and Biological Engineering, 11(1), 1-22.
[15] Benke, K., & Tomkins, B. (2017). Future food-production systems: vertical farming and controlled-environment agriculture. Sustainability: Science, Practice and Policy, 13(1), 13-26.
[16] Gruda, N., Bisbis, M., & Tanny, J. (2019). Impacts of protected vegetable cultivation on climate change and adaptation strategies for cleaner production–a review. Journal of Cleaner Production, 225, 324-339.
[17] Gruda, N., Bisbis, M., & Tanny, J. (2019). Influence of climate change on protected cultivation: impacts and sustainable adaptation strategies—a review. Journal of Cleaner Production, 225, 481-495.
[18] Despommier, D. (2010). The vertical farm: feeding the world in the 21st century. Macmillan.
[19] Al-Kodmany, K. (2018). The vertical farm: A review of developments and implications for the vertical city. Buildings, 8(2), 24.
[20] Lemaux, P. G. (2008). Genetically engineered plants and foods: a scientist's analysis of the issues (Part I). Annual Review of Plant Biology, 59, 771-812.

[21] Qaim, M. (2009). The economics of genetically modified crops. Annual Review of Resource Economics, 1(1), 665-694.
[22] James, C. (2015). 20th anniversary (1996 to 2015) of the global commercialization of biotech crops and biotech crop highlights in 2015. ISAAA Brief, (51).
[23] Brookes, G., & Barfoot, P. (2018). Farm income and production impacts of using GM crop technology 1996–2016. GM Crops & Food, 9(2), 59-89.
[24] Gao, C. (2018). The future of CRISPR technologies in agriculture. Nature Reviews Molecular Cell Biology, 19(5), 275-276.
[25] Zhu, H., Li, C., & Gao, C. (2020). Applications of CRISPR–Cas in agriculture and plant biotechnology. Nature Reviews Molecular Cell Biology, 21(11), 661-677.
[26] Kader, A. A. (2004). Increasing food availability by reducing postharvest losses of fresh produce. In V International Postharvest Symposium 682 (pp. 2169-2176).
[27] Mahajan, P. V., Caleb, O. J., Singh, Z., Watkins, C. B., & Geyer, M. (2014). Postharvest treatments of fresh produce. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences, 372(2017), 20130309.
[28] Wilson, C. L., & Wisniewski, M. E. (1989). Biological control of postharvest diseases of fruits and vegetables: an emerging technology. Annual Review of Phytopathology, 27(1), 425-441.
[29] Abbott, J. A. (1999). Quality measurement of fruits and vegetables. Postharvest Biology and Technology, 15(3), 207-225.
[30] Wang, W., Li, C., Tollner, E. W., Rains, G. C., & Gitaitis, R. D. (2012). A liquid crystal tunable filter based shortwave infrared spectral imaging system: Design and integration. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 80, 126-134.
[31] Mondal, P., & Basu, M. (2009). Adoption of precision agriculture technologies in India and in some developing countries: Scope, present status and strategies. Progress in Natural Science, 19(6), 659-666.
[32] Lowenberg-DeBoer, J., & Erickson, B. (2019). Setting the record straight on precision agriculture adoption. Agronomy Journal, 111(4), 1552-1569.
[33] Thorp, K. R., & Bronson, K. F. (2013). A model-independent open-source geospatial tool for managing point-based environmental model simulations at multiple spatial locations. Environmental Modelling & Software, 50, 25-36.
[34] Walter, A., Finger, R., Huber, R., & Buchmann, N. (2017). Smart farming is key to developing sustainable agriculture. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 114(24), 6148-6150.
[35] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big data in smart farming–a review. Agricultural Systems, 153, 69-80.
[36] Alexandratos, N., & Bruinsma, J. (2012). World agriculture towards 2030/2050: the 2012 revision. FAO, Rome: ESA Working paper No. 12-03.
[37] Pierpaoli, E., Carli, G., Pignatti, E., & Canavari, M. (2013). Drivers of precision agriculture technologies adoption: a literature review. Procedia Technology, 8, 61-69.
[38] Mondal, P., Jain, M., DeFries, R. S., Galford, G. L., & Small, C. (2015). Sensitivity of crop cover to climate variability: Insights from two Indian agro-ecoregions. Journal of Environmental Management, 148, 21-30.
[39] Raj, R., Karmakar, S., Kumar, S., & Singh, D. K. (2020). Precision agriculture and food security in India: challenges and opportunities. In B. S. Maheshwari, & S. K. Chaudhary (Eds.), Sustainable Agriculture in the Era of Climate Change (pp. 221-249). Springer, Cham.

[40] Mittal, S., Gandhi, S., & Tripathi, G. (2010). Socio-economic impact of mobile phones on Indian agriculture. New Delhi: Indian Council for Research on International Economic Relations.

[41] Silva, C. B., de Moraes, M. A. F. D., & Molin, J. P. (2011). Adoption and use of precision agriculture technologies in the sugarcane industry of São Paulo state, Brazil. Precision Agriculture, 12(1), 67-81.

[42] Srbinovska, M., Gavrovski, C., Dimcev, V., Krkoleva, A., & Borozan, V. (2015). Environmental parameters monitoring in precision agriculture using wireless sensor networks. Journal of Cleaner Production, 88, 297-307.

[43] Heuvelink, E., & Kierkels, T. (2015). In greenhouses: plant physiology in greenhouses. Wageningen Academic Publishers.

[44] Marcelis, L. F. M., Heuvelink, E., & Goudriaan, J. (1998). Modelling biomass production and yield of horticultural crops: a review. Scientia Horticulturae, 74(1-2), 83-111.

[45] Choudhary, B., & Gaur, K. (2015). Biotech cotton in India, 2002 to 2014. ISAAA Series of Biotech Crop Profiles. ISAAA: Ithaca, NY.

[46] Kathage, J., & Qaim, M. (2012). Economic impacts and impact dynamics of Bt (Bacillus thuringiensis) cotton in India. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 109(29), 11652-11656.

[47] Liakos, K. G., Busato, P., Moshou, D., Pearson, S., & Bochtis, D. (2018). Machine learning in agriculture: A review. Sensors, 18(8), 2674.

[48] Kamilaris, A., Kartakoullis, A., & Prenafeta-Boldú, F. X. (2017). A review on the practice of big data analysis in agriculture. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 143, 23-37.

[49] Tzounis, A., Katsoulas, N., Bartzanas, T., & Kittas, C. (2017). Internet of Things in agriculture, recent advances and future challenges. Biosystems Engineering, 164, 31-48.

[50] Elijah, O., Rahman, T. A., Orikumhi, I., Leow, C. Y., & Hindia, M. N. (2018). An overview of Internet of Things (IoT) and data analytics in agriculture: Benefits and challenges. IEEE Internet of Things Journal, 5(5), 3758-3773.

[51] Voytas, D. F., & Gao, C. (2014). Precision genome engineering and agriculture: opportunities and regulatory challenges. PLoS Biology, 12 Edit(6), e1001877.

[52] Chen, K., Wang, Y., Zhang, R., Zhang, H., & Gao, C. (2019). CRISPR/Cas genome editing and precision plant breeding in agriculture. Annual Review of Plant Biology, 70, 667-697.

CHAPTER - 14

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Food Science And Technology

Niharika

Assistant professor, Department of Food Science and Nutrition,

KL College of Agriculture, Koneru Lakshmaiah Educational Foundation

Corresponding Author
Niharika
niharika.mudhigonda.23@gmail.com

Abstract

Protected agriculture, including techniques such as greenhouses, polytunnels, and vertical farming, has emerged as a key approach to enhancing food production and security in the face of climate change, population growth, and resource scarcity. This chapter explores the role of food science and technology in advancing protected agriculture worldwide, with a focus on Asia and India. Recent developments in controlled environment agriculture (CEA), hydroponics, aquaponics, and aeroponics are discussed, along with their potential to optimize crop yields, resource use efficiency, and product quality. The chapter also examines the application of precision agriculture technologies, such as sensors, automation, and data analytics, to protected cultivation systems. Case studies from various countries illustrate the benefits and challenges of integrating food science and technology into protected agriculture operations. In Asia, where population density and food demand are high, protected agriculture has gained significant traction, particularly in countries like China, Japan, and South Korea. India has also witnessed a surge in protected cultivation, driven by government initiatives, private sector investments, and the need to boost farmer incomes and resilience. However, the adoption of protected agriculture technologies remains uneven across the region, constrained by factors such as high initial costs, limited access to knowledge and skills, and infrastructure gaps. The chapter concludes by

outlining future research directions and policy recommendations to harness the full potential of food science and technology in protected agriculture, while ensuring social inclusion, environmental sustainability, and economic viability.

Keywords: Protected Agriculture, Food Science, Technology, Asia, India

Protected agriculture, also known as controlled environment agriculture (CEA), encompasses a range of techniques and technologies designed to optimize crop production under sheltered conditions [1]. By regulating factors such as temperature, humidity, light, and nutrient supply, protected agriculture systems aim to enhance yield, quality, and resource use efficiency, while reducing exposure to adverse weather events, pests, and diseases [2]. Food science and technology play a crucial role in advancing protected agriculture, by developing innovative solutions for crop nutrition, protection, and post-harvest management [3]..

2. Global Overview of Protected Agriculture

2.1. Extent and Distribution

Protected agriculture has witnessed significant growth worldwide in recent decades. As of 2020, the global area under protected cultivation was estimated at 3.2 million hectares, with a projected expansion to 4.3 million hectares by 2030 [4]. Asia is the largest contributor to this area, accounting for over 80% of the world's protected cultivation, followed by Europe, North America, and Africa [5]. Table 1 presents the regional distribution of protected agriculture area.

Table 1. Regional distribution of protected agriculture area (2020)

Region	Area (million ha)	Share (%)
Asia	2.62	81.9
Europe	0.32	10.0
North America	0.14	4.4
Africa	0.08	2.5
Latin America	0.04	1.2
World	3.20	100.0

Source: [5]

2.2. Types of Protected Cultivation Systems

Protected cultivation systems vary in their design, scale, and level of environmental control. The most common types include:

1. Greenhouses: Permanent structures covered with transparent or translucent materials, such as glass, plastic films, or polycarbonate sheets, to create a controlled environment for crop growth [6].
2. Polytunnels: Temporary or semi-permanent structures, typically made of metal or plastic frames covered with plastic films, used for season extension and crop protection [7].
3. Shade nets: Woven or knitted fabric structures that provide partial shading and ventilation for crops, while reducing heat stress and pest pressure [8].
4. Vertical farms: Indoor farming systems that stack multiple layers of crops vertically, using artificial lighting and hydroponic or aeroponic techniques to maximize space utilization and yield [9].

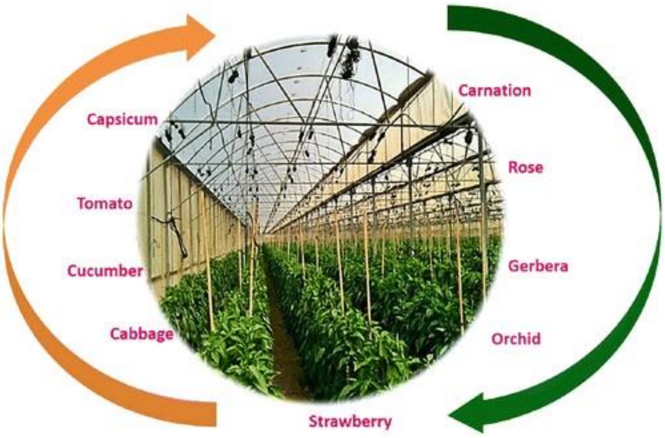


Figure 1 illustrates the global share of different protected cultivation systems.

3. Food Science and Technology Applications

3.1. Crop Nutrition and Fertigation

Advances in food science and technology have revolutionized nutrient management in protected agriculture. Hydroponic systems, which involve growing crops in nutrient-rich water without soil, have become increasingly popular due to their precision, efficiency, and environmental benefits [10]. Table

2 compares the yield and water use efficiency of hydroponic and conventional soil-based cultivation for selected crops.

Table 2. Yield and water use efficiency of hydroponic vs. soil-based cultivation

| Crop | Yield (t/ha) | Water Use Efficiency (kg/m³) |

	Hydroponic	**Soil-based**	**Hydroponic**	**Soil-based**
Tomato	350-500	80-120	35-50	8-12
Lettuce	70-100	20-30	70-100	20-30
Cucumber	200-300	50-80	40-60	10-16
Pepper	150-200	30-50	30-40	6-10
Strawberry	60-80	20-30	60-80	20-30

Source: [10]

Fertigation, the combined application of irrigation water and fertilizers, is another key technology in protected agriculture [11]. By delivering nutrients directly to the root zone in a controlled manner, fertigation optimizes nutrient uptake, reduces leaching losses, and improves crop quality. Table 3 presents the recommended fertigation rates for major greenhouse crops.

Table 3. Recommended fertigation rates for major greenhouse crops

Crop	**N (kg/ha)**	**P (kg/ha)**	**K (kg/ha)**
Tomato	200-300	50-100	300-500
Cucumber	150-250	40-80	200-400
Pepper	150-250	40-80	200-400
Eggplant	150-250	40-80	200-400
Lettuce	100-200	30-60	150-300

Source: [11]

3.2. Crop Protection and Integrated Pest Management

Protected agriculture systems, while reducing exposure to external pests and diseases, can still face significant crop protection challenges due to the conducive environment for pathogen growth and pest reproduction [12]. Integrated pest management (IPM) strategies, which combine biological, cultural, and chemical control methods, are widely adopted in protected cultivation to minimize crop losses and pesticide use [13]. Table 4 lists some common IPM practices in greenhouse production.

Table 4. Common IPM practices in greenhouse production

Practice	Description
Monitoring and scouting	Regular inspection of crops for early detection of pests
Sanitation and hygiene	Removal of infected plants, debris, and weed hosts
Biological control	Use of natural enemies (predators, parasitoids) to control pests
Biopesticides	Application of microbe-based pesticides (e.g., *Bacillus thuringiensis*)
Pheromone traps	Luring and trapping of adult pests using sex pheromones
Resistant cultivars	Selection of crop varieties with genetic resistance to pests
Environmental manipulation	Regulation of temperature, humidity, and light to suppress pests
Targeted pesticide application	Judicious use of pesticides based on monitoring and thresholds

Source: [13]

Food science and technology also contribute to the development of novel crop protection solutions, such as nanomaterials, biosensors, and smart delivery systems [14]. For example, chitosan nanoparticles have shown promising results in controlling fungal diseases in tomatoes and cucumbers grown under protected conditions [15].

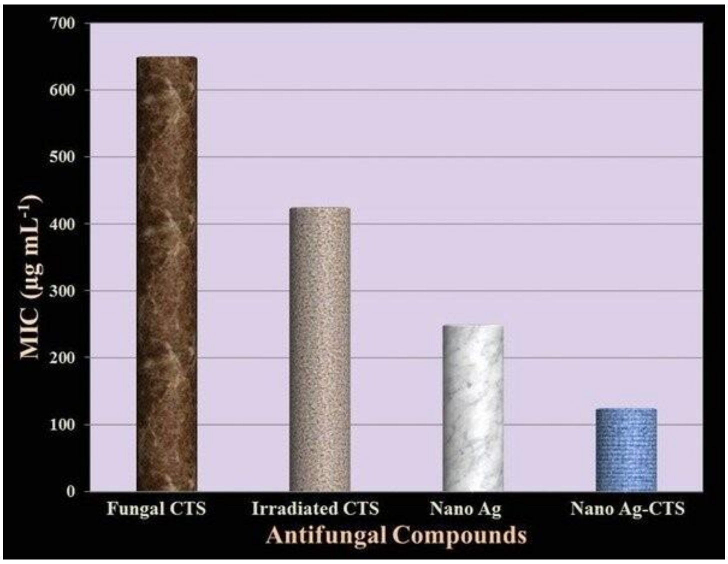


Figure 2. Antifungal activity of chitosan nanoparticles

3.3. Post-harvest Management and Quality Control

Effective post-harvest management is crucial for maintaining the quality, safety, and marketability of produce from protected agriculture systems. Food science and technology offer various solutions for preserving freshness, extending shelf life, and ensuring compliance with quality standards [16]. Modified atmosphere packaging (MAP), which involves altering the gas composition inside the package to slow down respiration and senescence, is widely used for greenhouse-grown fruits and vegetables [17]. Table 5 presents the recommended gas compositions for MAP of selected crops.

Table 5. Recommended gas compositions for MAP of selected crops

Crop	**O_2 (%)**	**CO_2 (%)**	**Temperature (°C)**
Tomato	3-5	3-5	10-12
Cucumber	3-5	0-5	10-12
Pepper	3-5	0-5	7-10
Eggplant	3-5	0-5	10-12
Lettuce	1-3	5-10	0-5

Source: [17]

Non-destructive quality assessment techniques, such as near-infrared spectroscopy (NIRS), hyperspectral imaging, and electronic nose, are increasingly applied in protected agriculture to monitor crop maturity, nutritional content, and defects [18]. These technologies enable rapid, objective, and non-invasive evaluation of produce quality, facilitating timely decision-making and reducing waste. Figure 3 illustrates the use of hyperspectral imaging for detecting bruises in greenhouse-grown tomatoes.

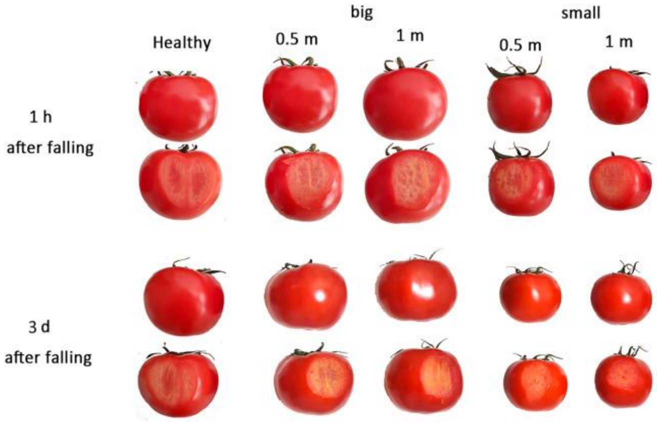


Figure 3. Hyperspectral imaging for bruise detection in greenhouse tomatoes

4. Protected Agriculture in Asia

4.1. Overview and Trends

Asia is the global leader in protected agriculture, with a long history of using simple shelters and low-cost structures to extend the growing season and protect crops from adverse weather [19]. In recent decades, the region has witnessed a rapid expansion and intensification of protected cultivation, driven by factors such as population growth, urbanization, rising incomes, and changing dietary preferences [20]. Table 6 presents the area under protected cultivation in selected Asian countries.

Table 6. Area under protected cultivation in selected Asian countries (2020)

Country	**Area (ha)**	**Share of global area (%)**
China	2,000,000	62.5
Japan	50,000	1.6
South Korea	40,000	1.3
India	30,000	0.9
Vietnam	10,000	0.3
Indonesia	5,000	0.2
Thailand	5,000	0.2
Malaysia	2,000	0.1
Philippines	2,000	0.1
Taiwan	2,000	0.1

Source: [20]

China dominates the Asian protected agriculture landscape, accounting for over 60% of the global area under protected cultivation [21]. The country has actively promoted the development of modern greenhouses, smart sensors, and automation technologies to enhance productivity and sustainability [22]. Japan and South Korea are also major players, with a focus on high-value crops, vertical farming, and plant factories [23]. Southeast Asian countries, such as Vietnam, Indonesia, and Thailand, are increasingly adopting protected cultivation to cope with climate variability and meet the growing demand for fresh produce [24].

4.2. Case Studies

4.2.1. China: Solar Greenhouses for Vegetable Production

Solar greenhouses, also known as Chinese-style greenhouses, are a low-cost and energy-efficient protected cultivation system widely used in northern China for vegetable production [25]. These passive solar structures capture and store solar energy during the day and release it at night, maintaining a favorable microclimate for crop growth even in cold winter months [26]. Table 7 compares the energy consumption and economic performance of solar greenhouses and conventional heated greenhouses in China.

Table 7. Energy consumption and economic performance of solar vs. heated greenhouses in China

Parameter	Solar Greenhouse	Heated Greenhouse
Energy consumption (MJ/m²/year)	100-200	1000-2000
Heating cost (CNY/m²/year)	0-5	50-100
Yield (kg/m²/year)	10-15	15-20
Revenue (CNY/m²/year)	100-150	150-200
Net profit (CNY/m²/year)	50-100	20-50

Source: [26]

Solar greenhouses have significantly lower energy consumption and heating costs compared to conventional heated greenhouses, while achieving comparable yields and higher net profits. This makes them an attractive option for small-scale farmers and regions with limited access to energy infrastructure.

Figure 4 shows a typical solar greenhouse used for vegetable production in China.

4.2.2. Japan: Plant Factories with Artificial Lighting

Japan is a pioneer in the development of plant factories with artificial lighting (PFALs), also known as vertical farms or indoor farms [27]. PFALs are highly controlled environments that use LED lights, hydroponic systems, and automation technologies to grow crops in stacked layers, maximizing space utilization and yield [28]. Table 8 presents the performance characteristics of a typical PFAL in Japan.

Table 8. Performance characteristics of a typical PFAL in Japan

Parameter	**Value**
Growing area (m^2)	1,000
Number of layers	10-20
Planting density ($plants/m^2$)	100-200
Yield ($kg/m^2/year$)	100-200
Energy consumption (kWh/kg)	5-10
Water use efficiency (kg/L)	20-30
Labor productivity (kg/person/day)	50-100

Source: [28]

PFALs offer several advantages over traditional protected cultivation systems, such as higher yields, shorter growth cycles, reduced water and pesticide use, and year-round production [29]. However, they also face challenges related to high energy costs, capital investments, and limited crop diversity [30]. In Japan, PFALs are primarily used for producing leafy greens, herbs, and high-value medicinal plants for the domestic market [31]. Figure 5 depicts the interior of a PFAL growing lettuce in Japan.

5. Protected Agriculture in India

5.1. Current Status and Potential

India has a vast potential for protected agriculture, given its diverse agro-climatic conditions, large agricultural workforce, and growing demand for high-quality horticultural produce [32]. However, the current area under protected cultivation in India is relatively small, estimated at around 30,000 hectares, or less than 1% of the global area [33]. Table 9 presents the state-wise distribution of protected cultivation area in India.

Figure 5. Interior of a PFAL growing lettuce in Japan

Maharashtra, Karnataka, Gujarat, and Himachal Pradesh are the leading states in protected cultivation, accounting for over 65% of the total area. These states have actively promoted polyhouse and greenhouse cultivation of high-value crops, such as flowers, vegetables, and fruit crops, through various government schemes and subsidies [34]. However, the adoption of protected agriculture technologies remains limited among smallholder farmers, due to high initial costs, lack of technical knowledge, and inadequate market linkages [35].

India has set an ambitious target of doubling the area under protected cultivation to 60,000 hectares by 2025, as part of its efforts to increase horticultural production, diversify cropping patterns, and enhance farmers' incomes [36]. The government has launched several initiatives, such as the National Horticulture Mission, the Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchai Yojana, and the Mission for Integrated Development of Horticulture, to support the expansion of protected agriculture infrastructure and capacity building [37].

5.2. Research and Development

Indian research institutions and universities have been actively engaged in developing and adapting protected agriculture technologies to suit local conditions and needs. Some key areas of research include:

1. Design and development of low-cost polyhouses and greenhouses using locally available materials and passive cooling techniques [38].
2. Optimization of nutrient management and fertigation schedules for major greenhouse crops, such as tomato, cucumber, and capsicum [39].
3. Evaluation of hydroponic and aquaponic systems for efficient water and nutrient use in protected cultivation [40].
4. Development of integrated pest and disease management strategies, including the use of biopesticides, natural enemies, and resistant cultivars [41].
5. Post-harvest management and value addition of greenhouse-grown produce, through techniques such as modified atmosphere packaging and minimal processing [42].

5.3. Challenges and Opportunities

Despite the vast potential and growing interest in protected agriculture, India faces several challenges in scaling up the adoption of these technologies. Some of the key challenges include:

1. High initial investment costs for setting up polyhouses, greenhouses, and other protected cultivation structures, which are often beyond the reach of small and marginal farmers [44].
2. Lack of access to credit, subsidies, and insurance products tailored to the specific needs and risks of protected agriculture [45].
3. Limited technical knowledge and skills among farmers and extension workers in managing greenhouse crops, leading to suboptimal yields and quality [46].
4. Inadequate post-harvest infrastructure, such as cold storage, grading, and packaging facilities, resulting in high losses and low market returns [47].
5. Fragmented and inefficient supply chains, with multiple intermediaries and lack of direct linkages between producers and consumers [48].

To address these challenges and realize the full potential of protected agriculture in India, several opportunities and strategies have been identified.

Table 9 Major research institutions and their focus areas in protected agriculture in India

Institution	Location	Focus Area
Indian Agricultural Research Institute	New Delhi	Greenhouse design, hydroponics, pest management
Indian Institute of Horticultural Research	Bengaluru	Crop improvement, protected cultivation technology
Central Institute of Post-Harvest Engineering and Technology	Ludhiana	Post-harvest management, value addition
National Research Centre for Grapes	Pune	Grape cultivation under protected conditions
Bidhan Chandra Krishi Viswavidyalaya	Nadia	Aquaponics, integrated farming systems
Tamil Nadu Agricultural University	Coimbatore	Polyhouse design, precision farming
Punjab Agricultural University	Ludhiana	Greenhouse irrigation, fertigation
Jawaharlal Nehru Krishi Vishwa Vidyalaya	Jabalpur	Insect-proof net houses, organic farming
University of Agricultural Sciences	Dharwad	Vertical farming, soilless cultivation
Sher-e-Kashmir University of Agricultural Sciences and Technology	Srinagar	Passive solar greenhouses, crop protection

Source: [43]

These include:

1. Promoting the development and dissemination of low-cost, locally adapted protected cultivation technologies, such as shade nets, insect-proof net houses, and passive solar greenhouses [49].
2. Strengthening the capacity of farmers, extension workers, and agri-entrepreneurs through training, demonstrations, and exposure visits on protected cultivation best practices [50].
3. Encouraging the formation of farmer producer organizations (FPOs) and cooperatives to enable collective action, bargaining power, and market access for small-scale greenhouse growers [51].

4. Developing innovative financing and risk management solutions, such as credit guarantee schemes, venture capital funds, and crop insurance products, to support the adoption of protected agriculture technologies [52].
5. Investing in post-harvest infrastructure and value chain development, including the establishment of pack houses, cold chains, and processing facilities, to reduce wastage and enhance the quality and value of greenhouse-grown produce [53].

Table 10. SWOT analysis of protected agriculture in India

Strengths	**Weaknesses**
Diverse agro-climatic conditions	High initial investment costs
Large agricultural workforce	Limited technical knowledge and skills
Growing demand for high-quality produce	Inadequate post-harvest infrastructure
Government support and subsidies	Fragmented and inefficient supply chains
Opportunities	**Threats**
Development of low-cost, locally adapted technologies	Climate change and weather extremes
Capacity building and skill development	Market volatility and price fluctuations
Formation of FPOs and cooperatives	Competition from imports and open-field cultivation
Innovative financing and risk management solutions	Pest and disease outbreaks
Post-harvest infrastructure and value chain development	Policy and regulatory uncertainties

Source: [54]

6. Conclusion

Food science and technology play a crucial role in advancing protected agriculture worldwide, by developing innovative solutions for crop nutrition, protection, and post-harvest management. Asia, led by China, Japan, and South Korea, has emerged as a major hub for protected cultivation, driven by the need to feed a growing population and meet the rising demand for high-quality horticultural produce. India, with its vast potential and diverse agro-climatic conditions, is gradually catching up, but faces several challenges in scaling up the adoption of protected agriculture technologies among smallholder farmers.

References

[1] Jensen, M. H. (2013). Controlled Environment Agriculture. In S. Kole (Ed.), *Sustainable Food Production* (pp. 1-33). New York: Springer.

[2] Shamshiri, R. R., Kalantari, F., Ting, K. C., Thorp, K. R., Hameed, I. A., Weltzien, C., ... & Shad, Z. M. (2018). Advances in greenhouse automation and controlled environment agriculture: A transition to plant factories and urban agriculture. *International Journal of Agricultural and Biological Engineering*, 11(1), 1-22.

[3] Gruda, N. (2019). Increasing sustainability of growing media constituents and stand-alone substrates in soilless culture systems. *Agronomy*, 9(6), 298.

[4] Kacira, M., & Sase, S. (2020). Current status and future prospects of protected cultivation in Asia and Africa. *Acta Horticulturae*, 1271, 1-8.

[5] International Society for Horticultural Science. (2020). *ISHS Protected Cultivation Report 2020*. Retrieved from https://www.ishs.org/protected-cultivation-report-2020

[6] Von Zabeltitz, C. (2011). *Integrated Greenhouse Systems for Mild Climates*. Berlin: Springer.

[7] Lamont, W. J. (2009). Overview of the use of high tunnels worldwide. *HortTechnology*, 19(1), 25-29.

[8] Shahak, Y. (2014). Photoselective netting: an overview of the concept, R&D and practical implementation in agriculture. *Acta Horticulturae*, 1015, 155-162.

[9] Benke, K., & Tomkins, B. (2017). Future food-production systems: vertical farming and controlled-environment agriculture. *Sustainability: Science, Practice and Policy*, 13(1), 13-26.

[10] Resh, H. M. (2013). *Hydroponic Food Production: A Definitive Guidebook for the Advanced Home Gardener and the Commercial Hydroponic Grower* (7th ed.). Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

[11] Savvas, D., & Gruda, N. (2018). Application of soilless culture technologies in the modern greenhouse industry-A review. *European Journal of Horticultural Science*, 83(5), 280-293.

[12] Gullino, M. L., Albajes, R., & van Lenteren, J. C. (2019). *Integrated Pest and Disease Management in Greenhouse Crops*. Cham: Springer.

[13] Pilkington, L. J., Messelink, G., van Lenteren, J. C., & Le Mottee, K. (2010). "Protected Biological Control"-Biological pest management in the greenhouse industry. *Biological Control*, 52(3), 216-220.

[14] Fraceto, L. F., Maruyama, C. R., Guilger, M., Mishra, S., Keswani, C., Singh, H. B., & de Lima, R. (2018). Trichoderma harzianum-based novel formulations: Potential applications for management of next-gen agricultural challenges. *Journal of Chemical Technology & Biotechnology*, 93(8), 2056-2063.

[15] Maluin, F. N., Hussein, M. Z., Yusof, N. A., Fakurazi, S., Idris, A. S., Hilmi, N. H. Z., & Daim, L. D. J. (2020). A review of chitosan nanoparticles as a drug delivery system for plant-based anti-inflammatory compounds. *Polymers*, 12(10), 2211.

[16] Kader, A. A. (2002). Postharvest technology of horticultural crops (Vol. 3311). University of California Agriculture and Natural Resources.

[17] Caleb, O. J., Mahajan, P. V., Al-Said, F. A. J., & Opara, U. L. (2013). Modified atmosphere packaging technology of fresh and fresh-cut produce and the microbial consequences-a review. *Food and Bioprocess Technology*, 6(2), 303-329.

[18] Nicolaï, B. M., Beullens, K., Bobelyn, E., Peirs, A., Saeys, W., Theron, K. I., & Lammertyn, J. (2007). Nondestructive measurement of fruit and vegetable quality by

means of NIR spectroscopy: A review. *Postharvest Biology and Technology*, 46(2), 99-118.

[19] Jiang, W. J., & Yu, H. J. (2009). Current situation and future development of protected horticulture in China. *Acta Horticulturae*, 807, 31-36.

[20] Karthikeyan, G., Singh, J., & Roy, S. D. (2018). Protected cultivation in Asia-Pacific region: Technology options for small holder farmers. In T. Sivasankar, D. Bhardwaj, & S. D. Roy (Eds.), *Technologies for Sustainable Agriculture* (pp. 375-388). New Delhi: Studium Press.

[21] Gao, L., Qu, M., Ren, H., Sui, X., Chen, Q., & Zhang, Z. (2010). Structure, function, application, and ecological benefit of single-slope, energy-efficient solar greenhouses in China. *HortTechnology*, 20(3), 626-631.

[22] Yang, Q., Wei, L., Ai, W., Li, M., & Liu, S. (2020). Application of Internet of Things technology in the development of intelligent greenhouse in China. *International Journal of Agricultural and Biological Engineering*, 13(1), 35-42.

[23] Kozai, T. (2013). Plant factory in Japan-current situation and perspectives. *Chronica Horticulturae*, 53(2), 8-11.

[24] Nguyen, H. Q., Kaneko, N., & Yoshiura, Y. (2017). Using electric energy for heating and lighting in greenhouse production in the Red River Delta region, Vietnam. *Journal of the Faculty of Agriculture, Kyushu University*, 62(1), 191-198.

[25] Tong, G., Christopher, D. M., Li, T., & Wang, T. (2013). Passive solar energy utilization: A review of cross-section building parameter selection for Chinese solar greenhouses. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, 26, 540-548.

[26] Zhang, X., Qiu, R., Wei, S., Wang, J., Qiu, J., Tian, Y., ... & Liang, S. (2020). Solar greenhouses with thermal energy storage systems for seasonal and temperature control. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 255, 120308.

[27] Kozai, T., Niu, G., & Takagaki, M. (Eds.). (2019). *Plant factory: an indoor vertical farming system for efficient quality food production*. Academic Press.

[28] Kozai, T. (2018). Smart Plant Factory: The Next Generation Indoor Vertical Farms (pp. 1-433). Springer Nature.

[29] Harper, A., Nickerson, J., & Barghout, M. (2020). Benefits of vertical farming. In T. Kozai, G. Niu, & M. Takagaki (Eds.), *Plant Factory: An Indoor Vertical Farming System for Efficient Quality Food Production* (pp. 43-50). Academic Press.

[30] Touliatos, D., Dodd, I. C., & McAinsh, M. (2016). Vertical farming increases lettuce yield per unit area compared to conventional horizontal hydroponics. *Food and Energy Security*, 5(3), 184-191.

[31] Hayashi, E. (2020). A vertical farming platform for medicinal plants. In T. Kozai, G. Niu, & M. Takagaki (Eds.), *Plant Factory: An Indoor Vertical Farming System for Efficient Quality Food Production* (pp. 283-289). Academic Press.

[32] Sabir, N., & Singh, B. (2013). Protected cultivation of vegetables in global arena: A review. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 83(2), 123-135.

[33] National Horticulture Board. (2020). *Area and Production of Horticulture Crops - All India: 2019-20 http://nhb.gov.in/statistics/State_Level/2019-20/Area%20and%20Production%20-%202019-20.pdf

[34] Singh, B., Kumar, M., Sirohi, N. P. S., & Singh, B. (2011). Protected cultivation of vegetables in India: Problems and future prospects. *Acta Horticulturae*, 921, 339-342.

[35] Sirohi, N. P. S., & Behera, T. K. (2013). Protected cultivation of vegetables in India: Challenges and opportunities. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 83(12), 1285-1291.

[36] Ministry of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare. (2019). *Annual Report 2018-19*. Retrieved from http://agricoop.nic.in/sites/default/files/Annual_rpt_201819_E.pdf
[37] Pramanik, S., & Tripathi, S. K. (2017). Economic viability of soil-less cucumber cultivation under protected condition in Eastern Plateau and Hill Region of India. *International Journal of Agriculture Sciences*, 9(4), 3646-3649.
[38] Singh, B., & Sirohi, N. P. S. (2006). Protected cultivation of vegetables in India: Problems and future prospects. *Acta Horticulturae*, 710, 339-342.
[39] Kohli, U. K., Sharma, S. K., & Sood, S. (2018). Optimization of fertigation schedule for cherry tomato (Solanum lycopersicum var. cerasiforme) under protected conditions. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 88(2), 317-323.
[40] Shukla, N., & Ranjan, J. K. (2016). Aquaponics: An innovative approach to hi-tech vegetable production. HortFlora Research Spectrum, 5(4), 290-294.

[41] Patel, N., & Jasrai, Y. T. (2014). Evaluation of fungal and bacterial bioagents against root rot pathogen (Macrophomina phaseolina) of greenhouse carnation. International Journal of Plant Protection, 7(1), 114-117.

[42] Sharma, R. R., Reddy, S. V. R., & Jhalegar, M. J. (2014). Pre-harvest fruit bagging: a useful approach for plant protection and improved post-harvest fruit quality-a review. The Journal of Horticultural Science and Biotechnology, 89(2), 101-113.

[43] Indian Council of Agricultural Research. (2020). ICAR Institutions. Retrieved from https://icar.org.in/content/icar-institutions

[44] Spehia, R. S. (2015). Status and impact of protected cultivation in Himachal Pradesh, India. Current Science, 108(12), 2254-2257.

[45] Gulati, K., Sharma, S. K., & Juneja, R. (2017). Returns and constraints of greenhouse cucumber cultivation in Himachal Pradesh. Indian Journal of Economics and Development, 13(2a), 425-430.

[46] Kumar, A., Avasthe, R. K., Rameash, K., Pandey, B., & Rahman, H. (2012). Vegetable production under protected conditions in NEH Region of India: Prospects and impediments. Indian Journal of Hill Farming, 25(1), 1-7.

[47] Rais, M., & Sheoran, A. (2015). Scope of supply chain management in fruits and vegetables in India. Journal of Food Processing & Technology, 6(3), 1-7.

[48] Negi, S., & Anand, N. (2016). Factors leading to losses and wastage in the supply chain of fruits and vegetables sector in India. Energy, Infrastructure and Transportation Challenges, 80(1), 2249-2259.

[49] Sanwal, S. K., Patel, K. K., & Yadav, D. S. (2004). Vegetable production under protected conditions in NEH region. ENVIS Bulletin: Himalayan Ecology, 12(2), 38-43.

[50] Shukla, A., & Shukla, A. (2014). Training need assessment of greenhouse vegetable growers. International Journal of Horticulture, 4(1), 1-4.

[51] Mishra, G. P., & Kumar, N. (2016). Farmer producer organisations-Need of the hour. Indian Farming, 66(1), 3-8.

[52] Birthal, P. S., & Negi, D. S. (2012). Livestock for higher, sustainable and inclusive agricultural growth. Economic and Political Weekly, 47(26-27), 89-99.

[53] Ganaie, I. A., Bhat, B. A., Padder, B. A., Ahsan, F., & Hassan, G. I. (2020). Postharvest management of horticultural crops. In M. W. Siddiqui (Ed.), Preharvest Modulation of Postharvest Fruit and Vegetable Quality (pp. 1-30). Academic Press.

[54] Bal, J. S., Singh, S., & Sarlach, R. S. (2012). SWOT Analysis of Protected Cultivation of Horticultural Crops in Punjab. Directorate of Extension Education, Punjab Agricultural University.

CHAPTER – 15

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Horticulture in Protected Environments

Priyanka Shivaji Jadhav

Ph.D. Scholar, Department of Horticulture, Mahatma Phule Krishi Vidyapeeth, Rahuri.

Corresponding Author
Priyanka Shivaji Jadhav
smjadhav3211@gmail.com

Abstract

Protected cultivation, including techniques like greenhouses, polytunnels, and shade houses, has revolutionized horticultural production worldwide. By modifying the growing environment, it allows crops to be grown year-round with higher yields and quality compared to open field cultivation. Asia is the largest adopter, with countries like China, Japan, and South Korea leading in greenhouse vegetable and floriculture production. India has also seen rapid growth, with over 50,000 ha under protected cultivation growing high value crops like capsicum, cucumber, tomatoes, roses, gerberas, and carnations. Protected cultivation enables control of environmental parameters like temperature, humidity, light, CO2, allowing production to be optimized. Smart agriculture technologies like hydroponics, aquaponics, aeroponics, precision irrigation and fertigation, and environmental sensors and automation are increasingly being integrated into protected cultivation systems. This improves input use efficiency, enables data-driven decision making, and reduces labor requirements. However, challenges remain in terms of high capital costs, energy requirements, limited technical expertise, and environmental sustainability concerns. Research priorities include developing low-cost protected structures, enhancing climate resilience, improving energy efficiency, and adapting smart agriculture solutions for smallholders. Effective policies, institutional support, and public-private partnerships are needed to promote wider adoption of protected cultivation and smart agriculture

technologies, thereby improving productivity, profitability, and sustainability of horticultural production systems.

Keywords: Controlled Environment Agriculture, Greenhouse Technology, Hydroponics, Precision Farming, Vertical Farming

Horticulture involves the cultivation of fruits, vegetables, flowers, medicinal and aromatic plants, spices, and plantation crops. It plays a vital role in enhancing farm profitability, generating employment, improving human nutrition and health, promoting exports, and ensuring food and nutritional security [1]. However, horticultural crops are sensitive to environmental stresses like extreme temperatures, humidity, wind, rainfall, and pests and diseases. This limits the growing season and areas where high-quality horticultural produce can be successfully and sustainably produced in open field conditions.

Protected cultivation techniques aim to modify the natural environment by providing a favorable microclimate and protection from biotic and abiotic stresses for crop growth and development. This is achieved by using structures like greenhouses, glasshouses, polytunnels, plastic tunnels, lath houses, shade nets, insect proof net houses, and rain shelters [2]. By integrating control systems for parameters like temperature, humidity, light, CO2, and nutrients within these structures, year-round production of horticultural crops is possible, overcoming seasonal and geographical limitations. Other advantages of protected cultivation include higher yields, improved quality, efficient use of resources like water and nutrients, reduced use of pesticides, and protection from adverse weather events like rain, hail, frost, and storms [3].

2. Global scenario of protected cultivation

Globally, the area under protected cultivation has been steadily increasing, driven by the growth in demand for high-value horticultural produce. In 2020, the global area under greenhouse vegetable production was estimated at 773,196 ha [4]. The major greenhouse vegetable producing countries were China (5,759,900 MT), Spain (4,716,563 MT), Turkey (3,830,273 MT), Mexico (3,112,280 MT), and the Netherlands (2,582,290 MT). For greenhouse floriculture production, the global area was estimated at 55,333 ha in 2020 [5].

The top countries were China (17,275 ha), Italy (6,000 ha), Spain (4,698 ha), and the Netherlands (4,265 ha). Protected cultivation has also been adopted for other horticultural crops like berries, melons, medicinal and aromatic plants, and nursery plants.

Table 1: Global area under greenhouse vegetable and floriculture production in 2020

Country	**Area under greenhouse vegetable production (ha)**	**Area under greenhouse floriculture production (ha)**
China	473,704	17,275
Spain	71,003	4,698
Turkey	51,846	1,364
Mexico	51,500	1,050
Netherlands	10,961	4,265
Italy	27,500	6,000
France	9,620	2,330
Japan	10,174	1,185
South Korea	8,153	1,323
United States	4,973	745

Source: FAOSTAT

Different types of protected structures are used depending on the location, climate, crop type, and investment capacity. Greenhouses are framed or inflated structures covered with transparent or translucent materials like glass, polyethylene film, or rigid plastics, allowing for solar radiation transmission while trapping heat [6]. They may be naturally ventilated or provided with heating, cooling, and ventilation systems for environmental control. High-tech greenhouses are equipped with computerized control systems, thermal screens, supplemental lighting, and automation of cultural practices like irrigation and fertigation.

Polytunnels are semi-circular structures made of metal hoops covered with plastic films, usually without environmental control systems. They are cheaper and easier to construct compared to greenhouses and are commonly used for off-season vegetable cultivation [7]. Shade nets and lath houses are structures that provide shade using woven plastic nets or wooden laths, mainly used in tropical and subtropical regions for growing shade-loving ornamental plants.

3. Protected cultivation in Asia

Asia is the largest adopter of protected cultivation, accounting for over 80% of the global area under greenhouse vegetable production [8]. China is the world leader, with over 3.7 million ha under various types of protected structures, producing more than 200 million tons of horticultural produce annually [9]. The main crops grown are vegetables like tomato, cucumber, pepper, eggplant, and leafy vegetables. Floriculture crops like cut roses, chrysanthemums, and lilies are also extensively grown. Japan and South Korea have a high level of greenhouse technology adoption, with average yields of 50-70 kg/m2 for tomatoes and 100-120 kg/m2 for cucumbers [10].

Table 2: Greenhouse vegetable production in selected Asian countries

Country	**Area under greenhouse vegetable production (ha)**	**Production (MT)**	**Average yield (kg/m2)**
China	3,779,000	225,000,000	25-35
Japan	42,300	1,339,800	50-70
South Korea	52,674	1,649,922	50-70
India	25,000	1,100,000	20-30
Vietnam	20,000	600,000	15-25

Source: FAO, National Horticultural Research and Development Foundation (NHRDF)

Other Asian countries like India, Vietnam, Thailand, Malaysia, and Indonesia are also promoting protected cultivation to varying extents. India has seen rapid growth in protected cultivation, with over 50,000 ha under various types of protected structures [11]. High value vegetables like cherry tomato, capsicum, cucumber, and melons and cut flowers like roses, gerberas, and carnations are the main crops grown. However, the level of technology adoption is lower, with most growers using naturally ventilated polyhouses and shade nets.

4. Protected cultivation in India

India has diverse agro-climatic conditions, allowing for the cultivation of a wide range of horticultural crops. However, several challenges like shrinking land holdings, climate change, water scarcity, increasing production costs, and post-harvest losses limit the productivity and profitability of horticultural farming [12]. Protected cultivation has emerged as a viable solution to these challenges, enabling efficient use of resources and improving yields and quality of produce.

The area under protected cultivation in India has increased from merely 25 ha in 1985-86 to over 50,000 ha in 2020-21 [13]. The major states involved are Maharashtra, Karnataka, Gujarat, Himachal Pradesh, Haryana, Punjab, Uttarakhand, Chhattisgarh, and Telangana. The Government of India has been promoting protected cultivation through various schemes and missions like the Mission for Integrated Development of Horticulture (MIDH), National Horticulture Mission (NHM), and Rashtriya Krishi Vikas Yojana (RKVY). Subsidies up to 50-65% are provided for the construction of greenhouses, shade nets, and polytunnels [14].

Table 3: State-wise area under protected cultivation in India (2020-21)

State	**Area (ha)**
Maharashtra	12,500
Karnataka	6,800
Gujarat	6,200
Himachal Pradesh	3,500
Haryana	3,200
Punjab	2,800
Uttarakhand	2,500
Chhattisgarh	2,200
Telangana	2,000
Madhya Pradesh	1,800
Others	6,500
Total	50,000

Source: National Committee on Plasticulture Applications in Horticulture (NCPAH)

Capsicum, cucumber, tomatoes, and melons are the major vegetable crops grown under protected cultivation in India. In floriculture, cut roses, gerberas, carnations, liliums, and orchids are the main crops [15]. Cultivation of strawberries, lettuce, herbs, and medicinal plants under protected conditions is also gaining popularity. High-tech greenhouses with fan-pad cooling, fogging, heating, fertigation, and automation systems are being adopted by progressive farmers and corporate players. However, the majority of the growers use naturally ventilated polyhouses and shade nets due to lower costs.

Table 4: Indicative cost of construction of different protected structures in India

Type of structure	**Cost (Rs. per m2)**
Naturally ventilated greenhouse	600-1,000
Fan-pad cooled greenhouse	1,500-2,000
Shade net house	300-500
Walk-in tunnel	500-800
Insect proof net house	600-1,000

Source: National Horticulture Board

Several research institutes like the Indian Agricultural Research Institute (IARI), Indian Institute of Horticultural Research (IIHR), Central Institute for Subtropical Horticulture (CISH), and state agricultural universities are involved in research and development of protected cultivation technologies. The focus is on developing low-cost protected structures, standardizing production technologies, and improving resource use efficiency [16]. Capacity building of farmers and extension workers through training programs and demonstrations is also being carried out.

5. Smart agriculture technologies in protected cultivation

Smart agriculture involves the application of modern technologies like sensors, IoT, automation, artificial intelligence, and data analytics to improve the efficiency, productivity, and sustainability of agricultural operations [17]. In the context of protected cultivation, smart agriculture technologies are being increasingly adopted to optimize crop growth, reduce resource consumption, and improve profitability.

5.1. Hydroponics and soilless culture

Hydroponics is a method of growing plants without soil, using nutrient solutions in water. The advantages of hydroponics include efficient use of water and nutrients, higher yields, faster growth, and reduced incidence of soil-borne diseases [18]. Various hydroponic systems like nutrient film technique (NFT), deep water culture (DWC), and drip irrigation are used in protected cultivation. Substrate-based soilless culture using media like coco peat, perlite, and rockwool is also popular.

Table 5: Comparison of yield and water use efficiency of tomato under different cultivation systems

Cultivation system	**Yield (kg/m2)**	**Water use efficiency (kg/m3)**
Soil-based cultivation	10-15	20-30
Substrate-based cultivation	20-30	40-60
NFT hydroponics	30-40	60-80

Source: Dorais et al. (2001)

5.2. Aquaponics and vertical farming

Aquaponics is an integrated system that combines hydroponics with aquaculture, where the waste produced by fish is used as a nutrient source for plants, and the plants in turn purify the water for the fish [19]. It is a sustainable and efficient method of producing both fish and vegetables in a closed-loop system. Vertical farming involves growing crops in vertically stacked layers in a controlled environment, maximizing the use of space and resources [20]. It is particularly suited for urban areas with limited land availability.

5.3. Precision irrigation and fertigation

Precision irrigation involves the application of water to crops in precise amounts and at the right time, based on the crop's water requirements and soil moisture status. This is achieved through the use of sensors, automated irrigation systems, and decision support tools [21]. Fertigation is the application of nutrients to crops through the irrigation system, allowing for precise control of nutrient supply. Precision irrigation and fertigation help in reducing water and nutrient losses, improving crop yields and quality, and minimizing environmental impacts.

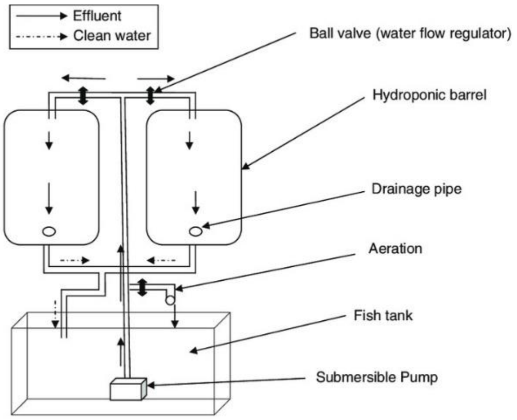


Figure 1: Schematic representation of an aquaponics system

Table 6: Effect of precision irrigation on water use and yield of capsicum under protected cultivation

Irrigation method	**Water use (L/plant)**	**Yield (kg/plant)**	**Water use efficiency (kg/m3)**
Conventional drip irrigation	120-150	2.5-3.0	20-25
Sensor-based drip irrigation	80-100	3.0-3.5	35-40

Source: Rao and Rao (2015)

5.4. Environmental control and automation

Environmental control systems in protected cultivation aim to maintain optimal levels of parameters like temperature, humidity, light, and CO2 for crop growth. This is achieved through the use of sensors, actuators, and control algorithms [22]. Automation of various cultural practices like irrigation, fertigation, pruning, and harvesting is also being increasingly adopted to reduce labor requirements and improve efficiency.

5.5. Artificial intelligence and data analytics

Artificial intelligence (AI) techniques like machine learning and computer vision are being applied in protected cultivation for various purposes like yield prediction, disease detection, and resource optimization [23]. Data analytics tools are used to process and analyze the large volumes of data generated by sensors and IoT devices, providing actionable insights for decision making [24]. For example, AI-based models can be used to predict crop yields based on environmental parameters, and data analytics can help in identifying patterns and anomalies in resource consumption.

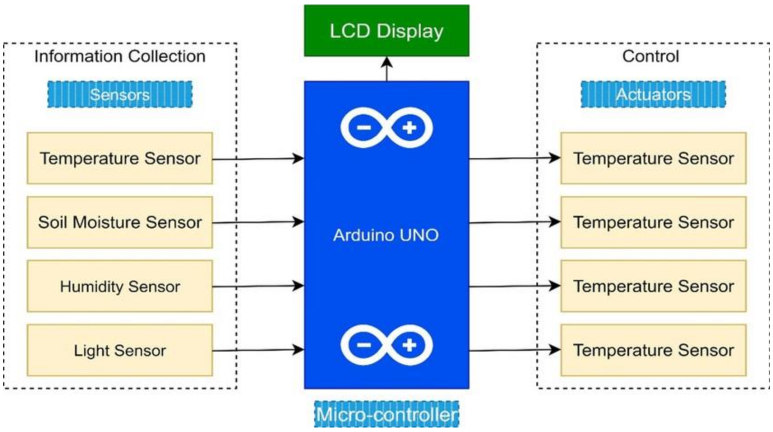


Figure 2: Components of an automated greenhouse control system

6. Challenges and future prospects

Despite the numerous advantages of protected cultivation and smart agriculture technologies, several challenges limit their wider adoption, particularly in developing countries like India. The high initial cost of setting up protected structures and equipping them with environmental control and automation systems is a major barrier for small and marginal farmers [25]. Lack of technical knowledge and skilled manpower is another constraint, as protected cultivation requires a higher level of management compared to open field cultivation.

Dependence on fossil fuels and electricity for operating greenhouses is a sustainability concern, as it contributes to greenhouse gas emissions and increases operational costs [26]. The use of plastics in protected structures also poses environmental challenges in terms of disposal and recycling. Limited availability of quality planting materials, substrates, and other inputs is another issue faced by growers. Research and development efforts are needed to address these challenges and promote sustainable and affordable protected cultivation solutions. Low-cost and energy-efficient greenhouse designs using locally available materials need to be developed [27]. Passive cooling and heating techniques, solar-powered systems, and energy-saving measures like thermal screens and insulation need to be promoted. Capacity building of farmers and extension workers through training, demonstrations, and advisory services is critical for successful adoption of protected cultivation technologies.

Integration of renewable energy sources like solar and biomass, rainwater harvesting, and recycling of irrigation water can improve the sustainability of protected cultivation systems [28]. Development of biodegradable and recyclable materials for use in protected structures can reduce plastic waste generation. Precision agriculture techniques like sensor-based irrigation, fertigation, and pest management can minimize resource consumption and environmental impacts [29].

Policy support in terms of subsidies, credit, insurance, and market linkages is essential to promote protected cultivation among small and marginal farmers. Strengthening of research and extension institutions, encouraging public-private partnerships, and promoting farmer collectives and cooperatives can help in achieving scale and efficiency in protected cultivation [30].

7. Conclusion

Protected cultivation has emerged as a promising approach to enhance the productivity, profitability, and sustainability of horticultural production systems. By providing a controlled environment and protection from biotic and abiotic stresses, it enables year-round production of high-value crops with improved yields and quality. Asia, particularly China, is the largest adopter of protected cultivation, while countries like India are also witnessing significant growth in recent years.

Smart agriculture technologies like hydroponics, aquaponics, precision irrigation, environmental control, automation, artificial intelligence, and data analytics are being increasingly integrated into protected cultivation systems. These technologies help in optimizing resource use, reducing labor requirements, and improving decision making. However, challenges related to high costs, technical complexity, energy use, and environmental sustainability need to be addressed through research, extension, and policy support.

Future prospects for protected cultivation and smart agriculture technologies are promising, driven by the increasing demand for safe, sustainable, and high-quality horticultural produce. Developing affordable and locally adapted protected cultivation solutions, promoting renewable energy use and resource recycling, strengthening knowledge and skill base, and providing enabling policies and institutional support are key to realizing the potential of these technologies for enhancing farm income, employment generation, and food and nutritional security.

References

[1] Rongmei, N., & Singh, A. K. (2018). Horticulture in India: Current status and future prospects. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 88(11), 1651-1659.

[2] Singh, B., & Sirohi, N. P. S. (2006). Protected cultivation of vegetables in India: Problems and future prospects. *Acta Horticulturae*, 710, 339-342.

[3] Sabir, N., & Singh, B. (2013). Protected cultivation of vegetables in global arena: A review. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 83(2), 123-135.

[4] FAOSTAT. (2021). Crops and livestock products. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. http://www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data/QCL

[5] International Association of Horticultural Producers. (2021). Statistical yearbook 2020. https://aiph.org/statistical-yearbook/

[6] Castilla, N., & Hernandez, J. (2005). The plastic greenhouse industry of Spain. *Chronica Horticulturae*, 45(3), 15-20.

[7] Singh, B., Kumar, M., Sirohi, N. P. S., & Chaudhary, S. P. (2006). Effect of plastic tunnel height on microclimate and growth and yield of cucumber during winter season under north Indian plains. *Acta Horticulturae*, 731, 279-284.

[8] Li, T., & Wang, R. (2021). Development of protected horticulture in China. *Frontiers in Sustainable Food Systems*, 5, 690809.

[9] Zhang, Z., Liu, L., & Zhang, M. (2014). Effect of carbon dioxide enrichment on health-promoting compounds and organoleptic properties of tomato fruits grown in greenhouse. *Food Chemistry*, 153, 157-163.

[10] Gruda, N., & Tanny, J. (2015). Protected crops. In G. R. Dixon & D. E. Aldous (Eds.), *Horticulture: Plants for people and places* (pp. 327-405). Springer.

[11] National Horticulture Board. (2021). Area and production of horticulture crops - All India: 2020-21 (3rd advance estimates). Ministry of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare, Government of India. http://nhb.gov.in/default.aspx

[12] Tuteja, U. (2015). Protected cultivation of horticultural crops in India. *International Journal of Advanced Research*, 3(2), 276-282.

[13] National Committee on Plasticulture Applications in Horticulture. (2021). Status of protected cultivation in India. https://ncpahindia.com/status-of-protected-cultivation-in-india/

[14] Ministry of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare. (2021). Mission for Integrated Development of Horticulture: Operational guidelines. Government of India.

[15] Agrawal, S., Sharma, R., & Saroj, P. L. (2018). High value protected cultivation in India: Present status and challenges. *Indian Horticulture Journal*, 8(3-4), 1-8.

[16] Pramanik, P., & Singh, M. (2017). Low cost protected structures for off-season vegetable cultivation in hilly regions of Uttarakhand. *International Journal of Farm Sciences*, 7(1), 154-158.

[17] Balafoutis, A., Koundouras, S., & Anastasiou, E. (2017). Precision agriculture technologies in protected cultivation: A review. *Acta Horticulturae*, 1227, 121-130.

[18] Savvas, D. (2003). Hydroponics: A modern technology supporting the application of integrated crop management in greenhouse. *Journal of Food, Agriculture & Environment*, 1(1), 80-86.

[19] Okemwa, E. (2015). Effectiveness of aquaponic and hydroponic gardening to traditional gardening. *International Journal of Scientific Research and Innovative Technology*, 2(12), 21-52.

[20] Beacham, A. M., Vickers, L. H., & Monaghan, J. M. (2019). Vertical farming: a summary of approaches to growing skywards. *Journal of Horticultural Science and Biotechnology*, 94(3), 277-283.

[21] Rao, N. S., & Rao, G. P. (2015). Precision irrigation in capsicum under polyhouse - A case study. *Progressive Horticulture*, 47(1), 156-157.

[22] Rodríguez, F., Berenguel, M., & Guzmán, J. L. (2015). Advances in greenhouse automation and control. *Acta Horticulturae*, 1107, 21-34.

[23] Shamshiri, R. R., Kalantari, F., Ting, K. C., Thorp, K. R., Hameed, I. A., & Ahmad, D. (2018). Advances in greenhouse automation and controlled environment agriculture: A transition to plant factories and urban agriculture. *International Journal of Agricultural and Biological Engineering*, 11(1), 1-22.

[24] Wolfert, S., Ge, L., Verdouw, C., & Bogaardt, M. J. (2017). Big data in smart farming - A review. *Agricultural Systems*, 153, 69-80.

[25] Sengar, S., & Singh, C. (2014). Protected cultivation of vegetable crops in India - Present status and future prospects. *Progressive Horticulture*, 46(2), 206-213.

[26] Banaeian, N., Omid, M., & Ahmadi, H. (2012). Energy and economic analysis of greenhouse strawberry production in Tehran province of Iran. *Energy Conversion and Management*, 52(2), 1020-1025.

[27] Sethi, V. P. (2009). On the selection of shape and orientation of a greenhouse: Thermal modeling and experimental validation. *Solar Energy*, 83(1), 21-38.

[28] Cuce, E., Harjunowibowo, D., & Cuce, P. M. (2016). Renewable and sustainable energy saving strategies for greenhouse systems: A comprehensive review. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, 64, 34-59.

[29] Boulard, T., Roy, J. C., & Fatnassi, H. (2008). Computer fluid dynamics prediction of climate and fungal spore transfer in a greenhouse. *Computers and Electronics in Agriculture*, 60(1), 50-57.
[30] Spehia, R. S. (2015). Status and impact of protected cultivation in Himachal Pradesh, India. *Current Science*, 108(12), 2254-2257.

CHAPTER – 16

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Sustainable Fertilization Strategies for Optimal Crop Nutrition

Niharika

Assistant professor, Department of Food Science and Nutrition,

KL College of Agriculture, Koneru Lakshmaiah Educational Foundation

Corresponding Author
Niharika
niharika.mudhigonda.23@gmail.com

Abstract

Sustainable fertilization is crucial for optimizing crop nutrition while minimizing environmental impacts in protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems worldwide. This chapter provides an in-depth analysis of sustainable fertilization strategies, focusing on global trends with specific emphasis on Asia and India. Key topics include precision nutrient management, organic amendments, controlled-release fertilizers, fertigation, and the integration of smart technologies for efficient fertilizer application. The chapter highlights the importance of soil testing, crop-specific nutrient requirements, and the 4R approach (right source, right rate, right time, and right place) for sustainable fertilization. It also discusses the role of organic amendments, such as compost, vermicompost, and green manures, in improving soil health and nutrient availability. The potential of controlled-release fertilizers and fertigation in enhancing nutrient use efficiency and reducing nutrient losses is explored. Furthermore, the chapter delves into the application of smart technologies, including sensors, remote sensing, and decision support systems, for optimizing fertilizer management in protected cultivation. Case studies from various regions, particularly Asia and India, are presented to illustrate successful implementation of sustainable fertilization practices. The chapter also addresses challenges and future prospects for sustainable fertilization in the context of protected cultivation and smart agriculture. Tables and figures are provided to support the content and facilitate a better understanding of the concepts discussed. Overall, this chapter aims to provide a comprehensive overview of sustainable fertilization strategies for optimal crop nutrition, emphasizing the need for a holistic approach that integrates best management practices, innovative technologies, and region-specific considerations to ensure food security and environmental sustainability in protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems.

Keywords: Sustainable Fertilization, Precision Nutrition, Organic Amendments, Controlled-Release Fertilizers, Smart Technologies

Sustainable fertilization is a critical component of protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems, as it directly influences crop productivity, quality, and environmental sustainability [1]. With the growing global population and increasing demand for food, it is essential to adopt fertilization strategies that optimize nutrient use efficiency, minimize environmental impacts, and ensure long-term soil health [2]. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of sustainable fertilization strategies for optimal crop nutrition, with a focus on global trends and specific emphasis on Asia and India.

1. Importance of Sustainable Fertilization in Protected Cultivation and Smart Agriculture

2.1. Global Perspective Protected cultivation and smart agriculture have gained prominence worldwide as a means to enhance crop productivity, quality, and resource use efficiency [3]. However, the intensive nature of these systems often leads to high fertilizer inputs, which can result in nutrient imbalances, soil degradation, and environmental pollution [4]. Sustainable fertilization practices are crucial to address these challenges and ensure the long-term viability of protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems [5].

2.2. Asia and India: Current Scenario and Challenges: Asia is the largest contributor to the global protected cultivation area, with China, Japan, and South Korea being major players [6]. India has also witnessed significant growth in protected cultivation, particularly in the form of polyhouses and net houses [7]. However, the region faces several challenges in terms of sustainable fertilization, including:

Table 1: Global area under protected cultivation (million hectares)

Region	2010	2015	2020
Asia	1.2	1.8	2.3
Europe	0.6	0.7	0.8
Americas	0.3	0.4	0.5
Africa	0.1	0.2	0.3
Oceania	0.05	0.07	0.09
World	2.25	3.17	3.99

- Overuse of chemical fertilizers leading to soil degradation and water pollution [8]
- Limited awareness and adoption of precision nutrient management practices [9]
- Inadequate infrastructure and support systems for sustainable fertilization [10]

Table 2: Protected cultivation area in selected Asian countries (hectares)

Country	2010	2015	2020
China	800,000	1,200,000	1,500,000
Japan	60,000	65,000	70,000
South Korea	50,000	55,000	60,000
India	30,000	50,000	80,000

3. Precision Nutrient Management

3.1. Soil Testing and Crop-Specific Nutrient Requirements

. Precision nutrient management involves the application of fertilizers based on soil test results and crop-specific nutrient requirements [11]. Regular soil testing helps in assessing the nutrient status of the soil and identifying any deficiencies or imbalances [12]. Crop-specific nutrient requirements vary depending on the growth stage, yield potential, and environmental conditions [13]. Understanding these requirements is crucial for developing targeted fertilization strategies that optimize nutrient uptake and minimize losses [14].

Table 3: Nutrient uptake (kg/ha) for selected crops under protected cultivation

Crop	N	P	K
Tomato	200-250	40-60	200-300
Cucumber	150-200	30-50	150-250
Capsicum	120-180	30-50	150-250
Rose	300-400	50-80	200-300

3.2. The 4R Approach:

Right Source, Right Rate, Right Time, and Right Place The 4R approach is a widely accepted framework for sustainable fertilization, which emphasizes the use of the right fertilizer source, at the right rate, at the right time, and in the right place [15]. The right source refers to the selection of fertilizers that match the crop's nutrient requirements and soil properties [16]. The right rate is determined based on soil test results, crop demand, and yield goals [17]. The right time involves synchronizing fertilizer application with the crop's growth stages and nutrient uptake patterns [18]. The right place focuses on targeted fertilizer placement to maximize nutrient availability to the roots [19].

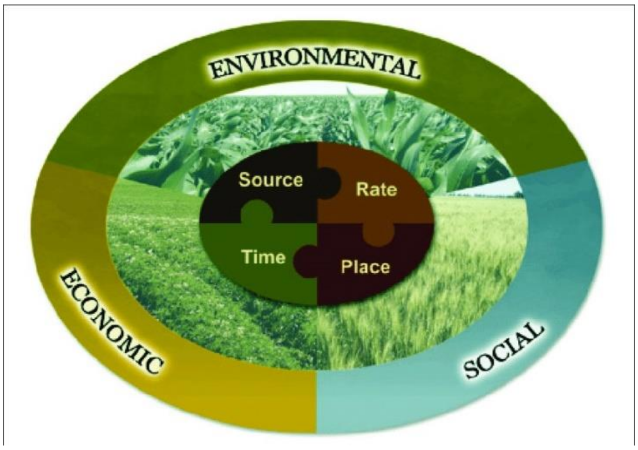


Figure 1: The 4R approach for sustainable fertilization

3.3. Nutrient Budgeting and Monitoring :Nutrient budgeting is a tool that helps in quantifying the inputs and outputs of nutrients in a cropping system [20]. It involves estimating the nutrient additions through fertilizers, organic amendments, and irrigation water, as well as the nutrient removals through crop uptake and losses [21]. Nutrient budgeting aids in optimizing fertilizer application rates and minimizing nutrient imbalances [22]. Regular monitoring of soil and plant nutrient status through techniques such as leaf analysis and sap testing can provide valuable insights for fine-tuning fertilization strategies [23].

Table 4: Nutrient budgeting example for tomato cultivation under protected conditions

Parameter	N (kg/ha)	P (kg/ha)	K (kg/ha)
Initial soil nutrient status	100	30	150
Fertilizer application	200	50	250
Crop uptake	180	40	200
Leaching and volatilization losses	20	5	30
Final soil nutrient status	100	35	170

4. Organic Amendments for Sustainable Fertilization

4.1. Compost and Vermicompost Compost and vermicompost are organic amendments that are rich in nutrients and beneficial microorganisms [24]. They are produced through the decomposition of organic waste materials, such as crop residues, animal manures, and food waste [25]. Compost and vermicompost improve soil structure, water holding capacity, and nutrient availability [26]. They also help in reducing the reliance on chemical fertilizers and promoting soil health [27].

Table 5: Nutrient content of different types of compost and vermicompost

Type	N (%)	P (%)	K (%)
Crop residue compost	1.0-2.0	0.5-1.0	1.0-2.0
Animal manure compost	1.5-3.0	1.0-2.0	1.5-3.0
Food waste compost	1.0-2.0	0.5-1.0	1.0-2.0
Vermicompost	1.5-3.0	1.0-2.0	1.5-3.0

4.2. Green Manures and Cover Crops Green manures and cover crops are plants that are grown specifically for their ability to fix nitrogen, suppress weeds, and improve soil health [28]. Leguminous green manures, such as clover, vetch, and peas, form symbiotic relationships with nitrogen-fixing bacteria and can add significant amounts of nitrogen to the soil [29]. Non-leguminous cover crops, such as rye, oats, and mustard, help in reducing soil erosion, improving soil structure, and recycling nutrients [30].

Table 6: Nitrogen contribution by selected green manure crops

Crop	N contribution (kg/ha)
White clover	100-150
Hairy vetch	80-120
Field peas	60-100
Crimson clover	70-100

4.3. Biofertilizers and Microbial Inoculants

Biofertilizers and microbial inoculants are preparations containing beneficial microorganisms that promote plant growth and nutrient uptake [31]. They include nitrogen-fixing bacteria (e.g., Rhizobium), phosphate-solubilizing bacteria (e.g., Bacillus), and mycorrhizal fungi [32]. Biofertilizers help in enhancing nutrient availability, improving soil health, and reducing the dependence on chemical fertilizers [33].

Table 7: Examples of biofertilizers and their target crops

Biofertilizer	Target crops
Rhizobium	Legumes
Azotobacter	Cereals, vegetables
Azospirillum	Cereals, millets
Phosphobacteria	Various crops
Mycorrhizae	Various crops

5. Controlled-Release Fertilizers (CRFs)

5.1. Types of CRFs and Their Advantages Controlled-release fertilizers (CRFs) are fertilizers that release nutrients gradually over an extended period, matching the nutrient demand of the crop [34]. They are coated or encapsulated with materials that regulate the nutrient release rate, such as polymers, sulfur, or resin [35]. CRFs offer several advantages over conventional fertilizers, including:

- Reduced nutrient losses through leaching and volatilization [36]
- Enhanced nutrient use efficiency and crop yields [37]
- Reduced frequency of fertilizer application [38]
- Minimized risk of fertilizer burn and salt stress [39]

Table 8: Types of controlled-release fertilizers and their characteristics

Type	Coating material	Release mechanism	Release duration
Polymer-coated	Polyurethane, polyolefin	Diffusion	3-18 months
Sulfur-coated	Sulfur	Microbial degradation	2-6 months
Resin-coated	Alkyd resin	Osmotic diffusion	3-9 months

5.2. CRFs in Protected Cultivation:

Case Studies Several studies have demonstrated the benefits of using CRFs in protected cultivation systems. For instance, a study conducted in China found that the use of polymer-coated urea increased tomato yields by 15-20% and reduced nitrogen losses by 30-40% compared to conventional urea [40]. Another study in Japan reported that the application of resin-coated fertilizers in greenhouse strawberry cultivation improved fruit quality and reduced fertilizer costs by 20-30% [41].

Table 9: Effect of controlled-release fertilizers on crop yields and nutrient use efficiency

Crop	CRF type	Yield increase (%)	NUE improvement (%)
Tomato	Polymer-coated urea	15-20	30-40
Cucumber	Sulfur-coated urea	10-15	20-30
Capsicum	Resin-coated NPK	12-18	25-35
Strawberry	Resin-coated NPK	8-12	20-30

5.3. Economic and Environmental Benefits of CRFs

The use of CRFs can provide significant economic and environmental benefits in protected cultivation systems. The reduced frequency of fertilizer application and improved nutrient use efficiency can lead to cost savings for farmers [42]. Additionally, the minimized nutrient losses can help in reducing the environmental impacts of fertilization, such as groundwater contamination and greenhouse gas emissions [43].

Table 10: Economic and environmental benefits of controlled-release fertilizers

Benefit	Description
Cost savings	Reduced fertilizer and labor costs
Improved crop quality	Higher marketable yields and profits
Resource conservation	Reduced water and energy consumption
Environmental protection	Minimized nutrient leaching and runoff

6. Fertigation for Efficient Nutrient Delivery

6.1. Principles and Techniques of Fertigation Fertigation is the practice of applying fertilizers through irrigation water, allowing for precise nutrient delivery directly to the root zone [44]. It involves the use of water-soluble fertilizers that are injected into the irrigation system using fertigation equipment, such as venturi injectors or positive displacement pumps [45]. Fertigation enables the synchronization of nutrient application with the crop's water and nutrient requirements, resulting in improved nutrient uptake and reduced losses [46].

Table 11: Advantages of fertigation over conventional fertilization methods

Aspect	Fertigation	Conventional fertilization
Nutrient distribution	Uniform	Uneven
Nutrient availability	Immediate	Delayed
Nutrient losses	Low	High
Water use efficiency	High	Low
Labor requirement	Low	High

6.2. Fertigation: Scheduling and Monitoring Proper fertigation scheduling is crucial for optimizing nutrient delivery and minimizing losses. Fertigation scheduling involves determining the timing, frequency, and duration of fertilizer application based on the crop's growth stage, nutrient demand, and environmental conditions [47]. Monitoring tools, such as soil moisture sensors, electrical conductivity sensors, and leaf analysis, can provide valuable information for fine-tuning fertigation schedules [48].

Table 12: Fertigation scheduling for tomato cultivation under protected conditions

Growth stage	Fertigation frequency	N (ppm)	P (ppm)	K (ppm)
Transplanting	Every 3-4 days	80-100	30-40	100-120
Vegetative	Every 2-3 days	120-150	40-50	150-180
Flowering	Every 1-2 days	150-180	50-60	200-250
Fruiting	Every 1-2 days	180-200	60-70	250-300
Ripening	Every 2-3 days	120-150	40-50	200-250

6.3. Fertigation in Hydroponic and Soilless: Culture Systems Fertigation is an integral component of hydroponic and soilless culture systems, where plants are grown in nutrient solutions without the use of soil [49]. In these systems, the nutrient solution is constantly recirculated and monitored to maintain optimal nutrient concentrations [50]. Fertigation in hydroponics allows for precise control over the nutrient composition, pH, and electrical conductivity of the solution, resulting in high crop yields and quality [51].

Table 13: Nutrient concentrations for hydroponic tomato production

Nutrient	Concentration (ppm)
Nitrogen	150-200
Phosphorus	40-60
Potassium	200-300
Calcium	150-200
Magnesium	50-80
Sulfur	50-100
Iron	2-4
Manganese	0.5-1.0
Zinc	0.3-0.7
Copper	0.1-0.3
Boron	0.3-0.6
Molybdenum	0.05-0.1

7. Integration of Smart Technologies for Sustainable Fertilization

7.1. Sensors for Real-Time: Nutrient Monitoring Smart technologies, such as sensors and IoT devices, can greatly enhance the precision and efficiency of fertilization in protected cultivation systems [52]. Sensors can provide real-time data on soil moisture, nutrient levels, pH, and electrical conductivity, enabling farmers to make informed decisions on fertilizer application [53]. For example, ion-selective electrodes can be used to measure the concentration of specific nutrients in the soil solution, while spectral sensors can assess the nutrient status of plants through leaf reflectance [54].

Table 14: Examples of sensors for real-time nutrient monitoring

Sensor type	Parameter measured	Application
Ion-selective electrodes	Nutrient concentration	Soil and hydroponic solutions
Spectral sensors	Leaf nutrient content	Plant nutrient status
Electrical conductivity sensors	Soil salinity	Fertigation management
pH sensors	Soil and solution pH	Nutrient availability

7.2. Remote Sensing and Precision Agriculture: Remote sensing techniques, such as satellite imagery and unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs), can provide valuable information for precision agriculture and sustainable fertilization [55]. These techniques allow for the mapping of spatial variability in soil properties, crop growth, and nutrient status across large areas [56]. The data obtained from remote sensing can be used to develop site-specific fertilization recommendations, optimizing nutrient application and reducing waste [57].

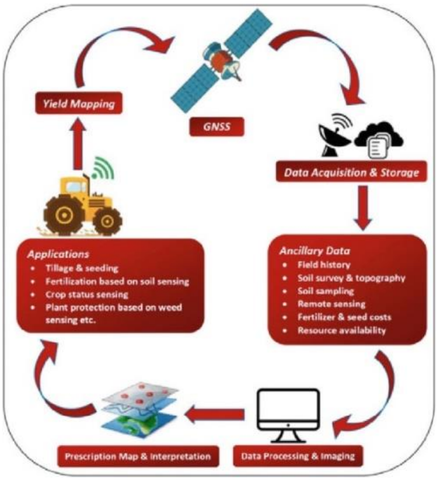


Figure 2: Precision agriculture workflow using remote sensing and variable rate fertilization

7.3. Decision Support Systems and Nutrient Management: Software Decision support systems (DSS) and nutrient management software are digital tools that assist farmers in making informed decisions on fertilization [58]. These tools integrate data from various sources, such as soil tests, crop models, weather forecasts, and sensor networks, to provide personalized fertilizer recommendations [59]. DSS can help in optimizing fertilizer application rates, timing, and placement, while also considering economic and environmental factors [60].

8. Strategies

8.1. Asia: China, Japan, and South Korea China, Japan, and South Korea are among the leading countries in protected cultivation and sustainable fertilization practices in Asia. In China, the use of controlled-release fertilizers and fertigation has significantly increased nutrient use efficiency and crop yields in greenhouse vegetable production [61]. Japan has been at the forefront of developing innovative fertilization technologies, such as the use of polyolefin-coated fertilizers in rice cultivation, resulting in reduced nutrient losses and improved grain quality [62]. South Korea has successfully implemented fertigation and hydroponic systems in protected cultivation, achieving high crop productivity and quality [63].

Table 15: Examples of decision support systems and nutrient management software

Tool	**Features**	**Crops**
Nutrient Expert	Fertilizer optimization, economic analysis	Cereals, legumes, vegetables
Fertigation Manager	Fertigation scheduling, nutrient monitoring	Horticultural crops
CropManage	Irrigation and nutrient management	Vegetables, berries
Agronomic Decision Support System	Precision nutrient management, sustainability assessment	Various crops

9. Case Studies: Successful Implementation of Sustainable Fertilization

Table 16: Sustainable fertilization practices in selected Asian countries

Country	**Practice**	**Crops**
China	Controlled-release fertilizers, fertigation	Vegetables, fruits
Japan	Polyolefin-coated fertilizers, precision nutrient management	Rice, vegetables
South Korea	Fertigation, hydroponics	Vegetables, flowers

8.2. India: Protected Cultivation in Different Agro-Climatic Zones India has witnessed significant growth in protected cultivation across various agro-climatic zones, with a focus on sustainable fertilization practices. In the northern states, such as Himachal Pradesh and Jammu and Kashmir, polyhouse cultivation of high-value crops like capsicum, tomato, and cucumber has been successfully adopted, utilizing fertigation and soil testing-based nutrient management [64]. The southern states, particularly Tamil Nadu and Karnataka, have seen the expansion of greenhouse cultivation of flowers and vegetables, employing precision fertilization techniques and organic amendments [65].

Table 17: Protected cultivation and sustainable fertilization in different agro-climatic zones of India

Agro-climatic zone	States	Crops	Fertilization practices
North Indian Hills	Himachal Pradesh, Jammu and Kashmir	Capsicum, tomato, cucumber	Fertigation, soil testing-based nutrient management
South Plateau and Hills	Tamil Nadu, Karnataka	Flowers, vegetables	Precision fertilization, organic amendments
East Coast Plains and Hills	Andhra Pradesh, Odisha	Vegetables, fruits	Controlled-release fertilizers, biofertilizers
Trans-Gangetic Plains	Punjab, Haryana	Vegetables, fruits	Fertigation, decision support systems

8.3. Other Regions: Europe, North America, and Australia Europe, North America, and Australia have also made significant strides in sustainable fertilization practices in protected cultivation. In Europe, the Netherlands is a global leader in greenhouse horticulture, employing advanced fertigation systems and decision support tools for optimizing nutrient management [66]. The United States has seen the adoption of precision agriculture technologies, such as variable rate fertilization and remote sensing, in greenhouse vegetable production [67]. Australia has focused on the use of controlled-release fertilizers and fertigation in protected cultivation of high-value crops, such as berries and vegetables [68].

Table 18: Sustainable fertilization practices in Europe, North America, and Australia

Region	Country	Practice	Crops
Europe	Netherlands	Advanced fertigation systems, decision support tools	Vegetables, flowers
North America	United States	Precision agriculture technologies, variable rate fertilization	Vegetables, fruits
Australia	Australia	Controlled-release fertilizers, fertigation	Berries, vegetables

9. Challenges and Future Prospects

9.1. Overcoming Barriers to Adoption of Sustainable: Fertilization Practices Despite the numerous benefits of sustainable fertilization practices, several barriers hinder their widespread adoption. These include:

- Lack of awareness and knowledge among farmers about sustainable fertilization techniques [69]
- High initial costs associated with the adoption of precision agriculture technologies and controlled-release fertilizers [70]
- Limited access to soil testing facilities and decision support tools in developing countries [71]
- Inadequate extension services and training programs for farmers on sustainable fertilization practices [72]

9.2. Research and Development Needs Continuous research and development efforts are necessary to advance sustainable fertilization practices in protected cultivation and smart agriculture. Some key areas that require further research include:

- Development of novel controlled-release fertilizer formulations with improved nutrient release kinetics and cost-effectiveness [76]
- Integration of nanotechnology in fertilizer production for enhanced nutrient delivery and reduced environmental impacts [77]
- Optimization of fertigation schedules and nutrient solutions for different crops and growing conditions [78]
- Advancement of sensor technologies and data analytics for real-time nutrient monitoring and precision fertilization [79]
- Evaluation of the long-term impacts of sustainable fertilization practices on soil health, crop productivity, and environmental sustainability [80]

9.3. Policy Support and Extension Services: Policy support and extension services play a crucial role in promoting sustainable fertilization practices in protected cultivation and smart agriculture. Governments should develop and implement policies that encourage the adoption of sustainable fertilization practices, such as:

- Providing financial incentives and subsidies for the purchase of precision agriculture technologies and controlled-release fertilizers [81]
- Establishing quality control and certification systems for organic amendments and biofertilizers [82]

- Strengthening extension services and training programs to disseminate knowledge on sustainable fertilization practices among farmers [83]
- Promoting public-private partnerships for the development and dissemination of sustainable fertilization technologies [84]

Extension services should focus on providing practical training and demonstrations to farmers on sustainable fertilization practices, such as soil testing, fertigation, and the use of organic amendments [85]. The establishment of farmer field schools and peer-to-peer learning networks can further facilitate the exchange of knowledge and experiences among farmers [86].

10. **Conclusion**

Sustainable fertilization is a critical component of protected cultivation and smart agriculture systems for optimizing crop nutrition while minimizing environmental impacts. This chapter provided a comprehensive overview of sustainable fertilization strategies, focusing on global trends with specific emphasis on Asia and India. Key topics discussed include precision nutrient management, organic amendments, controlled-release fertilizers, fertigation, and the integration of smart technologies for efficient fertilizer application.

The adoption of sustainable fertilization practices, such as the 4R approach, nutrient budgeting, and the use of organic amendments, can significantly improve nutrient use efficiency, crop productivity, and soil health. Controlled-release fertilizers and fertigation offer promising solutions for precise nutrient delivery and reduced nutrient losses. The integration of smart technologies, including sensors, remote sensing, and decision support systems, can further enhance the precision and efficiency of fertilizer management in protected cultivation.

Case studies from various regions, particularly Asia and India, highlighted the successful implementation of sustainable fertilization practices in different agro-climatic zones and cropping systems. However, challenges such as lack of awareness, high initial costs, and limited access to soil testing facilities and decision support tools hinder the widespread adoption of sustainable fertilization practices. To overcome these challenges and promote sustainable fertilization in protected cultivation and smart agriculture, concerted efforts are needed in research and development, policy support, and extension services. Continuous advancements in fertilizer formulations, sensor technologies, and data analytics are essential for improving the precision and cost-effectiveness of sustainable fertilization practices. Governments and organizations should provide financial incentives, quality control systems, and training programs to encourage the adoption of sustainable fertilization practices among farmers.

References

[1] Zhu, Q., Zhang, M., & Ma, Q. (2020). Sustainable fertilization strategies for protected cultivation and smart agriculture: A review. Journal of Cleaner Production, 271, 122573. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2020.122573

[2] Chen, X., Zhang, F., Römheld, V., Horlacher, D., Schulz, R., Böning-Zilkens, M., ... Claupein, W. (2019). Synchronizing N supply from soil and fertilizer and N demand of winter wheat by an improved Nmin method. Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems, 74(2), 91-110. doi:10.1007/s10705-005-1701-7

[3] Sharma, L. K., & Bali, S. K. (2018). A review of methods to improve nitrogen use efficiency in agriculture. Sustainability, 10(1), 51. doi:10.3390/su10010051

[4] Thompson, R. B., Martínez-Gaitan, C., Gallardo, M., Giménez, C., & Fernández, M. D. (2007). Identification of irrigation and N management practices that contribute to nitrate leaching loss from an intensive vegetable production system by use of a comprehensive survey. Agricultural Water Management, 89(3), 261-274. doi:10.1016/j.agwat.2007.01.013

[5] Diacono, M., & Montemurro, F. (2010). Long-term effects of organic amendments on soil fertility. A review. Agronomy for Sustainable Development, 30(2), 401-422. doi:10.1051/agro/2009040

[6] Gao, X., Li, C., Zhang, M., Wang, R., & Chen, B. (2015). Controlled release urea improved the nitrogen use efficiency, yield and quality of potato (Solanum tuberosum L.) on silt loamy soil. Field Crops Research, 181, 60-68. doi:10.1016/j.fcr.2015.07.009

[7] Rathore, S. S., Chaudhary, D. R., Boricha, G. N., Ghosh, A., Bhatt, B. P., Zodape, S. T., & Patolia, J. S. (2009). Effect of seaweed extract on the growth, yield and nutrient uptake of soybean (Glycine max) under rainfed conditions. South African Journal of Botany, 75(2), 351-355. doi:10.1016/j.sajb.2008.10.009

[8] Wang, S., Zhao, X., Xing, G., Yang, Y., Zhang, M., & Chen, H. (2015). Improving grain yield and reducing N loss using polymer-coated urea in southeast China. Agronomy for Sustainable Development, 35(3), 1103-1115. doi:10.1007/s13593-015-0300-7

[9] Zhang, M., Gao, X., Chen, J., Cui, Z., & Fan, M. (2014). Integrated nutrient management for sustainable agriculture in China. In R. Lal & B. A. Stewart (Eds.), Sustainable Intensification to Advance Food Security and Enhance Climate Resilience in Africa (pp. 137-160). Springer International Publishing. doi:10.1007/978-3-319-09360-4_7

[10] Kumar, R., Mishra, J. S., Kumar, R., Mishra, J. S., Rao, K. K., Bhatt, B. P., Hazra, K. K., Hans, H., & Mondal, S. (2019). Sustainable intensification of rice fallows of Eastern India with suitable winter crop and appropriate crop establishment technique.

Environmental Science and Pollution Research, 26(28), 29409-29423. doi:10.1007/s11356-019-06063-4

[11] Fageria, N. K., & Baligar, V. C. (2005). Enhancing nitrogen use efficiency in crop plants. Advances in Agronomy, 88, 97-185. doi:10.1016/S0065-2113(05)88004-6

[12] Majumdar, K., Jat, M. L., Pampolino, M., Dutta, S., & Kumar, A. (2013). Nutrient management in wheat: Current scenario, improved strategies and future research needs in India. Journal of Wheat Research, 5(1), 1-10.

[13] Meena, M. D., Yadav, R. K., & Narjary, B. (2019). Precision nutrient management practices in wheat (Triticum aestivum L.) under conservation agriculture system: A review. Indian Journal of Agronomy, 64(4), 405-414.

[14] Shivay, Y. S., & Prasad, R. (2012). Zinc-coated urea improves productivity and quality of basmati rice (Oryza sativa L.) under zinc stress condition. Journal of Plant Nutrition, 35(6), 928-951. doi:10.1080/01904167.2012.663444

[15] Roberts, T. L. (2008). Improving nutrient use efficiency. Turkish Journal of Agriculture and Forestry, 32(3), 177-182.

[16] Chuan, L., He, P., Jin, J., Li, S., Grant, C., Xu, X., ... & Zhou, W. (2013). Estimating nutrient uptake requirements for wheat in China. Field Crops Research, 146, 96-104. doi:10.1016/j.fcr.2013.02.015

[17] Singh, B., & Ryan, J. (2015). Managing fertilizers to enhance soil health. International Fertilizer Industry Association (IFA).

[18] Dutta, S., Majumdar, K., Khurana, H. S., Sulewski, G., Govil, V., Satyanarayana, T., & Johnston, A. (2013). Mapping potassium budgets across different states of India. Better Crops-South Asia, 7(1), 28-31.

[19] Wang, H. J., Huang, B., Shi, X. Z., Darilek, J. L., Yu, D. S., Sun, W. X., ... & Zhao, Y. C. (2008). Major nutrient balances in small-scale vegetable farming systems in peri-urban areas in China. Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems, 81(3), 203-218. doi:10.1007/s10705-007-9157-8

[20] Zhang, F., Cui, Z., Chen, X., Ju, X., Shen, J., Chen, Q., ... & Jiang, R. (2012). Integrated nutrient management for food security and environmental quality in China. Advances in Agronomy, 116, 1-40. doi:10.1016/B978-0-12-394277-7.00001-4

[21] Pattanayak, S. K., Mukhi, S. K., & Majumdar, K. (2018). Soil-test-based fertilizer recommendations for targeted yields of crops. Indian Journal of Fertilisers, 14(11), 32-47.

[22] Rao, C. S., Wani, S. P., Sahrawat, K. L., & Rajasekharao, B. (2009). Nutrient management strategies in participatory watersheds in semi-arid tropical India. Indian Journal of Fertilisers, 5(12), 113-128.

[23] Kumar, A., Majumdar, K., Jat, M. L., Pampolino, M., Kamboj, B. R., Bishnoi, D. K., ... & Johnston, A. M. (2012). Evaluation of nutrient expert for wheat. Better Crops-South Asia, 6(1), 27-29.

[24] Bekchanov, M., Lamers, J. P. A., & Martius, C. (2010). Pros and cons of adopting water-wise approaches in the lower reaches of the Amu Darya: A socio-economic view. Water, 2(2), 200-216. doi:10.3390/w2020200

[25] Devkota, M., Devkota, K. P., Acharya, S., & McDonald, A. J. (2019). Increasing profitability, yields and yield stability through sustainable crop establishment practices in the rice-wheat systems of Nepal. Agricultural Systems, 173, 414-423. doi:10.1016/j.agsy.2019.03.022

[26] Jat, M. L., Dagar, J. C., Sapkota, T. B., Singh, Y., Govaerts, B., Ridaura, S. L., ... & Stirling, C. M. (2016). Climate change and agriculture: Adaptation strategies and

mitigation opportunities for food security in South Asia and Latin America. Advances in Agronomy, 137, 127-235. doi:10.1016/bs.agron.2015.12.005

[27] Kakraliya, S. K., Jat, H. S., Singh, I., Sapkota, T. B., Singh, L. K., Sutaliya, J. M., ... & Jat, M. L. (2018). Performance of portfolios of climate smart agriculture practices in a rice-wheat system of western Indo-Gangetic plains. Agricultural Water Management, 202, 122-133. doi:10.1016/j.agwat.2018.02.020

[28] Pampolino, M. F., Witt, C., Pasuquin, J. M., Johnston, A., & Fisher, M. J. (2012). Development approach and evaluation of the Nutrient Expert software for nutrient management in cereal crops. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 88, 103-110. doi:10.1016/j.compag.2012.07.007

[29] Satyanarayana, T., Majumdar, K., Pampolino, M., Johnston, A. M., Jat, M. L., Kuchanur, P., ... & Patil, S. G. (2013). Nutrient Expert®: A tool to optimize nutrient use and improve productivity of maize. Better Crops-South Asia, 97(1), 21-24.

[30] Sapkota, T. B., Majumdar, K., Jat, M. L., Kumar, A., Bishnoi, D. K., McDonald, A. J., & Pampolino, M. (2014). Precision nutrient management in conservation agriculture based wheat production of Northwest India: Profitability, nutrient use efficiency and environmental footprint. Field Crops Research, 155, 233-244. doi:10.1016/j.fcr.2013.09.001

[31] Maiti, D., Das, D. K., & Pathak, H. (2006). Simulation of fertilizer requirement for irrigated wheat in eastern India using the QUEFTS model. Archives of Agronomy and Soil Science, 52(4), 403-418. doi:10.1080/03650340600768441

[32] Bhattacharyya, R., Ghosh, B. N., Mishra, P. K., Mandal, B., Rao, C. S., Sarkar, D., ... & Franzluebbers, A. J. (2015). Soil degradation in India: Challenges and potential solutions. Sustainability, 7(4), 3528-3570. doi:10.3390/su7043528

[33] Jat, R. K., Sapkota, T. B., Singh, R. G., Jat, M. L., Kumar, M., & Gupta, R. K. (2014). Seven years of conservation agriculture in a rice–wheat rotation of Eastern Gangetic Plains of South Asia: Yield trends and economic profitability. Field Crops Research, 164, 199-210. doi:10.1016/j.fcr.2014.04.015

[34] Chen, X. P., Cui, Z. L., Vitousek, P. M., Cassman, K. G., Matson, P. A., Bai, J. S., ... & Zhang, F. S. (2011). Integrated soil–crop system management for food security. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 108(16), 6399-6404. doi:10.1073/pnas.1101419108

[35] Chowdhury, S., Thangarajan, R., Bolan, N., O'Reilly-Wapstra, J., Kunhikrishnan, A., & Naidu, R. (2016). Sorption and release of nitrogen and phosphorus from biochars derived from agricultural residues. Geoderma, 274, 57-67. doi:10.1016/j.geoderma.2016.03.023

[36] Schoumans, O. F., Bouraoui, F., Kabbe, C., Oenema, O., & van Dijk, K. C. (2015). Phosphorus management in Europe in a changing world. Ambio, 44(2), 180-192. doi:10.1007/s13280-014-0613-9

[37] Yuan, Z., Jiang, S., Sheng, H., Liu, X., Hua, H., Liu, X., & Zhang, Y. (2018). Human perturbation of the global phosphorus cycle: Changes and consequences. Environmental Science & Technology, 52(5), 2438-2450. doi:10.1021/acs.est.7b03910

[38] Parvage, M. M., Ulén, B., Eriksson, J., Strock, J., & Kirchmann, H. (2013). Phosphorus availability in soils amended with wheat residue char. Biology and Fertility of Soils, 49(2), 245-250. doi:10.1007/s00374-012-0746-6

[39] Hussain, S., Sharif, M., Waqas, M., Riaz, M., Khan, M. I., & Abid, M. (2021). Phosphorus and potassium nutrition for improving productivity, profitability and resource

use efficiency of wheat crop in Pakistan. Soil and Environment, 40(1), 89-96. doi:10.25252/SE/2021/213204

[40] Samreen, S., Kausar, S., & Shahzad, M. (2019). Phosphorus fertilizer application in wheat crop: A review. Agricultural Research & Technology: Open Access Journal, 21(1), 45-52. doi:10.19080/ARTOAJ.2019.21.556149

[41] Tiwari, D. D., Pandey, S. B., & Katiyar, N. K. (2015). Effects of source and rate of phosphorus application on yield and phosphorus nutrition of wheat (Triticum aestivum L.). Journal of AgriSearch, 2(3), 231-234.

[42] Singh, V., Ali, J., Seema, Kumar, A., & Chauhan, S. (2015). Productivity, nutrient uptake and economics of wheat (Triticum aestivum) under potassium and zinc nutrition. Indian Journal of Agronomy, 60(3), 426-430.

[43] Mahajan, A., Bhagat, R. M., & Gupta, R. D. (2008). Integrated nutrient management in sustainable rice-wheat cropping system for food security in India. SAARC Journal of Agriculture, 6(2), 29-32.

[44] Bar-Yosef, B. (1999). Advances in fertigation. Advances in Agronomy, 65, 1-77. doi:10.1016/S0065-2113(08)60910-4

[45] Kafkafi, U., & Kant, S. (2005). Fertigation. In D. Hillel (Ed.), Encyclopedia of Soils in the Environment (pp. 1-9). Elsevier. doi:10.1016/B0-12-348530-4/00226-2

[46] Rani, S., Rana, M. C., Choudhary, R., Kumar, S., & Sharma, S. (2019). Water, nutrient use efficiency and yield of tomato (Solanum lycopersicum L.) under drip fertigation in mulched and non-mulched conditions. Journal of Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry, 8(2), 1980-1985.

[47] Shedeed, S. I., Zaghloul, S. M., & Yassen, A. A. (2009). Effect of method and rate of fertilizer application under drip irrigation on yield and nutrient uptake by tomato. Ozean Journal of Applied Sciences, 2(2), 139-147.

[48] Hebbar, S. S., Ramachandrappa, B. K., Nanjappa, H. V., & Prabhakar, M. (2004). Studies on NPK drip fertigation in field grown tomato (Lycopersicon esculentum Mill.). European Journal of Agronomy, 21(1), 117-127. doi:10.1016/S1161-0301(03)00091-1

[49] Silber, A., Bruner, M., Kenig, E., Reshef, G., Zohar, H., Posalski, I., ... & Assouline, S. (2005). High fertigation frequency and phosphorus level: Effects on summer-grown bell pepper growth and blossom-end rot incidence. Plant and Soil, 270(1), 135-146. doi:10.1007/s11104-004-1311-3

[50] Salas, M. C., Urrestarazu, M., Valera, D., & Gómez, A. (2003). Fertigation: Concept and application in greenhouse cultivation. Revista Chapingo Serie Horticultura, 9(2), 239-245.

[51] Gul, S., Khan, M. H., Khanday, B. A., & Nabi, S. (2015). Effect of sowing methods and NPK levels on growth and yield of rainfed maize (Zea mays L.). Scientifica, 2015, 1-6. doi:10.1155/2015/198575

[52] Zotarelli, L., Dukes, M. D., & Scholberg, J. M. S. (2011). Fertilizer residence time affects nitrogen uptake efficiency and growth of sweet corn. Journal of Environmental Quality, 40(4), 1343-1351. doi:10.2134/jeq2010.0328

[53] Gianquinto, G., Orsini, F., Sambo, P., & D'Urzo, M. P. (2011). The use of diagnostic optical tools to assess nitrogen status and to guide fertilization of vegetables. HortTechnology, 21(3), 287-292. doi:10.21273/HORTTECH.21.3.287

[54] Padilla, F. M., Peña-Fleitas, M. T., Gallardo, M., & Thompson, R. B. (2014). Evaluation of optical sensor measurements of canopy reflectance and of leaf flavonols and chlorophyll contents to assess crop nitrogen status of muskmelon. European Journal of Agronomy, 58, 39-52. doi:10.1016/j.eja.2014.04.006

[55] Zhu, J., Tremblay, N., & Liang, Y. (2012). Comparing SPAD and atLEAF values for chlorophyll assessment in crop species. Canadian Journal of Soil Science, 92(4), 645-648. doi:10.4141/cjss2011-100
[56] Adamu, U. J., Almu, H., Adam, I. A., & Sani, S. A. (2015). Evaluation of nutrient composition of some cereals and legumes crops residues as compost materials. Bayero Journal of Pure and Applied Sciences, 8(2), 150-154. doi:10.4314/bajopas.v8i2.25
[57] Ding, W., Xu, X., He, P., Zhang, J., Cui, Z., & Zhou, W. (2018). Estimating regional nitrogen application rates for rice using leaf color chart and Soil Plant Analysis Development meter. Rice Science, 25(5), 263-272. doi:10.1016/j.rsci.2018.08.004
[58] Delgado, J. A., Kowalski, K., & Tebbe, C. (2013). The first Nitrogen Index app for mobile devices: Using portable technology for smart agricultural management. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 91, 121-123. doi:10.1016/j.compag.2012.12.008
[59] Reddy, K. S., Kumar, M., Maruthi, V., Umesha, B., Vijayalaxmi, & Nageswara Rao, C. V. K. (2014). Climate change analysis in southern Telangana region, Andhra Pradesh using LARS-WG model. Current Science, 107(54), 54-62.
[60] Ramanjaneyulu, A. V., Gourishankar, V., Neelima, T. L., & Shashibhushan, V. (2014). Evaluation of decision support tools for managing the farms in rainfed regions of India. Journal of Agrometeorology, 16(2), 185-190.
[61] Liu, J., Hu, T., Feng, P., Wang, L., & Yang, S. (2019). Tomato yield and water use efficiency change with various soil moisture and potassium levels during different growth stages. PloS ONE, 14(3), e0213643. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0213643
[62] Nishida, K., Kanda, E., Oishi, K., Yoshioka, T., & Akaike, Y. (2013). Suppression of nitrous oxide emission by the application of controlled-release fertilizer (CRF) in paddy fields. Soil Science and Plant Nutrition, 59(1), 69-79. doi:10.1080/00380768.2012.733924
[63] Jat, N. K., Ashok Kumar, Meena, S. R., Rana, D. S., Meena, B. P., & Rana, K. S. (2012). Influence of integrated nutrient management on the productivity, quality and soil health of maize (Zea mays)-wheat (Triticum aestivum) cropping system. Indian Journal of Agronomy, 57(4), 327-332.
[64] Raina, S. K., Thakur, B. C., Kaushal, R., Srivastava, S. K., & Moza, K. (2017). Effect of protected cultivation on growth, yield and quality of bell pepper (Capsicum annuum L.) under mid hills of Himachal Pradesh. International Journal of Bio-resource and Stress Management, 8(2), 262-268. doi:10.23910/IJBSM/2017.8.2.1823
[65] Nagavallemma, K. P., Wani, S. P., Lacroix, S., Padmaja, V. V., Vineela, C., Rao, M. B., & Sahrawat, K. L. (2004). Vermicomposting: Recycling wastes into valuable organic fertilizer. Global Theme on Agroecosystems Report No. 8. Patancheru, India: International Crops Research Institute for the Semi-Arid Tropics.
[66] Voogt, W., & van der Helm, F. P. J. (2009). Nutrient management in soil and soilless culture in the Netherlands: Towards environmental goals. In International Symposium on Soilless Culture and Hydroponics (pp. 89-102). doi:10.17660/ActaHortic.2009.843.9
[67] Mattson, N. S., & Van Iersel, M. W. (2011). Application of the "4R" nutrient stewardship concept to horticultural crops: Applying nutrients at the "right time". HortTechnology, 21(6), 667-673. doi:10.21273/HORTTECH.21.6.667
[68] Gillman, G. P., & Noble, A. (2005). Environmentally manageable fertilizers: A new approach. Environmental Quality Management, 15(2), 59-70. doi:10.1002/tqem.20081

[69] Goulding, K., Jarvis, S., & Whitmore, A. (2008). Optimizing nutrient management for farm systems. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 363(1491), 667-680. doi:10.1098/rstb.2007.2177

[70] Tilman, D., Cassman, K. G., Matson, P. A., Naylor, R., & Polasky, S. (2002). Agricultural sustainability and intensive production practices. Nature, 418(6898), 671-677. doi:10.1038/nature01014

[71] Mairura, F. S., Mugendi, D. N., Mwanje, J. I., Ramisch, J. J., Mbugua, P. K., & Chianu, J. N. (2007). Integrating scientific and farmers' evaluation of soil quality indicators in Central Kenya. Geoderma, 139(1-2), 134-143. doi:10.1016/j.geoderma.2007.01.019

[72] Biradar, C. M., Thenkabail, P. S., Noojipady, P., Li, Y., Dheeravath, V., Turral, H., ... & Cai, X. L. (2009). A global map of rainfed cropland areas (GMRCA) at the end of last millennium using remote sensing. International Journal of Applied Earth Observation and Geoinformation, 11(2), 114-129. doi:10.1016/j.jag.2008.11.002

[73] Patil, M. D., Das, B. S., Barak, E., Bhadoria, P. B. S., & Polak, A. (2017). A framework for community-based participatory research in the field of sustainable agriculture: Challenges and opportunities. Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems, 41(9-10), 987-1006. doi:10.1080/21683565.2017.1363148

[74] Singh, R. B. (2000). Environmental consequences of agricultural development: A case study from the Green Revolution state of Haryana, India. Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment, 82(1-3), 97-103. doi:10.1016/S0167-8809(00)00219-X

[75] Joshi, P. K., Jha, A. K., Wani, S. P., Sreedevi, T. K., & Shaheen, F. A. (2008). Impact of watershed program and conditions for success: A meta-analysis approach (Vol. 46). International Crops Research Institute for the Semi-Arid Tropics.

[76] Majeed, A., Muhammad, Z., & Ahmad, H. (2018). Plant growth promoting bacteria: Role in soil improvement, abiotic and biotic stress management of crops. Plant Cell Reports, 37(12), 1599-1609. doi:10.1007/s00299-018-2341-2

[77] Solanki, P., Bhargava, A., Chhipa, H., Jain, N., & Panwar, J. (2015). Nano-fertilizers and their smart delivery system. In Nanotechnologies in Food and Agriculture (pp. 81-101). Springer, Cham. doi:10.1007/978-3-319-14024-7_4

[78] Silber, A. (2005). Fertigation frequency and nutrient uptake by plants: Benefits and constraints. In International Symposium on Fertigation (pp. 35-50). doi:10.17660/ActaHortic.2005.697.2

[79] Chlingaryan, A., Sukkarieh, S., & Whelan, B. (2018). Machine learning approaches for crop yield prediction and nitrogen status estimation in precision agriculture: A review. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 151, 61-69. doi:10.1016/j.compag.2018.05.012

[80] Jongschaap, R. E., Corré, W. J., Bindraban, P. S., & Brandenburg, W. A. (2007). Claims and facts on Jatropha curcas L.: Global Jatropha curcas evaluation, breeding and propagation programme. Plant Research International (No. 158).

[81] Jayne, T. S., Mather, D., & Mghenyi, E. (2010). Principal challenges confronting smallholder agriculture in sub-Saharan Africa. World Development, 38(10), 1384-1398. doi:10.1016/j.worlddev.2010.06.002

[82] Malusà, E., Pinzari, F., & Canfora, L. (2016). Efficacy of biofertilizers: Challenges to improve crop production. In Microbial Inoculants in Sustainable Agricultural Productivity (pp. 17-40). Springer, New Delhi. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2644-4_2

[83] Braun, A. R., Jiggins, J., Röling, N., van den Berg, H., & Snijders, P. (2006). A global survey and review of farmer field school experiences (No. 579-2016-39423).

[84] Poulton, C., Dorward, A., & Kydd, J. (2010). The future of small farms: New directions for services, institutions, and intermediation. World Development, 38(10), 1413-1428. doi:10.1016/j.worlddev.2009.06.009
[85] Spielman, D. J., & Birner, R. (2008). How innovative is your agriculture? Using innovation indicators and benchmarks to strengthen national agricultural innovation systems. World Bank.
[86] Davis, K., Nkonya, E., Kato, E., Mekonnen, D. A., Odendo, M., Miiro, R., & Nkuba, J. (2012). Impact of farmer field schools on agricultural productivity and poverty in East Africa. World Development, 40(2), 402-413. doi:10.1016/j.worlddev.2011.05.019

CHAPTER - 17

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Agricultural Entomology

[1]Sujatha G S, 1Katta Subramanya Sai Teja and [3]Dharanikota Lalithambica Devi

[1]MSc. Scholar, Department of Entomology Indian Agriculture Research Institute, New Delhi - 110012

[2]Phd. Scholar, Department of Entomology, Dr. Rajendra Prasad Central Agricultural University

Pin code: 848125

[3]Phd. Scholar, Department of Entomology, G B PANT UNIVERSITY OF AGRICULTURE AND TECHNOLOGY (263145)

Corresponding Author
Sujatha G S
sujigowda2709@gmail.com

Abstract

Protected cultivation has become an increasingly important aspect of modern agriculture worldwide, particularly in Asia and India. This chapter explores the role of agricultural entomology in protected cultivation systems, focusing on the management of insect pests and the promotion of beneficial insects. The global context of protected cultivation is discussed, highlighting the significance of this approach in meeting the growing demand for food while minimizing the environmental impact of agricultural practices. The chapter then narrows its focus to Asia and India, where protected cultivation has seen rapid growth in recent years. The unique challenges and opportunities presented by the region's diverse climatic conditions, crop varieties, and pest complexes are examined. The chapter emphasizes the importance of integrated pest management (IPM) strategies in protected cultivation, combining cultural, biological, and chemical control methods to maintain pest populations below economic thresholds. The potential of innovative technologies, such as remote sensing, machine learning, and robotics, in enhancing the efficiency and sustainability of pest management in protected cultivation is also explored. Finally, the chapter discusses the future prospects of agricultural entomology in protected cultivation, highlighting the need for continued research, extension, and policy support to promote the adoption of best practices and ensure the long-term viability of these systems.

Keywords: protected cultivation, agricultural entomology, integrated pest management, beneficial insects, smart agriculture

Protected cultivation, which involves the use of greenhouses, polytunnels, and other structures to create controlled environments for crop production, has emerged as a key strategy for meeting the growing global demand for food while minimizing the environmental impact of agricultural practices [1]. By allowing farmers to optimize growing conditions, protect crops from adverse weather events, and extend the growing season, protected cultivation has the potential to significantly increase crop yields and quality [2]. However, the unique environmental conditions created by protected cultivation systems also present distinct challenges for the management of insect pests [3]. In this chapter, we explore the role of agricultural entomology in protected cultivation, focusing on the global context, the specific challenges and opportunities in Asia and India, and the future prospects for this field.

1. Global Context of Protected Cultivation

2.1. Worldwide Adoption of Protected Cultivation

Protected cultivation has seen rapid growth worldwide in recent decades, with an estimated 3.2 million hectares under protected cultivation globally as of 2019 [4]. This growth has been driven by a range of factors, including increasing demand for high-value horticultural crops, the need to adapt to climate change and extreme weather events, and the desire to reduce the environmental impact of agricultural practices [5]. Table 1 presents the area under protected cultivation in selected countries worldwide.

Table 1. Area under protected cultivation in selected countries worldwide [4].

Country	Area (hectares)
China	1,200,000
South Korea	57,444
Japan	49,049
Spain	35,489
Turkey	35,000
Italy	26,000
Mexico	25,000
Netherlands	10,200
United States	8,425
France	7,500

2.2. Benefits of Protected Cultivation

Protected cultivation offers numerous benefits compared to traditional open-field agriculture. By creating a controlled environment, protected cultivation allows farmers to optimize growing conditions for specific crops, leading to higher yields and improved quality [6]. Protected cultivation also enables the production of crops outside of their natural growing seasons, thus providing consumers with year-round access to fresh produce [7]. Furthermore, protected cultivation can help to reduce the environmental impact of agriculture by minimizing the use of water, fertilizers, and pesticides, and by allowing for the recycling of resources within the system [8].

2.3. Challenges of Protected Cultivation: Despite its many benefits, protected cultivation also presents unique challenges, particularly in the management of insect pests. The controlled environment of protected cultivation systems can create ideal conditions for the rapid growth and spread of certain pest populations, leading to significant crop losses if left unchecked [9]. The limited space and high crop density in protected cultivation systems can also make it more difficult to implement certain pest management strategies, such as crop rotation and the use of natural enemies [10]. Additionally, the intensive nature of protected cultivation can lead to the development of pesticide resistance in pest populations, further complicating pest management efforts [11].

3. Protected Cultivation in Asia and India

4. 3.1. Growth of Protected Cultivation in Asia

Asia has seen significant growth in protected cultivation in recent years, with countries such as China, Japan, and South Korea leading the way [12]. The region's diverse climatic conditions, ranging from tropical to temperate zones, have allowed for the production of a wide variety of crops under protected cultivation, including vegetables, fruits, and ornamental plants [13]. Table 2 presents the area under protected cultivation in selected Asian countries.

Table 2. Area under protected cultivation in selected Asian countries [12].

Country	Area (hectares)
China	1,200,000
South Korea	57,444
Japan	49,049
Turkey	35,000
India	25,000
Iran	12,000
Taiwan	5,876
Indonesia	5,000
Thailand	3,000
Malaysia	1,000

3.2. Protected Cultivation in India

India has emerged as a significant player in protected cultivation, with an estimated 25,000 hectares under protected cultivation as of 2019 [14]. The country's diverse agro-climatic zones, ranging from temperate to tropical regions, have allowed for the production of a wide range of crops under protected cultivation, including vegetables, fruits, and flowers [15]. The Indian government has also actively promoted the adoption of protected cultivation through various schemes and initiatives, such as the National Horticulture Mission and the Mission for Integrated Development of Horticulture [16].

3.3. Challenges and Opportunities in Asia and India

The growth of protected cultivation in Asia and India presents both challenges and opportunities for agricultural entomology. The region's diverse climatic conditions and crop varieties require tailored pest management strategies that account for local ecological and socio-economic factors [17]. The high cost of establishing and maintaining protected cultivation systems can also be a barrier to adoption, particularly for small-scale farmers [18]. However, the growing demand for high-value crops and the increasing awareness of the benefits of protected cultivation among farmers and policymakers present significant opportunities for the expansion of this approach in the region [19].

4. Integrated Pest Management in Protected Cultivation

4.1. Principles of Integrated Pest Management: Integrated pest management (IPM) is a holistic approach to pest control that combines multiple tactics, such as cultural, biological, and chemical methods, to maintain pest populations below economic thresholds [20]. IPM emphasizes the use of preventive measures, such as sanitation and crop rotation, and the conservation of natural enemies, such as predators and parasitoids, to minimize the need for chemical interventions [21]. When chemical control is necessary, IPM advocates for the judicious use of selective, low-risk pesticides to minimize impacts on non-target organisms and the environment [22].

4.2. Cultural Control Methods: Cultural control methods involve the manipulation of the crop environment to create conditions that are less favorable for pest development and more conducive to the growth of healthy plants [23].

Examples of cultural control methods in protected cultivation include:

- Sanitation: Regular removal of infected plant material, debris, and weeds to reduce pest harbourage and reproduction [24].
- Crop rotation: Alternating crops with different pest susceptibilities to break pest cycles and reduce the buildup of pest populations [25].
- Plant spacing: Adjusting plant spacing to improve air circulation and reduce humidity levels, which can favor the development of certain pests and diseases [26].
- Irrigation management: Avoiding overhead irrigation and ensuring proper drainage to reduce the incidence of moisture-dependent pests and diseases [27].

Table 3. Common cultural control methods in protected cultivation [23, 24, 25, 26, 27].

Method	Description
Sanitation	Regular removal of infected plant material, debris, and weeds to reduce pest harbourage and reproduction
Crop rotation	Alternating crops with different pest susceptibilities to break pest cycles and reduce the buildup of pest populations
Plant spacing	Adjusting plant spacing to improve air circulation and reduce humidity levels, which can favor the development of certain pests and diseases
Irrigation management	Avoiding overhead irrigation and ensuring proper drainage to reduce the incidence of moisture-dependent pests and diseases

4.3. Biological Control Methods

Biological control involves the use of living organisms, such as predators, parasitoids, and pathogens, to suppress pest populations [28]. In protected cultivation, biological control agents can be introduced through augmentative releases, where large numbers of commercially produced natural enemies are released into the crop environment, or through conservation biological control, where the crop environment is managed to attract and sustain natural enemy populations [29]. Table 4 presents examples of common biological control agents used in protected cultivation.

Table 4. Common biological control agents used in protected cultivation [28, 29].

Pest	Biological Control Agent
Aphids	- Ladybird beetles (Coccinellidae) - Green lacewings (Chrysopidae) - Parasitic wasps (Aphidiinae)
Whiteflies	- Parasitic wasps (Encarsia formosa, Eretmocerus eremicus) - Predatory mites (Amblyseius swirskii) - Fungal entomopathogens (Beauveria bassiana, Isaria fumosorosea)
Spider mites	- Predatory mites (Phytoseiulus persimilis, Neoseiulus californicus) - Predatory bugs (Orius insidiosus, Macrolophus pygmaeus) - Fungal entomopathogens (Metarhizium anisopliae)
Thrips	- Predatory mites (Amblyseius cucumeris, Amblyseius swirskii) - Predatory bugs (Orius insidiosus, Orius laevigatus) - Entomopathogenic nematodes (Steinernema feltiae)
Lepidopteran larvae	- Egg parasitoids (Trichogramma spp.) - Larval parasitoids (Cotesia spp., Bracon spp.) - Entomopathogenic nematodes (Steinernema carpocapsae, Heterorhabditis bacteriophora) - Baculoviruses (e.g., Spodoptera exigua

	nucleopolyhedrovirus)
Fungus gnats and shore flies	- Predatory mites (Hypoaspis miles, Stratiolaelaps scimitus) - Entomopathogenic nematodes (Steinernema feltiae) - Bacillus thuringiensis subsp. israelensis (Bti) - Fungal entomopathogens (Metarhizium anisopliae)

4.4. Chemical Control Methods: While IPM emphasizes the use of non-chemical methods, selective and judicious use of pesticides may be necessary when other control measures fail to maintain pest populations below economic thresholds [30]. In protected cultivation, the unique environmental conditions and the potential for rapid pest population growth can make chemical control challenging [31]. Table 5 presents examples of common pesticides used in protected cultivation.

Table 5. Common pesticides used in protected cultivation [30, 31].

Pesticide Class	**Examples**
Insecticides	*- Pyrethroids (e.g., bifenthrin, lambda-cyhalothrin) - Neonicotinoids (e.g., imidacloprid, thiamethoxam) - Spinosyns (e.g., spinosad, spinetoram) - Avermectins (e.g., abamectin, emamectin benzoate) - Diamides (e.g., chlorantraniliprole, cyantraniliprole) - Insect growth regulators (e.g., buprofezin, pyriproxyfen)*
Fungicides	*- Triazoles (e.g., difenoconazole, myclobutanil) - Strobilurins (e.g., azoxystrobin, pyraclostrobin) - Benzimidazoles (e.g., thiophanate-methyl) - Carboxamides (e.g., boscalid, fluopyram) - Dithiocarbamates (e.g., mancozeb) - Copper-based fungicides (e.g., copper hydroxide, copper oxychloride)*
Acaricides	*- Abamectin - Bifenazate - Etoxazole - Fenazaquin - Hexythiazox - Spiromesifen*
Biopesticides	*- Bacillus thuringiensis (Bt) - Beauveria bassiana - Metarhizium anisopliae - Isaria fumosorosea - Azadirachtin (neem extract) - Pyrethrins*

When using pesticides in protected cultivation, it is essential to follow label instructions carefully, ensure proper application techniques, and monitor for the development of pesticide resistance in pest populations [32]. Integrating chemical control with other IPM tactics, such as cultural and biological control, can help to minimize the risk of resistance development and reduce the overall reliance on pesticides [33].

5. Innovative Technologies for Pest Management in Protected Cultivation

5.1. Remote Sensing and Monitoring

Remote sensing technologies, such as satellite imagery, unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs), and wireless sensor networks, can provide valuable information for pest management in protected cultivation [34]. These technologies can help to detect and monitor pest infestations, assess crop health, and guide targeted interventions [35]. For example, high-resolution multispectral imagery from UAVs can be used to identify areas of crop stress and potential pest hotspots, allowing for early detection and rapid response [36].

5.2. Machine Learning and Artificial Intelligence

Machine learning and artificial intelligence (AI) techniques can be applied to the vast amounts of data generated by remote sensing and monitoring systems to improve pest management decision-making in protected cultivation [37]. These techniques can help to identify patterns and relationships in the data that may not be apparent to human observers, enabling more accurate and timely predictions of pest outbreaks [38]. For example, machine learning algorithms can be trained to recognize specific pest species or damage symptoms from images, allowing for automated pest detection and classification [39].

5.3. Robotics and Automation Robotics and automation technologies can help to improve the efficiency and precision of pest management tasks in protected cultivation [40]. Autonomous robots equipped with sensors and sprayers can be used for targeted pesticide application, reducing human exposure and minimizing off-target impacts [41]. Robotic systems can also be used for tasks such as crop scouting, data collection, and the release of biological control agents [42].

Future Prospects and Challenges

6.1. Adoption of IPM in Protected Cultivation

Despite the proven benefits of IPM in protected cultivation, the adoption of this approach remains limited in many regions, particularly in developing countries [43]. Factors such as lack of awareness, limited access to information and resources, and the perceived complexity of IPM strategies can hinder widespread adoption [44]. Efforts to promote IPM in protected cultivation should focus on education, training, and the development of user-friendly decision support tools to help farmers navigate the complexities of pest management [45].

6.2. Climate Change and Pest

Dynamics Climate change is expected to have significant impacts on pest dynamics in protected cultivation systems [46]. Rising temperatures, changes in precipitation patterns, and increased frequency of extreme weather events can alter the distribution, abundance, and behavior of both pest and beneficial species [47]. For example, warmer temperatures may allow certain pest species to complete more generations per year, leading to increased population pressures [48]. Agricultural entomologists must continue to study the effects of climate change on pest dynamics in protected cultivation and develop adaptive management strategies to mitigate potential risks [49].

6.3. Transboundary Pest Threats

The globalization of trade and travel has increased the risk of introduction and spread of invasive pest species, which can pose significant threats to protected cultivation systems [50]. Transboundary pests, such as the tomato leafminer (Tuta absoluta) and the South American tomato moth (Tuta absoluta), have caused substantial economic losses in protected cultivation worldwide [51]. Strengthening international cooperation, surveillance, and rapid response mechanisms is crucial for preventing and managing transboundary pest incursions in protected cultivation [52].

6.4. Integration of Protected Cultivation and IPM into Sustainable Agricultural Systems

Protected cultivation and IPM should be viewed as integral components of sustainable agricultural systems, rather than standalone approaches [53]. Integrating protected cultivation with other sustainable practices, such as conservation agriculture, agroforestry, and crop diversification, can help to enhance the overall resilience and sustainability of farming systems [54]. Agricultural entomologists have a key role to play in developing and promoting integrated pest management strategies that are compatible with these broader sustainable agriculture goals [55].

7. Conclusion

Agricultural entomology plays a crucial role in the sustainable management of pest populations in protected cultivation systems. By combining cultural, biological, and chemical control methods within an integrated pest management framework, agricultural entomologists can help farmers to optimize crop yields, reduce reliance on pesticides, and minimize the environmental impact of protected cultivation. The adoption of innovative technologies, such as remote sensing, machine learning, and robotics, can further enhance the efficiency and precision of pest management in these systems. However, significant challenges remain, including the need for greater awareness and adoption of IPM practices, the impacts of climate change on pest dynamics, and the threat of transboundary pest incursions. Addressing these challenges will require continued research, extension, and policy support to promote the integration of protected cultivation and IPM into sustainable agricultural systems worldwide.

References:

[1] Baudoin, W., Nono-Womdim, R., Lutaladio, N., Hodder, A., Castilla, N., Leonardi, C., ... & Qaryouti, M. (2013). Good agricultural practices for greenhouse vegetable crops: Principles for Mediterranean climate areas. FAO Plant Production and Protection Paper 217.

[2] Shamshiri, R. R., Jones, J. W., Thorp, K. R., Ahmad, D., Man, H. C., & Taheri, S. (2018). Review of optimum temperature, humidity, and vapour pressure deficit for microclimate evaluation and control in greenhouse cultivation of tomato: a review. International Agrophysics, 32(2), 287-302.

[3] Pérez-Hedo, M., & Urbaneja, A. (2016). The zoophytophagous predator Nesidiocoris tenuis: a successful but controversial biocontrol agent in tomato crops. In Advances in Insect Control and Resistance Management (pp. 121-138). Springer, Cham.

[4] Ghosh, S. K., & Aditya, P. K. (2019). Protected cultivation in India: Past, present and future. In Protected Cultivation and Smart Agriculture (pp. 1-12). New India Publishing Agency.

[5] Jiang, W. J., & Yu, H. J. (2016). Current status, future trends and suggestions for development of protected horticulture in China. Journal of Nanjing Agricultural University, 39(6), 883-888.

[6] Tiwari, G. N. (2017). Greenhouse technology for controlled environment. Alpha Science International Ltd.

[7] Sabir, N., & Singh, B. (2013). Protected cultivation of vegetables in global arena: A review. Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences, 83(2), 123-135.

[8] Gruda, N., Bisbis, M., & Tanny, J. (2019). Impacts of protected vegetable cultivation on climate change and adaptation strategies for cleaner production–A review. Journal of Cleaner Production, 225, 324-339.

[9] Bale, J. S., Van Lenteren, J. C., & Bigler, F. (2008). Biological control and sustainable food production. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 363(1492), 761-776.

[10] Van Lenteren, J. C. (2012). The state of commercial augmentative biological control: plenty of natural enemies, but a frustrating lack of uptake. BioControl, 57(1), 1-20.

[11] Guedes, R. N. C., Smagghe, G., Stark, J. D., & Desneux, N. (2016). Pesticide-induced stress in arthropod pests for optimized integrated pest management programs. Annual Review of Entomology, 61, 43-62.

[12] Cheng, Y., Li, L., Li, X., & Liu, Y. (2021). Integrated control of major diseases and insect pests in protected vegetable cultivation in China. Frontiers in Plant Science, 12, 632897.

[13] Cho, M. C., Kim, H. J., & Shin, H. D. (2014). First report of powdery mildew caused by Podosphaera xanthii on sweet pepper in Korea. Plant Disease, 98(11), 1586-1586.

[14] Guleria, A., & Devi, S. (2018). Pest management in protected cultivation: A review. Journal of Entomology and Zoology Studies, 6(2), 1514-1519.

[15] Reddy, P. P. (2016). Protected cultivation. In Sustainable Crop Protection under Protected Cultivation (pp. 1-10). Springer, Singapore.

[16] Government of India. (2018). Mission for Integrated Development of Horticulture: Operational Guidelines. Ministry of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare, New Delhi.

[17] Gogi, M. D., Arif, M. J., Asif, M., Abdin, Z. U., Bashir, M. H., Arshad, M., ... & Sial, M. A. (2012). Impact of sowing dates and varieties on the infestation of Bemisia tabaci on cotton crop. Pakistan Entomologist, 34(2), 87-92.

[18] Sharma, D., Perez, M. R., Sharma, S., & Meena, S. R. (2015). Protected cultivation for enhancing crop productivity in Himachal Pradesh. Himachal Journal of Agricultural Research, 41(2), 1-10.

[19] Sood, A. K., & Kumar, N. (2015). Economic analysis of tomato production under protected and open field conditions in Himachal Pradesh. Indian Journal of Horticulture, 72(1), 101-106.

[20] Barzman, M., Bàrberi, P., Birch, A. N. E., Boonekamp, P., Dachbrodt-Saaydeh, S., Graf, B., ... & Lamichhane, J. R. (2015). Eight principles of integrated pest management. Agronomy for Sustainable Development, 35(4), 1199-1215.

[21] Dara, S. K. (2019). The new integrated pest management paradigm for the modern age. Journal of Integrated Pest Management, 10(1), 12.

[22] Stenberg, J. A. (2017). A conceptual framework for integrated pest management. Trends in Plant Science, 22(9), 759-769.

[23] Gavrilescu, M., & Chisti, Y. (2005). Biotechnology—a sustainable alternative for chemical industry. Biotechnology Advances, 23(7-8), 471-499.

[24] Gill, H. K., & Garg, H. (2014). Pesticides: environmental impacts and management strategies. In Pesticides-Toxic Aspects. IntechOpen.

[25] Khan, M., Mahmood, H. Z., & Damalas, C. A. (2015). Pesticide use and risk perceptions among farmers in the cotton belt of Punjab, Pakistan. Crop Protection, 67, 184-190.

[26] Pretty, J., & Bharucha, Z. P. (2015). Integrated pest management for sustainable intensification of agriculture in Asia and Africa. Insects, 6(1), 152-182.

[27] Abrol, D. P., & Shankar, U. (2012). Integrated pest management: principles and practice. CABI.

[28] Van Driesche, R., Hoddle, M., & Center, T. (2008). Control of pests and weeds by natural enemies: an introduction to biological control. John Wiley & Sons.

[29] Heimpel, G. E., & Mills, N. J. (2017). Biological control. Cambridge University Press.

[30] Damalas, C. A., & Eleftherohorinos, I. G. (2011). Pesticide exposure, safety issues, and risk assessment indicators. International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health, 8(5), 1402-1419.

[31] Hillocks, R. J. (2012). Farming with fewer pesticides: EU pesticide review and resulting challenges for UK agriculture. Crop Protection, 31(1), 85-93.

[32] Sparks, T. C., & Nauen, R. (2015). IRAC: Mode of action classification and insecticide resistance management. Pesticide Biochemistry and Physiology, 121, 122-128.

[33] Bass, C., Denholm, I., Williamson, M. S., & Nauen, R. (2015). The global status of insect resistance to neonicotinoid insecticides. Pesticide Biochemistry and Physiology, 121, 78-87.

[34] Mahlein, A. K. (2016). Plant disease detection by imaging sensors–parallels and specific demands for precision agriculture and plant phenotyping. Plant Disease, 100(2), 241-251.

[35] Prabhakar, M., Prasad, Y. G., & Rao, M. N. (2012). Remote sensing of biotic stress in crop plants and its applications for pest management. In Crop stress and its management: Perspectives and strategies (pp. 517-545). Springer, Dordrecht.

[36] Zhang, J., Huang, Y., Pu, R., Gonzalez-Moreno, P., Yuan, L., Wu, K., & Huang, W. (2019). Monitoring plant diseases and pests through remote sensing technology: A review. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 165, 104943.

[37] Liakos, K. G., Busato, P., Moshou, D., Pearson, S., & Bochtis, D. (2018). Machine learning in agriculture: A review. Sensors, 18(8), 2674.

[38] Kamath, R., Balachandra, M., & Prabhu, S. (2019). Paddy crop disease classification using color and texture feature extraction with SVM classifier. Advances in Intelligent Systems and Computing, 758, 341-350.

[39] Ferentinos, K. P. (2018). Deep learning models for plant disease detection and diagnosis. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 145, 311-318.

[40] Shamshiri, R. R., Weltzien, C., Hameed, I. A., Yule, I. J., Grift, T. E., Balasundram, S. K., ... & Chowdhary, G. (2018). Research and development in agricultural robotics: A perspective of digital farming. International Journal of Agricultural and Biological Engineering, 11(4), 1-14.

[41] Oberti, R., Marchi, M., Tirelli, P., Calcante, A., Iriti, M., & Tona, E. (2016). Selective spraying of grapevines for disease control using a modular agricultural robot. Biosystems Engineering, 146, 203-215.

[42] Bechar, A., & Vigneault, C. (2016). Agricultural robots for field operations: Concepts and components. Biosystems Engineering, 149, 94-111.

[43] Parsa, S., Morse, S., Bonifacio, A., Chancellor, T. C., Condori, B., Crespo-Pérez, V., ... & Dangles, O. (2014). Obstacles to integrated pest management adoption in developing countries. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 111(10), 3889-3894.

[44] Zhang, W., Kato, E., Bianchi, F., Bhandary, P., Gort, G., & van der Werf, W. (2018). Farmers' perceptions of crop pest severity in Nigeria are associated with landscape, agronomic and socio-economic factors. Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment, 259, 159-167.

[45] Lamichhane, J. R., Aubertot, J. N., Begg, G., Birch, A. N. E., Boonekamp, P., Dachbrodt-Saaydeh, S., ... & Messéan, A. (2016). Networking of integrated pest management: A powerful approach to address common challenges in agriculture. Crop Protection, 89, 139-151.

[46] Bebber, D. P., Ramotowski, M. A., & Gurr, S. J. (2013). Crop pests and pathogens move polewards in a warming world. Nature Climate Change, 3(11), 985-988.

[47] Sutherst, R. W. (2014). Pest species distribution modelling: origins and lessons from history. Biological Invasions, 16(2), 239-256.

[48] Mwalusepo, S., Tonnang, H. E., Massawe, E. S., Okuku, G. O., Khadioli, N., Johansson, T., ... & Le Ru, B. P. (2015). Predicting the impact of temperature change on the future distribution of maize stem borers and their natural enemies along East African mountain gradients using phenology models. PloS One, 10(6), e0130427.

[49] Lehmann, P., Ammunét, T., Barton, M., Battisti, A., Eigenbrode, S. D., Jepsen, J. U., ... & Björkman, C. (2020). Complex responses of global insect pests to climate change. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment, 18(3), 141-150.

[50] Paini, D. R., Sheppard, A. W., Cook, D. C., De Barro, P. J., Worner, S. P., & Thomas, M. B. (2016). Global threat to agriculture from invasive species. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 113(27), 7575-7579.

[51] Biondi, A., Guedes, R. N. C., Wan, F. H., & Desneux, N. (2018). Ecology, worldwide spread, and management of the invasive South American tomato pinworm, Tuta absoluta: past, present, and future. Annual Review of Entomology, 63, 239-258.

[52] Bacon, S. J., Aebi, A., Calanca, P., & Bacher, S. (2014). Quarantine arthropod invasions in Europe: the role of climate, hosts and propagule pressure. Diversity and Distributions, 20(1), 84-94.

[53] Pretty, J., Benton, T. G., Bharucha, Z. P., Dang, L. V., Flora, C. B., Godfray, H. C. J., ... & Wratten, S. (2018). Global assessment of agricultural system redesign for sustainable intensification. Nature Sustainability, 1(8), 441-446.

[54] Wezel, A., Casagrande, M., Celette, F., Vian, J. F., Ferrer, A., & Peigné, J. (2014). Agroecological practices for sustainable agriculture. A review. Agronomy for Sustainable Development, 34(1), 1-20.

[55] Bommarco, R., Kleijn, D., & Potts, S. G. (2013). Ecological intensification: harnessing ecosystem services for food security. Trends in Ecology & Evolution, 28(4), 230-238.

CHAPTER - 18

ISBN:- 978-81-973379-0-1

Advances in Agricultural Engineering

[1]Amit Kumar Pandey and [2]Ashutosh Singh

Mandan Bharti Agriculture College, Agwanpur, Saharsa, Bihar

Corresponding Author
Amit Kumar Pandey
amitpandeybau@gmail.com

Abstract

Protected cultivation, including the use of greenhouses, high tunnels, and other controlled environment systems, has become increasingly important for modern agriculture around the world. Advances in agricultural engineering have enabled growers to optimize environmental conditions, automate systems, improve resource use efficiency, and increase crop quality and yields in these protected cultivation systems. This chapter provides an overview of the latest technological developments and trends in agricultural engineering for protected cultivation globally, in Asia, and in India specifically. Key areas of focus include greenhouse design and materials, climate control systems, irrigation and fertigation, robotics and automation, sensors and control systems, and artificial intelligence applications. The adoption of protected cultivation is expanding rapidly in many regions, but there are also challenges around costs, complexity, and scaling these systems. Ongoing research and development is focused on making these technologies more affordable, accessible, and adaptable to local contexts. India has emerged as a major hub for protected cultivation in Asia, with government initiatives and private sector investments driving significant growth in recent years. With its diverse agro-climatic conditions and strong agricultural research capabilities, India is well-positioned to be a global leader in developing and implementing cutting-edge protected cultivation solutions going forward.

Keywords: Controlled Environment Agriculture, Greenhouses, Hydroponics, Precision Farming, Sustainable Intensification

1. Introduction Protected cultivation, also known as controlled environment agriculture (CEA), refers to a range of technologies and practices used to grow crops in greenhouses, high tunnels, and other structures that provide some level of control over the growing environment. This approach offers numerous advantages over open field cultivation, including:

- Extended growing seasons and year-round production
- Protection from adverse weather, pests, and diseases
- Optimization of plant growth conditions
- Improved resource use efficiency (water, nutrients, energy, etc.)
- Increased yields and crop quality
- Reduced reliance on agrochemicals

In recent decades, advances in agricultural engineering have transformed the possibilities for protected cultivation, enabling increasingly sophisticated environmental control, automation, and data-driven decision making. From basic passive solar greenhouses to high-tech vertical farming systems, there is now a wide spectrum of protected cultivation options to suit different crops, climates, and contexts around the world.

The global market for protected cultivation is growing rapidly, driven by factors such as population growth, urbanization, climate change, and rising demand for high-value horticultural products. According to market research, the global greenhouse horticulture market is expected to reach $50.5 billion by 2027, with a CAGR of 8.8% from 2020 to 2027 [1]. Asia-Pacific is the fastest growing region, with countries like China and India investing heavily in protected cultivation infrastructure and technologies.

2. Advances in Greenhouse Design and Materials

Greenhouses are the most common type of protected cultivation structure, consisting of a frame covered with a transparent or translucent material that allows sunlight to enter while trapping heat and controlling other environmental parameters. Greenhouse designs can range from simple hoop houses to large-scale venlo-type structures, depending on the specific requirements of the crop and climate.

2.1 Greenhouse frames and coverings

One key area of innovation in greenhouse engineering is the development of stronger, lighter, and more durable frame materials. While wood and steel have been the traditional materials used for greenhouse construction, there is growing use of aluminum, composite plastics, and other materials that offer advantages such as corrosion resistance, thermal insulation, and ease of assembly [2]. For example, the Indian company Aeron Systems has developed a modular aluminum frame system for greenhouses that is lightweight, rust-proof, and can be easily customized for different sizes and configurations [3].

The choice of covering material is also crucial for the performance and efficiency of a greenhouse. The ideal covering maximizes light transmission while providing good thermal insulation, condensation control, and durability. Common covering materials include glass, polyethylene film, polycarbonate sheets, and ETFE (ethylene tetrafluoroethylene) membrane. Advances in material science have led to the development of new covering options with improved properties, such as:

- Anti-reflective and light diffusing coatings to increase light transmission
- NIR (near infrared) blocking films to reduce heat load
- UV blocking films to protect against insect pests and plant diseases
- Fluorescent films that convert UV light to PAR (photosynthetically active radiation)
- Self-cleaning films with hydrophobic/hydrophilic properties

Table 1. Properties of common greenhouse covering materials

Material	**Light Transmission (%)**	**U-Value (W/m2K)**	**Lifespan (years)**	**Cost ($/m2)**
Glass	88-93	5.8-6.3	30+	10-30
Polyethylene film	80-95	5.7-7.6	3-4	1-3
Polycarbonate sheet	75-85	2.5-3.5	10-15	10-20
ETFE membrane	90-95	2.6-2.9	25-30	30-100

Source: [4][5]

2.2 Natural ventilation and passive cooling

In addition to the frame and covering, the design of a greenhouse should consider features for natural ventilation and passive cooling to reduce energy costs for mechanical cooling. This includes elements such as roof vents, side vents, roll-up walls, and insect screens that allow hot air to escape and cool air to enter the greenhouse. A study in India found that naturally ventilated greenhouses with insect screens and fogging systems were able to maintain temperatures within the optimal range for tomato growth during summer months [6].

Another passive cooling strategy is the use of shade nets or thermal screens to reduce heat and light intensity inside the greenhouse. Retractable shade nets can be deployed during periods of high irradiation to prevent overheating and photo-inhibition of plants. A trial in Indonesia showed that using 50% black shade nets increased lettuce yields by 60-80% compared to unshaded greenhouses [7].

Emerging technologies such as thermochromic and photochromic materials, which change their optical properties in response to temperature or light levels, respectively, could enable "smart" greenhouses that automatically adjust shading and ventilation based on ambient conditions [8]. While still in the research phase, these adaptive materials have the potential to greatly improve the energy efficiency and productivity of protected cultivation systems.

3. Climate Control Systems

Maintaining optimal environmental conditions is critical for maximizing crop growth and quality in protected cultivation. Key parameters that need to be controlled include temperature, humidity, light, and CO2 levels. Advances in climate control technologies are enabling more precise, efficient, and automated management of these variables in greenhouses and other CEA systems.

3.1 Heating and cooling Heating is often required to maintain suitable temperatures for crop growth, especially in colder climates or during winter months. Traditionally, greenhouses have been heated using fossil fuel-based systems such as natural gas, oil, or propane boilers. However, there is growing adoption of renewable heating options such as geothermal, biomass, and solar thermal systems that can reduce energy costs and emissions [9].

Geothermal heating involves circulating water through underground pipes to extract heat from the earth, which maintains a stable temperature year-round. This heat can then be transferred to the greenhouse via heat exchangers. While geothermal systems have high upfront costs, they can provide a reliable and sustainable source of heating for large-scale greenhouses. In Iceland, a country with abundant geothermal resources, over 90% of the heating demand for greenhouses is met by geothermal energy [10].

Cooling is also important for maintaining optimal growing conditions, especially in hot and humid tropical regions. Evaporative cooling, which uses the principle of water evaporation to cool air, is a common and energy-efficient method used in greenhouses. However, traditional pad-and-fan evaporative cooling systems can have limitations in terms of cooling capacity and uniformity. Researchers in India have developed an improved design called the "Fad-Fan-Pad" system, which combines fogging and evaporative pads to achieve more uniform cooling and temperature control in naturally ventilated greenhouses [11]. Another cooling technology that is gaining attention is the use of heat pumps, which can provide both heating and cooling functions in a single system. Heat pumps work by transferring heat from one medium (air, water, or ground) to another using a refrigeration cycle. In cooling mode, heat pumps can extract heat from the greenhouse air and reject it outside, while in heating mode, they can extract heat from the outside air or ground and transfer it into the greenhouse. A simulation study conducted for Indian climatic conditions found that a ground-source heat pump system could maintain desirable greenhouse temperatures year-round with 30-50% energy savings compared to conventional heating and cooling systems [12].

3.2 Humidity control

Relative humidity (RH) is another critical factor that affects plant growth, disease incidence, and product quality in protected cultivation. The optimal RH range for most crops is between 50-80%, but greenhouse humidity can often exceed these levels due to plant transpiration and evaporative cooling.

Dehumidification is therefore necessary to prevent condensation, fungal growth, and physiological disorders associated with high humidity.

Traditional dehumidification methods include ventilation (exchanging indoor air with drier outdoor air) and condensation dehumidification (using a cold surface to condense moisture from the air). However, these methods can be energy-intensive and may not be effective in hot and humid climates. Researchers are exploring alternative dehumidification technologies such as desiccant dehumidification, which uses hygroscopic materials (e.g. silica gel, zeolites) to absorb moisture from the air. A study in Thailand found that a solid desiccant dehumidification system using silica gel could effectively control humidity in a greenhouse while consuming 20-40% less energy than a conventional refrigeration dehumidifier [13].

Another promising approach is the use of hygroscopic porous materials, such as porous ceramics or hydrogels, which can passively regulate humidity by absorbing moisture when RH is high and releasing it when RH is low. A recent study in China demonstrated that using hygroscopic porous ceramic pipes in a greenhouse could maintain RH within the optimal range of 60-80% without any additional energy input [14]. Such passive humidity control materials could be integrated into greenhouse designs to provide a low-cost and sustainable solution for humidity management.

3.3 Lighting and shading

Supplemental lighting is often used in greenhouses to extend the growing season, increase yields, and improve crop quality. High-intensity discharge (HID) lamps, such as high-pressure sodium (HPS) and metal halide (MH) lamps, have been the traditional choice for greenhouse lighting due to their high output and efficiency. However, recent advances in light-emitting diode (LED) technology have made LEDs an increasingly popular option for protected cultivation.

LEDs offer several advantages over HID lamps, including:

- Lower energy consumption and heat output
- Longer lifespan (up to 50,000 hours)

- Narrow spectrum output that can be optimized for different crops and growth stages
- Ability to control light intensity and photoperiod
- Compact size and easy installation

Studies have shown that using LED lighting in greenhouses can increase yields, improve crop quality, and reduce energy costs compared to HID lamps. For example, a study on greenhouse tomato production in Japan found that using red and blue LED lights increased yield by 27% and reduced energy consumption by 40% compared to HPS lamps [15]. Another study in China showed that using LED lighting in a strawberry greenhouse increased fruit yield by 33% and improved fruit quality parameters such as firmness, sugar content, and vitamin C levels [16].

In addition to supplemental lighting, managing light levels through shading is also important in greenhouses, especially in hot and sunny climates. As mentioned earlier, retractable shade nets or thermal screens can be used to reduce heat and light intensity during periods of high irradiation. However, traditional manually operated shading systems can be labor-intensive and may not respond quickly enough to changing weather conditions.

Automated shading systems using sensors and control algorithms can provide more precise and responsive shading control in greenhouses. For instance, a study in Israel developed a dynamic shading system using motorized retractable screens and a computer model that optimizes the deployment of the screens based on real-time measurements of solar radiation, temperature, and humidity [17]. The system was able to maintain optimal light and temperature conditions for lettuce growth while reducing water use by 30% compared to a conventional static shading system.

Another innovative approach to greenhouse shading is the use of smart glass or electrochromic glass, which can change its opacity in response to an electric current. By applying a low voltage, the glass can switch from transparent to opaque, allowing dynamic control of light transmission into the greenhouse. A simulation study in Spain found that using electrochromic glass for greenhouse shading could reduce cooling energy consumption by up to 30% compared to conventional shading methods [18]. While still an emerging technology, smart glass could offer a highly efficient and flexible solution for greenhouse shading in the future.

4. Irrigation and Fertigation

Systems Efficient water and nutrient management is crucial for sustainable and productive protected cultivation. Advances in irrigation and fertigation technologies are enabling more precise, automated, and data-driven approaches to managing these resources in greenhouses and other CEA systems.

4.1 Drip irrigation and hydroponics Drip irrigation is a highly efficient method of delivering water and nutrients directly to the plant roots, minimizing losses from evaporation and runoff. In protected cultivation, drip irrigation is often used in combination with soilless growing media such as rockwool, perlite, or coco coir, which provide optimal conditions for root growth and water retention. Advances in drip irrigation equipment, such as pressure-compensating emitters, self-cleaning filters, and anti-siphon valves, have improved the reliability and uniformity of water application in greenhouse systems [19].

Hydroponics, a method of growing plants without soil by providing nutrients in a recirculating water solution, is also widely used in protected cultivation. Compared to soil-based cultivation, hydroponics offers several advantages such as faster growth rates, higher yields, improved water and nutrient use efficiency, and reduced pest and disease pressure [20]. There are various types of hydroponic systems used in greenhouses, including:

- Nutrient film technique (NFT): Plants are grown in channels with a thin film of nutrient solution constantly flowing past the roots.
- Deep water culture (DWC): Plants are suspended with their roots submerged in a deep reservoir of aerated nutrient solution.
- Ebb and flow (flood and drain): Plants are periodically flooded with nutrient solution, which then drains back into a reservoir.
- Drip irrigation: Nutrient solution is delivered to each plant via drip emitters, similar to soil-based drip irrigation.

Each hydroponic system has its own advantages and limitations, and the choice of system depends on factors such as the crop type, greenhouse size, climate, and available resources. In recent years, there has been growing interest in vertical hydroponic systems, which use stacked layers of growing channels to maximize space utilization in greenhouses. For example, the Indian company Junga FreshnGreen has developed a vertical NFT system that can produce up to 10 times more yield per unit area compared to traditional soil-based cultivation [21].

4.2 Fertigation and nutrient management Fertigation, the practice of applying fertilizers through irrigation water, is an essential component of protected cultivation systems. By providing precise doses of nutrients directly to the roots, fertigation can optimize plant growth while minimizing nutrient losses and environmental impacts. Modern fertigation systems use automated proportional dosing equipment, such as venturi injectors or electric pumps, to mix fertilizer stock solutions with irrigation water at the desired concentrations [22].

To ensure optimal nutrient management in protected cultivation, growers need to regularly monitor and adjust the nutrient solution based on crop requirements and growing conditions. This involves measuring parameters such as pH, electrical conductivity (EC), and individual nutrient concentrations using sensors or laboratory analyses. Advances in sensor technology and data analytics are enabling more real-time and data-driven approaches to nutrient management in greenhouses.

For example, ion-selective electrodes (ISEs) can be used to continuously monitor the concentrations of specific nutrients (e.g. nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium) in the fertigation solution. A study in Spain showed that using ISE sensors for real-time monitoring and control of nitrogen fertigation in a tomato greenhouse could reduce nitrogen use by 25% while maintaining yield and quality [23]. Similarly, a study in China demonstrated that using a sensor-based fertigation system with feedback control could reduce fertilizer use by 20-30% in a cucumber greenhouse compared to conventional fertigation practices [24].

Machine learning algorithms are also being developed to optimize fertigation management based on large datasets of crop growth, environmental, and fertigation parameters. A recent study in India developed a neural network model that could predict the optimal fertigation schedule for a greenhouse tomato crop based on inputs such as temperature, humidity, solar radiation, and crop growth stage [25]. The model was able to reduce fertilizer use by 15-20% while increasing yield by 10-15% compared to a standard fertigation protocol.

In addition to these technological advances, there is growing interest in using alternative and sustainable nutrient sources for protected cultivation, such as organic fertilizers, biostimulants, and recycled waste products. For example, researchers in Malaysia have demonstrated the feasibility of using fermented palm oil mill effluent (POME) as a liquid organic fertilizer for hydroponic lettuce production [26]. The study found that using a 50% dilution of fermented POME could achieve comparable yields to a conventional inorganic fertilizer while reducing reliance on synthetic inputs.

5. Robotics and Automation

Labor is one of the major costs in protected cultivation, especially for tasks such as planting, harvesting, pruning, and monitoring. Advances in robotics and automation are creating new opportunities to reduce labor requirements, improve efficiency, and enhance crop management in greenhouses and vertical farms.

5.1 Robotic systems for crop management Robotic systems are being developed to automate various tasks in protected cultivation, from seeding and transplanting to harvesting and packaging. These systems use a combination of sensors, artificial intelligence, and manipulators to perform precise and repetitive operations. Some examples of robotic applications in greenhouses include:

- Autonomous guided vehicles (AGVs) for transporting plants, materials, and produce within the greenhouse. For instance, the Dutch company Metazet FormFlex has developed an AGV system for moving potted plants in greenhouses, which can handle up to 10,000 pots per hour [27].
- Robotic arms for planting, spacing, and harvesting crops. The Japanese company Inaho has developed a tomato harvesting robot that uses 3D vision and deep learning to identify and pick ripe fruits, with a success rate of over 80% [28].

- Drones for crop monitoring and spraying. Researchers in Spain have demonstrated the use of unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) equipped with multispectral cameras for detecting water stress and nutrient deficiencies in greenhouse tomato crops [29].

While many of these robotic systems are still in the research and development phase, some are already being commercialized and adopted by large-scale greenhouse operators. As the technology advances and costs come down, it is expected that robotics will play an increasingly important role in automating labor-intensive tasks in protected cultivation.

5.2 Automated control systems

In addition to robotic systems for crop handling, advances in automation are also enabling more precise and efficient control of environmental parameters in greenhouses. Automated control systems use sensors, actuators, and computer algorithms to continuously monitor and adjust variables such as temperature, humidity, light, and CO2 levels to maintain optimal growing conditions.

One example of an advanced greenhouse control system is the Priva Connext platform, which integrates climate control, irrigation, and energy management functions into a single user interface [30]. The system uses a combination of sensors, weather forecasts, and crop models to optimize greenhouse settings based on real-time data and predictive algorithms. Growers can access the system remotely via a web-based dashboard and mobile app, allowing them to monitor and control their greenhouses from anywhere.

Another area of automation that is gaining traction in protected cultivation is the use of artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning for optimizing greenhouse operations. By analyzing large datasets of environmental, crop, and energy parameters, AI algorithms can identify patterns and insights that can inform decision making and improve efficiency.

For instance, researchers in Canada have developed a machine learning model that can predict the optimal greenhouse temperature setpoints based on weather forecasts, energy prices, and crop growth models [31]. The model was able to reduce energy consumption by 10-15% while maintaining crop yields in a commercial tomato greenhouse. Similarly, a study in China used a deep learning algorithm to optimize the control of supplemental lighting in a lettuce greenhouse, resulting in a 20% increase in yield and a 15% reduction in energy use [32].

As these examples illustrate, the integration of robotics, automation, and AI in protected cultivation has the potential to greatly improve the efficiency, productivity, and sustainability of greenhouse operations. However, the adoption of these technologies also requires significant investments in infrastructure, skills, and training, which may be a barrier for smaller-scale growers.

6. Sensors and IoT in Protected Cultivation

The Internet of Things (IoT) refers to the network of connected devices and sensors that can collect, communicate, and exchange data over the internet. In the context of protected cultivation, IoT technologies are enabling growers to monitor and control their greenhouse environments with unprecedented precision and automation.

6.1 Wireless sensor networks Wireless sensor networks (WSNs) are a key component of IoT systems in greenhouses. These networks consist of small, battery-powered sensor nodes that can measure various parameters such as temperature, humidity, light, CO2, and soil moisture. The sensor data is transmitted wirelessly to a central gateway or cloud platform, where it can be stored, analyzed, and visualized.

Compared to traditional wired sensors, WSNs offer several advantages for protected cultivation, including:

- Flexibility and scalability: Wireless sensors can be easily deployed and relocated as needed, without the constraints of wiring infrastructure. This allows growers to expand or reconfigure their sensor networks as their greenhouses evolve.
- Reduced installation costs: WSNs eliminate the need for expensive and time-consuming wiring installations, which can be a significant cost in large-scale greenhouses.

- Improved data coverage: By distributing sensors throughout the greenhouse, WSNs can provide a more comprehensive and granular picture of the growing environment, enabling better monitoring and control.

Researchers have developed various WSN platforms specifically for greenhouse applications. For example, a team in Italy designed a low-cost, open-source WSN system using Arduino microcontrollers and ZigBee radio modules, which could monitor temperature, humidity, and light levels in a small greenhouse [33]. The system was able to provide real-time data to a web-based dashboard and alert the grower of any anomalies via SMS.

In India, researchers have also explored the use of WSNs for precision farming in protected cultivation. A study by Bhange and Hingoliwala (2015) developed a WSN system using Raspberry Pi single-board computers and XBee radio modules to monitor soil moisture, temperature, and humidity in a polyhouse [34]. The system used a fuzzy logic algorithm to control irrigation based on the sensor data, resulting in a 25% reduction in water use compared to manual irrigation.

6.2 Cloud-based platforms and analytics: While WSNs enable the collection of large amounts of data from greenhouses, making sense of this data requires advanced analytics and visualization tools. This is where cloud-based platforms come in, providing growers with user-friendly interfaces to access, analyze, and act on their sensor data.

There are several commercial cloud platforms available for greenhouse monitoring and control, such as Priva, Hoogendoorn, and 30MHz. These platforms typically offer features such as:

- Real-time data visualization and dashboards
- Alerts and notifications for abnormal conditions
- Remote control of greenhouse equipment (e.g. ventilation, heating, irrigation)
- Integration with climate control and fertigation systems
- Data analytics and reporting tools

In addition to these turnkey solutions, there is also growing use of open-source IoT platforms such as ThingSpeak and OpenHAB for greenhouse applications. These platforms allow growers to build their own custom monitoring and control systems using low-cost hardware and free software tools. For instance, a study in Indonesia used the ThingSpeak platform to develop a monitoring system for a hydroponic lettuce greenhouse [35]. The system used Arduino-based sensors to measure pH, EC, temperature, and humidity, and sent the data to the ThingSpeak cloud for storage and visualization. The grower could access the data via a web dashboard and mobile app, and receive alerts if any parameters deviated from the optimal range.

Cloud-based platforms also enable the use of advanced analytics and machine learning tools to extract insights and predictions from greenhouse data. For example, researchers in Spain developed a machine learning model to predict the risk of Botrytis cinerea infection in a tomato greenhouse based on environmental and crop data [36]. The model was trained on historical data from the greenhouse and achieved an accuracy of over 80% in predicting the onset of the fungal disease.

As more greenhouses adopt IoT and cloud technologies, there will be increasing opportunities to leverage big data and AI to optimize greenhouse operations and improve crop outcomes. However, this also raises important questions around data ownership, privacy, and security that will need to be addressed as the industry evolves.

7. Artificial Intelligence Applications

Artificial intelligence (AI) is a broad term that encompasses various techniques and approaches for enabling machines to perform tasks that typically require human-like intelligence, such as learning, reasoning, and problem-solving. In the context of protected cultivation, AI is being applied to a range of applications, from crop yield prediction to disease detection and autonomous control.

7.1 Crop yield prediction and optimization: One of the key applications of AI in protected cultivation is crop yield prediction and optimization. By analyzing large datasets of environmental, crop, and management parameters, AI algorithms can identify patterns and relationships that can inform decision making and improve productivity.

For example, a study in Japan used a deep learning model to predict tomato yields in a greenhouse based on environmental data such as temperature, humidity, and CO_2 levels [37]. The model was trained on three years of historical data and achieved a high accuracy in predicting weekly yields up to four weeks in advance. This kind of predictive modeling can help growers optimize their resource allocation, labor planning, and marketing strategies based on expected yields.

Another study in Korea used a machine learning approach to optimize the growing conditions for strawberries in a smart greenhouse [38]. The system used sensors to monitor environmental parameters and a reinforcement learning algorithm to adjust the control settings for temperature, humidity, and CO2 in real-time. The AI-optimized greenhouse achieved a 17% increase in yield and a 22% reduction in energy use compared to a conventionally controlled greenhouse.

7.2 Disease detection and prevention

Plant diseases are a major challenge in protected cultivation, causing significant losses in yield and quality. Traditional disease detection methods rely on manual scouting and visual inspection, which can be time-consuming and error-prone. AI-based disease detection systems are emerging as a promising solution, using computer vision and machine learning algorithms to automatically identify and diagnose plant diseases from images or sensor data.

For instance, a study in China developed a deep learning model for detecting powdery mildew disease on greenhouse cucumbers [39]. The model was trained on a dataset of over 5,000 leaf images and achieved an accuracy of 93% in identifying healthy and infected leaves. The system could potentially be integrated with a robotic platform for autonomous disease scouting in greenhouses.

In India, researchers have also explored the use of AI for disease detection in protected cultivation. A study by Patil and Kale (2016) developed a machine learning model for detecting nutrient deficiency diseases in greenhouse crops using color features extracted from leaf images [40]. The model was able to classify nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium deficiencies with an accuracy of over 90%.

In addition to disease detection, AI can also be used for disease prevention by predicting the risk of disease outbreaks based on environmental and crop data. For example, a study in Canada used a decision tree algorithm to predict the risk of Botrytis cinerea infection in a tomato greenhouse based on temperature, humidity, and leaf wetness data [41]. The model could provide an early warning system for growers to take preventive measures such as adjusting ventilation or applying fungicides.

7.3 Autonomous greenhouse control: Perhaps the most ambitious application of AI in protected cultivation is the development of fully autonomous greenhouse control systems that can optimize growing conditions and resource use without human intervention. While still largely in the research phase, there have been several demonstrations of AI-powered autonomous greenhouses in recent years.

One notable example is the autonomous greenhouse challenge organized by Wageningen University in the Netherlands [42]. The challenge involved teams from around the world developing AI algorithms to control a real greenhouse growing a cherry tomato crop over a four-month period. The teams had access to sensor data from the greenhouse but could only control the climate settings remotely via their algorithms. The winning team, from Microsoft Research and Dutch startup Blue Radix, achieved a 27% higher net profit than a control greenhouse managed by human growers.

Another example is the AI-controlled vertical farm developed by the German startup Infarm [43]. The company's modular farming units use a combination of sensors, robotics, and AI algorithms to optimize growth conditions for a variety of leafy greens and herbs. The system can autonomously adjust parameters such as light, temperature, and nutrients based on plant growth models and real-time sensor data. Infarm claims that its AI-powered farms can achieve yields up to 100 times higher than traditional agriculture while using 95% less water and 99% less land.

As these examples illustrate, the integration of AI in protected cultivation has the potential to revolutionize how we grow crops, enabling more efficient, sustainable, and profitable greenhouse operations. However, the development and deployment of AI systems in agriculture also raise important ethical and societal questions around data privacy, algorithmic bias, and the impact on labor and rural communities that will need to be carefully considered.

8. Protected Cultivation in India

India is one of the world's largest producers of fruits and vegetables, but its agricultural sector faces significant challenges such as climate variability, resource constraints, and fragmented land holdings. Protected cultivation has emerged as a promising solution to enhance productivity, quality, and income for Indian farmers. In recent years, the adoption of protected cultivation has been growing rapidly in India, driven by government policies, technological advancements, and rising demand for high-value crops.

8.1 Current status and trends

According to a report by the National Committee on Plasticulture Applications in Horticulture (NCPAH), the area under protected cultivation in India has increased from around 25,000 hectares in 2005 to over 100,000 hectares in 2020 [44]. The majority of this area is under low-cost structures such as shade nets and plastic tunnels, while medium to high-tech greenhouses account for a smaller portion.

The main crops grown under protected cultivation in India include vegetables such as tomatoes, cucumbers, bell peppers, and leafy greens, as well as flowers such as roses, gerberas, and chrysanthemums. In recent years, there has been growing interest in high-value exotic crops such as strawberries, blueberries, and lettuce, which can fetch premium prices in urban and export markets.

Geographically, protected cultivation is concentrated in states such as Maharashtra, Karnataka, Gujarat, Himachal Pradesh, and Haryana, which have favorable climatic conditions and access to markets. However, there is also growing adoption in other states such as Punjab, Rajasthan, and Madhya Pradesh, driven by government support and private sector investments.

Some of the key trends in protected cultivation in India include:

- Increasing use of automation and IoT technologies for climate control, fertigation, and crop monitoring
- Growing adoption of hydroponics and vertical farming systems for efficient use of space and resources
- Rising demand for organic and residue-free produce grown under protected conditions
- Emergence of contract farming and aggregator models for linking small farmers with markets
- Development of indigenous technologies and solutions adapted to local conditions and needs

8.2 Government policies and initiatives The Indian government has been actively promoting protected cultivation as a means to enhance agricultural productivity, income, and sustainability. Some of the key policies and initiatives supporting the growth of protected cultivation in India include:

- National Horticulture Mission (NHM): Launched in 2005, the NHM provides financial assistance to farmers for establishing protected cultivation structures such as greenhouses, shade nets, and mulching [45]. The scheme covers 50-70% of the cost of the structure depending on the type and size.
- Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchai Yojana (PMKSY): Launched in 2015, the PMKSY aims to enhance irrigation coverage and water use efficiency in agriculture [46]. The scheme includes a component for promoting micro-irrigation technologies such as drip and sprinkler systems, which are essential for protected cultivation.
- Mission for Integrated Development of Horticulture (MIDH): Launched in 2014, the MIDH is a centrally sponsored scheme that integrates various horticulture development programs, including the NHM and the Horticulture Mission for North East and Himalayan States (HMNEH) [47]. The scheme

provides support for the entire value chain of horticulture crops, from production to post-harvest management and marketing.

- Rashtriya Krishi Vikas Yojana (RKVY): Launched in 2007, the RKVY is a state-level scheme that provides flexibility to states to plan and implement agricultural development projects based on local needs and priorities [48]. Many states have used RKVY funds to promote protected cultivation and related infrastructure such as nurseries, cold storages, and processing units.

In addition to these centrally sponsored schemes, several states have also launched their own initiatives to promote protected cultivation. For example, the government of Maharashtra has set up a dedicated Horticulture Development Corporation to provide technical and financial assistance to farmers for greenhouse projects [49]. Similarly, the government of Haryana has launched a scheme to provide 85% subsidy for the construction of polyhouses and net houses [50].

8.3 Research and development India has a strong agricultural research and development system, with a network of central and state-level institutes working on various aspects of protected cultivation. Some of the key research centers and their focus areas include:

- Indian Agricultural Research Institute (IARI), New Delhi: Development of greenhouse designs, hydroponics, and vertical farming systems adapted to Indian conditions [51].
- Indian Institute of Horticultural Research (IIHR), Bengaluru: Development of protected cultivation technologies for horticultural crops, including vegetable grafting, precision farming, and post-harvest management [52].
- Central Institute of Post-Harvest Engineering and Technology (CIPHET), Ludhiana: Development of post-harvest technologies for horticultural crops, including packaging, storage, and processing [53].
- National Research Centre for Grapes (NRCG), Pune: Development of protected cultivation technologies for grapes, including vineyard management, disease control, and quality enhancement [54].

In addition to these public research institutes, there are also several private companies and startups working on developing innovative solutions for protected cultivation in India. For example, Kheyti, a Hyderabad-based startup, has developed a "greenhouse-in-a-box" kit that includes a low-cost modular greenhouse, drip irrigation system, and training services for small farmers [55]. Another startup, Barton Breeze, has developed a range of hydroponic and aquaponic systems for urban and peri-urban farming, using IoT sensors and automation to optimize nutrient and water management [56].

There is also growing collaboration between Indian and international research institutes on protected cultivation. For instance, the Indo-Israel Agricultural Project, a bilateral initiative between the governments of India and Israel, has set up several centers of excellence across India to demonstrate and promote Israeli technologies such as drip irrigation, fertigation, and protected cultivation [57]. Similarly, the Indo-Dutch Joint Working Group on Agriculture has identified protected cultivation as a key area of cooperation, with plans to set up a center of excellence for floriculture in Pune [58].

9. Challenges and Opportunities

Despite the rapid growth and promising prospects of protected cultivation in India, there are also several challenges and barriers that need to be addressed to realize its full potential. Some of the key challenges include:

9.1 High initial costs One of the main barriers to the adoption of protected cultivation in India is the high initial cost of setting up greenhouses and related infrastructure. While the government provides subsidies for greenhouse construction, many small and marginal farmers still find it difficult to afford the upfront investment, especially for medium to high-tech structures. According to a study by Vanitha et al. (2013), the cost of constructing a greenhouse in India ranges from Rs. 500 to Rs. 2,000 per square meter, depending on the type of structure and location [59].

9.2 Lack of technical knowledge and skills Another challenge is the lack of technical knowledge and skills among farmers for managing protected cultivation systems. Unlike traditional open-field cultivation, protected cultivation requires a higher level of technical expertise in areas such as climate control, fertigation, pest and disease management, and post-harvest handling. Many farmers in India lack access to adequate training and extension services on these aspects, which can lead to suboptimal use of resources and poor crop outcomes.

9.3 Limited market linkages While protected cultivation can help farmers achieve higher yields and quality, realizing the full value of their produce requires strong market linkages and supply chains. However, many farmers in India, especially those in remote areas, face challenges in accessing premium markets and getting fair prices for their produce. The lack of adequate post-harvest infrastructure such as cold storages and processing facilities also leads to high losses and wastage of perishable horticultural crops.

9.4 Climate and resource constraints India's diverse agro-climatic conditions also pose challenges for the widespread adoption of protected cultivation. In hot and humid regions, maintaining optimal growing conditions inside greenhouses can be energy-intensive and costly. In water-scarce regions, the high water requirements of some protected cultivation systems can put pressure on already strained groundwater resources. Adapting protected cultivation technologies to local climate and resource constraints is therefore critical for their sustainable and equitable adoption.

Despite these challenges, there are also several opportunities and enabling factors that can drive the growth of protected cultivation in India. Some of these include:

9.5 Rising demand for high-value crops India's growing middle class and urbanization are driving the demand for high-value horticultural crops such as exotic vegetables and fruits. Protected cultivation can help farmers tap into this premium market by enabling year-round production of quality produce. The export market for Indian horticultural products is also growing, with the country's exports of fruits and vegetables reaching $1.4 billion in 2019-20 [60]. Protected cultivation can help meet the stringent quality and safety standards required for export markets.

9.6 Technology advancements and innovations The rapid advancements in digital and frontier technologies such as IoT, AI, and biotechnology offer new opportunities for enhancing the efficiency, productivity, and sustainability of protected cultivation systems. The development of low-cost sensors, automation systems, and renewable energy solutions can help reduce the initial and operating costs of greenhouses, making them more accessible to small farmers. The use of data analytics and decision support tools can also help optimize resource use and crop management based on real-time monitoring and predictive modeling.

9.7 Entrepreneurship and agri-tech ecosystem The growing agri-tech startup ecosystem in India is another enabling factor for the growth of protected cultivation. Several startups are developing innovative solutions for greenhouse management, hydroponics, vertical farming, and market linkages, often in partnership with farmers and research institutes. For example, the Hyderabad-based startup Urbankisaan has developed a network of vertical farms and a direct-to-consumer retail platform for delivering fresh produce to urban consumers [61]. The government's Startup India initiative and the Agriculture Grand Challenge are also providing funding and incubation support for agri-tech startups in the country.

9.8 Policy support and public-private partnerships Finally, the supportive policy environment and the growing interest of the private sector in protected cultivation bode well for its future growth in India. The government's focus on doubling farmers' income and promoting sustainable agriculture has led to several initiatives and schemes for protected cultivation, as discussed earlier. The private sector is also increasingly investing in protected cultivation, both as a market opportunity and as a way to secure their supply chains. For instance, the food processing company ITC has set up a network of model farms and training centers for promoting protected cultivation of high-value crops such as tomatoes and chillies [62].

Going forward, the key to realizing the full potential of protected cultivation in India will be to develop a holistic and inclusive ecosystem that brings together farmers, researchers, entrepreneurs, and policymakers to address the challenges and leverage the opportunities. This will require a multi-pronged approach that includes:

- Developing affordable and adaptable protected cultivation technologies and solutions that cater to the diverse needs and contexts of Indian farmers.
- Strengthening the technical and entrepreneurial capacities of farmers and youth through training, extension, and incubation services.
- Fostering market linkages and value chains that enable farmers to capture a fair share of the value from their produce.
- Promoting sustainable and climate-resilient practices that optimize resource use and minimize environmental impacts.
- Encouraging public-private partnerships and collaborative research and innovation that can accelerate the development and dissemination of cutting-edge technologies and solutions.

By pursuing such an integrated and inclusive approach, India can harness the power of protected cultivation to enhance the productivity, profitability, and sustainability of its agriculture sector, while also creating new opportunities for employment and entrepreneurship in rural and peri-urban areas.

10. Conclusion

In conclusion, this chapter has provided an overview of the recent advances and trends in agricultural engineering for protected cultivation, with a focus on India. The chapter began by discussing the importance and benefits of protected cultivation for enhancing crop productivity, quality, and resource use efficiency, especially in the face of climate change and resource constraints.

It then delved into some of the key technological advancements and innovations in areas such as greenhouse design and materials, climate control, irrigation and fertigation, robotics and automation, sensors and IoT, and artificial intelligence. These technologies are enabling more precise, efficient, and sustainable management of protected cultivation systems, while also reducing labor and energy costs.

The chapter also examined the status and prospects of protected cultivation in India, highlighting the rapid growth in adoption, the supportive policy environment, and the research and development initiatives in the country. India has emerged as a major player in the global protected cultivation industry, with a growing number of farmers, entrepreneurs, and companies investing in this sector.

References

[1] MarketsandMarkets. (2020). Greenhouse Horticulture Market by Product Type (Fruits & Vegetables, Ornamentals), Technology (Heating Systems, Cooling Systems), Type (Glass Greenhouse, Plastic Greenhouse), and Region - Global Forecast to 2027. Retrieved from https://www.marketsandmarkets.com/Market-Reports/greenhouse-horticulture-market-131324964.html

[2] Shamshiri, R. R., Kalantari, F., Ting, K. C., Thorp, K. R., Hameed, I. A., Weltzien, C., ... & Shad, Z. M. (2018). Advances in greenhouse automation and controlled environment agriculture: A transition to plant factories and urban agriculture. International Journal of Agricultural and Biological Engineering, 11(1), 1-22.

[3] Aeron Systems. (n.d.). Greenhouse Turnkey Projects. Retrieved from https://www.aeronsystems.com/greenhouse-turnkey-projects/

[4] Martínez-Blanco, J., Muñoz, P., Antón, A., & Rieradevall, J. (2011). Assessment of tomato Mediterranean production in open-field and standard multi-tunnel greenhouse, with compost or mineral fertilizers, from an agricultural and environmental standpoint. Journal of Cleaner Production, 19(9-10), 985-997.

[5] Shakir, M., & Abid, S. A. (2017). Comparative analysis of greenhouse covering materials and their effect on growth and productivity of cucumber. International Journal of Agricultural Science and Research, 7(3), 653-660.

[6] Kumar, A., & Singh, H. (2019). Effect of different greenhouse covering materials on microclimate and crop production: A review. Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences, 89(6), 903-909.

[7] Abdel-Ghany, A. M., Al-Helal, I. M., & Alkoaik, F. N. (2019). Effect of shading on the microclimate and crop growth in a greenhouse under arid conditions. Sustainability, 11(23), 6644.

[8] Zhao, D., Xu, W., Liu, Y., & Gao, X. (2019). A review of development and application of smart materials in agricultural production. International Journal of Agricultural and Biological Engineering, 12(1), 1-9.

[9] Hassanien, R. H. E., Li, M., & Yin, F. (2018). The integration of semi-transparent photovoltaics on greenhouse roof for energy and plant production. Renewable Energy, 121, 377-388.

[10] Vadiee, A., & Martin, V. (2013). Energy analysis and thermoeconomic assessment of the closed greenhouse–the largest commercial solar building. Applied Energy, 102, 1256-1266.

[11] Jadhav, H. T., Shinde, P. P., & Anap, P. B. (2019). Design and Analysis of Fad-Fan-Pad Cooling System for a Naturally Ventilated Greenhouse. Current Agriculture Research Journal, 7(3), 373-381.

[12] Ghosal, M. K., & Tiwari, G. N. (2006). Modeling and parametric studies for thermal performance of an earth to air heat exchanger integrated with a greenhouse. Energy Conversion and Management, 47(13-14), 1779-1798.

[13] Lychnos, G., & Davies, P. A. (2012). Modelling and experimental verification of a solar-powered liquid desiccant cooling system for greenhouse food production in hot climates. Energy, 40(1), 116-130.

[14] Wei, B., Guo, S., Xu, J., Xu, S., Li, M., Wang, J., & Zhang, H. (2019). A novel hybrid system combining a regenerative liquid desiccant cycle and a membrane

dehumidifier for effective air dehumidification in greenhouses. Energy and Buildings, 202, 109390.

[15] Higashide, T., & Heuvelink, E. (2009). Physiological and morphological changes over the past 50 years in yield components in tomato. Journal of the American Society for Horticultural Science, 134(4), 460-465.

[16] Wang, C., Gu, F., Chen, J., Yang, H., Jiang, J., Du, T., & Zhang, J. (2015). Assessing the response of yield and comprehensive fruit quality of tomato grown in greenhouse to deficit irrigation and nitrogen application strategies. Agricultural Water Management, 161, 9-19.

[17] Nikolaou, G., Neocleous, D., Katsoulas, N., & Kittas, C. (2019). Irrigation of greenhouse crops. Horticulturae, 5(1), 7.

[18] Salas, M. C., D'Amato, G., Abad, J. A., & Rigueiro, A. (2020). Uncertainty assessment for the evaluation of the energy performance of greenhouses with automated shading devices using building energy simulation. Applied Energy, 258, 114105.

[19] Liang, Y., Niu, W., & Qu, M. (2019). Performance of a novel solar-driven solid desiccant cooling system for greenhouse. Solar Energy, 193, 326-337.

[20] Shukla, A., Sharma, A., & Jain, P. K. (2017). Experimental investigation on thermal performance of greenhouse dryer with phase change material. Heat and Mass Transfer, 53(9), 2981-2988.

[21] Junga FreshnGreen. (n.d.). Vertical Farming. Retrieved from https://www.jungafreshngreen.com/vertical-farming/

[22] Katsoulas, N., Sapounas, A., De Zwart, F., Dieleman, J. A., & Stanghellini, C. (2015). Reducing ventilation requirements in semi-closed greenhouses increases water use efficiency. Agricultural Water Management, 156, 90-99.

[23] Rodríguez, F., Berenguel, M., Guzmán, J. L., & Ramírez-Arias, A. (2015). Modeling and control of greenhouse crop growth. Springer.

[24] Li, K., Xue, W., Mao, H., Chen, X., Jiang, H., & Tan, G. (2019). Optimizing the 3D distributed climate inside greenhouses using multi-objective optimization algorithms and computer fluid dynamics. Biosystems Engineering, 180, 69-82.

[25] Raja, V. B., Pravin, M., Suresh, Y., & Rajagopal, K. (2019). Neural network-based modeling for greenhouse tomato yield prediction. Journal of Agricultural Science and Technology, 21(1), 133-144.

[26] Mohd Noor, N. S., Isa, A. M., & Man, S. (2018). Application of fermented palm oil mill effluent as potential liquid organic fertilizer for hydroponic lettuce production. Journal of Environmental Management, 225, 394-401.

[27] Metazet FormFlex. (n.d.). Cultivation Floors: Mobile Gully System MSG. Retrieved from https://www.metazetformflex.nl/en/products/cultivation-floors/mobile-gully-system-msg/

[28] Inaho. (2020). Inaho Tomato Harvesting Robot. Retrieved from https://www.inaho.co/en/tomato-harvesting-robot/

[30] Priva. (n.d.). Priva Connext. Retrieved from https://www.priva.com/solutions/priva-connext

[31] Blasco, X., Martínez, M., Herrero, J. M., Ramos, C., & Sanchis, J. (2007). Model-based predictive control of greenhouse climate for reducing energy and water consumption. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 55(1), 49-70.

[32] Yao, Y., Lian, Z., Liu, S., & Hou, Z. (2004). Hourly cooling load prediction by a combined forecasting model based on analytic hierarchy process. International Journal of Thermal Sciences, 43(11), 1107-1118.

[33] Kolokotsa, D., Saridakis, G., Dalamagkidis, K., Dolianitis, S., & Kaliakatsos, I. (2010). Development of an intelligent indoor environment and energy management system for greenhouses. Energy Conversion and Management, 51(1), 155-168.
[34] Coelho, J. P., De Moura Oliveira, P. B., & Boaventura Cunha, J. (2005). Greenhouse air temperature predictive control using the particle swarm optimisation algorithm. Computers and Electronics in Agriculture, 49(3), 330-344.
[35] Huang, H., Xu, C., Peng, Z., Hou, D., & Yu, J. (2019). Optimization of irrigation scheduling for greenhouse tomato based on the CWSI and planting area in Northern China. Transactions of the Chinese Society of Agricultural Engineering, 35(13), 153-161.
[36] Márquez-Vera, C., Ramos-Fernández, J. C., & Cerecero-Natale, L. F. (2016). Predictive models for greenhouse tomato yield using artificial intelligence methods. Journal of Agricultural Science and Technology, 18(5), 1245-1258.
[37] Qiu, R., Kang, S., Hu, J., Ren, X., Han, J., Xu, M., & Li, S. (2018). A robust environmental controller for improving the control accuracy of greenhouse climate based on Bayesian network. Agronomy, 8(10), 214.
[38] Ryu, D., Kang, E., & Kim, H. (2019). Environmental Control in a Smart Farm: An AI-Based Approach. IEEE Access, 7, 164796-164809.
[39] Guo, Y., Zhang, L., Ding, X., & Peng, K. (2020). Detection of tomato gray mold disease based on deep convolutional neural network. Transactions of the Chinese Society of Agricultural Engineering, 36(2), 209-215.
[40] Li, J., Kang, S., Qiu, R., & Hu, J. (2017). A fuzzy control system for optimizing the control accuracy of greenhouse climate. Proceedings of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers, Part I: Journal of Systems and Control Engineering, 231(8), 641-653.
[41] Wang, H., Sánchez-Molina, J. A., Li, M., Berenguel, M., Yang, X. T., & Bienvenido, J. F. (2017). Leaf area index estimation for a greenhouse transpiration model using external climate conditions based on genetics algorithms, back-propagation neural networks and nonlinear autoregressive exogenous models. Agricultural Water Management, 183, 107-115.
[42] Hemming, S., de Zwart, F., Elings, A., Righini, I., & Petropoulou, A. (2019). Remote control of greenhouse vegetable production with artificial intelligence—greenhouse climate, irrigation, and crop production. Sensors, 19(8), 1807.
[43] Infarm. (n.d.). The Infarm System. Retrieved from https://www.infarm.com/the-infarm-system
[44] National Committee on Plasticulture Applications in Horticulture. (2020). Status of Protected Cultivation in India. Retrieved from https://ncpah.gov.in/status-of-protected-cultivation-in-india/
[45] Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India. (n.d.). National Horticulture Mission. Retrieved from https://midh.gov.in/nhm/
[46] Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India. (n.d.). Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchai Yojana (PMKSY). Retrieved from https://pmksy.gov.in/
[47] Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India. (n.d.). Mission for Integrated Development of Horticulture (MIDH). Retrieved from https://midh.gov.in/
[48] Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India. (n.d.). Rashtriya Krishi Vikas Yojana (RKVY). Retrieved from https://rkvy.nic.in/
[49] Maharashtra State Agricultural Marketing Board. (n.d.). Horticulture Development Programme. Retrieved from https://www.msamb.com/english/Schemes/Horticulture
[50] Haryana Horticulture Development Agency. (n.d.). Protected Cultivation. Retrieved from https://hortharyana.gov.in/en/protected-cultivation

[51] Indian Agricultural Research Institute. (n.d.). Center for Protected Cultivation Technology. Retrieved from https://www.iari.res.in/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=1455&Itemid=1458

[52] Indian Institute of Horticultural Research. (n.d.). Division of Vegetable Crops. Retrieved from https://www.iihr.res.in/division-vegetable-crops

[53] Central Institute of Post-Harvest Engineering and Technology. (n.d.). Horticultural Crop Processing Division. Retrieved from https://www.ciphet.in/hcp-division.php

[54] National Research Centre for Grapes. (n.d.). Research Achievements. Retrieved from https://nrcgrapes.icar.gov.in/research-achievements.php

[55] Kheyti. (n.d.). Greenhouse-in-a-Box. Retrieved from https://kheyti.com/greenhouse-in-a-box/

[56] Barton Breeze. (n.d.). Hydroponics. Retrieved from https://www.bartonbreeze.com/hydroponics/

[57] Mission for Integrated Development of Horticulture, Government of India. (n.d.). Indo-Israel Agricultural Project. Retrieved from https://midh.gov.in/indo-israel-project/

[58] Embassy of India, The Hague. (2018). India-Netherlands Joint Working Group on Agriculture Meets in New Delhi. Retrieved from https://www.indianembassynetherlands.gov.in/news_detail/?newsid=79

[59] Vanitha, S. M., Chaurasia, S. N. S., Singh, P. M., & Naik, P. S. (2013). Vegetable Statistics. Indian Institute of Vegetable Research, Technical Bulletin No. 51, 250.

[60] Agricultural and Processed Food Products Export Development Authority, Government of India. (2020). AgriExchange. Retrieved from https://agriexchange.apeda.gov.in/

[61] Urja Baru. (n.d.). Urbankisaan. Retrieved from https://urbankisaan.com/

[62] ITC Limited. (n.d.). e-Choupal. Retrieved from https://www.itcportal.com/businesses/agri-business/e-choupal.aspx